

STATE LIBRARY OF PENNSYLVANIA



3 0144 00619106 8

SR
CLASS 942 Book L 644

VOLUME 5



PENNSYLVANIA
STATE LIBRARY

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2020 with funding from

This project is made possible by a grant from the Institute of Museum and Library Services as administered by the Pennsylvania Department of Education through the Pennsylvania Commonwealth Libraries

Pa State Library

A HISTORY

OF

ENGLAND

FROM THE FIRST

INVASION BY THE ROMANS

BY

JOHN LINGARD, D.D.

VOLUME V.

THIRD EDITION.

LONDON: PRINTED FOR J. MAWMAN.

MDCCCXXV.

SHACKELL AND ARROWSMITH, JOHNSON'S-COURT, FLEET-STREET

Ti

CONTENTS
OF
THE FIFTH VOLUME.

CHAP. I.

HENRY V.

SUCCESSION OF HENRY V.—INSURRECTION OF THE LOLLARDS—INVASION OF FRANCE—BATTLE OF AZINCOURT—SECOND INVASION OF FRANCE—CONQUEST OF NORMANDY—MURDER OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY—HENRY IS MADE REGENT OF FRANCE—REDUCES MEAUX—AND DIES—HIS FUNERAL—AFFAIRS OF THE CHURCH.

PAGE	PAGE		
Succession of Henry V.	1	Execution of sir John Old-	
Insurrection of the lollards ..	3	castle 42	
Apprehension of Oldcastle ..	5	Conquests of Henry 44	
Dispersion of the insurgents ..	6	Massacre in Paris 45	
Their number and designs ...	ib.	Negociations 46	
Henry claims the crown of		Siege of Rouen 47	
France 7		It surrenders 50	
Makes preparations for war ..	11	Conferences at Meulant	51
Dismisses the French envoys	12	Henry is cheated 53	
Conspiracy against him	14	Surprise of Pontoise 54	
He lands in Normandy.....	16	Murder of the duke of Bur-	
Reduces Harfleur	17	gundy 55	
Crosses the Somme	18	Henry is made regent of	
Messages between the armies .	20	France 57	
The English at Maisonscelles ..	21	And married to Catharine ... 59	
Preparations for battle	23	The treaty is confirmed	ib.
Battle of Azincourt	25	Defeat at Beaujé 60	
Defeat of the first division of		Henry returns to France	62
the French	27	Siege and reduction of Meaux	63
Of the second	28	He falls ill..... 64	
And of the third	29	And dies 65	
Loss of the enemy	30	His character 67	
Henry returns to England ...	32	And burial	69
Arrival of the Emperor Sigis-		Proceedings of parliament ..	70
mund	33	Schism in the church	72
Naval victory	35	Its termination	74
Conference at Calais	37	Evils arising from the statutes	
Parties in France	38	against provisors	75
The king lands in Normandy	40		

CHAP. II.

HENRY VI.

GOVERNMENT DURING THE MINORITY—DUKE OF BEDFORD REGENT OF FRANCE—JACQUELIN OF BAVARIA—SIEGE OF ORLEANS—JOAN OF ARC—CHARLES IS CROWNED AT RHEIMS—HENRY AT PARIS—DEFECTION OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY—ARMISTICE BETWEEN ENGLAND AND FRANCE—DISPUTES IN THE ENGLISH CABINET—THE KING'S MARRIAGE—DEATHS OF GLOUCESTER AND BEAUFORT—LOSS OF THE FRENCH PROVINCES—IMPEACHMENT AND MURDER OF SUFFOLK—CADE'S INSURRECTION—DUKE OF YORK PROTECTOR—HENRY RECOVERS HIS AUTHORITY—DISASTERS OF THE YORKISTS—THEIR SUBSEQUENT SUCCESS—THE DUKE IS DECLARED HEIR TO THE THRONE—IS KILLED AT WAKEFIELD—HIS SON EDWARD ENTERS LONDON—AND IS PROCLAIMED KING.

PAGE	PAGE		
Settlement of the government	78	And execution	120
Death of Charles of France	80	Henry is crowned in England	121
Conduct of duke of Bedford	81	And at Paris	ib.
Battle of Crevant	82	Quarrel between the dukes of	
Charles receives succour	84	Bedford and Burgundy	122
Liberation and marriage of			
the king of Scotland	85	Congress of Arras	124
Battle of Verneuil	87	Peace between France and	
Story of Jacqueline of Ba-		Burgundy	125
varia	89	Subsequent events of the war	126
She is married to the duke of		Death of the duke of Bedford	ib.
Glocester	90	Loss of Paris	ib.
Opposition in the council	95	Hostilities with the duke of	
Quarrel between Gloucester		Burgundy	127
and Beaufort	96	A famine	129
They are reconciled	98	Siege of Harfleur	ib.
Submission of Bretagne	100	Loss of Pontoise	130
Siege of Orleans	101	Negociations	131
The battle of Rovray	103	An armistice	134
Story of Joan d'Arc	105	Transactions with Scotland	ib.
Her introduction to Charles	106	Marriages of queen Catharine	
And to the army	107	and dutchess of Bedford	138
She enters Orleans	108	Education of Henry	139
Destroys several forts	110	Disputes between Gloucester	
The siege is raised	ib.	and the cardinal	142
Losses of the English	111	Beaufort raises troops for the	
Charles is crowned at Rheims	112	crusade	144
The armies meet at Senlis	114	He becomes popular	147
And separate without a battle	115	Charges against him	ib.
Joan is made prisoner	116	Liberation of the duke of	
Her trial	118	Orleans	151
Judgment	119	Prosecution of the dutchess	
		of Gloucester	153

CONTENTS.

v

PAGE	PAGE		
The king's marriage	156	The king recovers	198
Arrest and death of Gloucester	159	Battle of St. Alban's	199
Death of Beaufort	163	The king is in the hands of the Yorkists	201
Richard duke of York	165	York protector a second time	202
Cession of Anjou and Maine	ib.	Henry recovers again	203
The loss of Rouen	167	Reconciliation of the two parties	205
Of all Normandy	169	They quarrel again	207
And of Guienne	170	Battle of Bloreheath	208
The public discontent	171	The Yorkists are dispersed ..	209
Charges against Suffolk	173	Yorkists attainted	211
He is sent to the Tower	174	They raise an army	212
Is impeached by the king ..	175	And make the king prisoner	213
His defence	176	The duke avows his claim to the crown	214
He is banished	177	It is brought forward by his counsel	216
Leaves the kingdom	178	Objections to the duke's title	218
And is murdered at sea	180	A compromise	219
Insurrection	181	Battle of Wakefield	220
Complaints and demands of the insurgents	182	The duke is slain	221
Battle at Sevenoaks	183	Battle of Mortimer's cross ..	222
Cade enters London	184	Second battle at St. Alban's .	ib.
Return of the duke of York .	186	The king is free again	223
Disputes in parliament	188	Edward the new duke of York in London	224
York raises forces and submits	189	Powers of the house of lords	225
An unsuccessful attempt to recover Guienne	192	And of the commons	227
Birth of a prince	194		
Henry's incapacity	195		
York is made protector	197		

CHAP. III.

EDWARD IV.

EDWARD IS CROWNED—MISFORTUNES OF THE LANCASTRIANS—HENRY VI. IS MADE PRISONER—EDWARD'S MARRIAGE—INSURRECTION—THE KING IMPRISONED BY THE NEVILS—HIS RELEASE—ANOTHER INSURRECTION—CLARENCE AND WARWICK LEAVE THE REALM—RETURN—EXPEL EDWARD—AND RESTORE HENRY—EDWARD RETURNS—HIS VICTORY AT BARNET—CAPTURE AND DEATH OF HENRY—BATTLE OF TEWKSBURY—WAR WITH FRANCE—PEACE—ATTAINDER OF CLARENCE—DEATH OF THE KING.

Battle of Towton	232	Her adventure in a forest ..	240
Edward is crowned	234	Battles of Hedgley Moor and Hexham	242
Bill of attainder	235	Henry is made prisoner	244
The king's speech	236	Edward's treaties with foreign powers	245
Exertions of queen Margaret	237		
She is shipwrecked	239		

PAGE	PAGE		
His clandestine marriage ...	247	And is admitted into London	282
The queen is acknowledged and crowned and crowned	250	Battle of Barnet	283
All her relations provided for	251	Landing of queen Margaret..	285
Discontent of the Nevils....	252	Battle of Tewksbury	286
Reconciliation	256	Execution of the duke of Somerset.....	287
Clarence married to the daughter of Warwick	258	Murder of Henry VI.....	288
Insurrection in Yorkshire ...	ib.	Fate of the Lancastrians....	289
Edward is in distress	259	Queen Margaret	290
Battle at Edgecote	262	The duke of Exeter.....	ib.
Edward is made prisoner and confined	263	The earl of Oxford	ib.
He is released.....	264	The archbishop of York....	291
His eldest daughter promised to George Nevil	266	The earls of Pembroke and Richmond	292
Another rupture, and recon- ciliation	267	Morton and Fortescue	293
Insurrection of sir Robert Welles	268	Quarrel between Clarence and Glocester	295
Battle of Erpingham	269	Alliance against France	298
Flight of Clarence and War- wick	270	Edward lands in France	300
They are excluded from Ca- lais	272	Policy of Louis	301
But received by Louis XI. .	ib.	Peace and alliance with France	302
Clarence is dissatisfied	273	The king and his favourites accept annuities from him	304
The exiles return and land .	274	Edward's method of raising money	305
Edward is driven out of the kingdom.....	275	Discontent and imprisonment of Clarence.....	307
Henry is restored	277	He is condemned and put to death	309
Settlement of the succession .	278	War with Scotland.....	311
Conduct of foreign powers ..	279	He is duped by Louis	316
Edward lands in England ..	280	His death	317

CHAP. IV.

EDWARD V.

CONDUCT OF THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER—ARRESTS—THE DUKE IS MADE
PROTECTOR—MURDER OF LORD HASTINGS AND THE EARL RIVERS—
PENANCE OF JANE SHORE—THE DUKE ASPIRES TO THE CROWN—
SERMON IN HIS FAVOUR—SPEECH OF THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM—
OFFER OF THE CROWN TO GLOCESTER—WHO ACCEPTS IT.

State of parties at the death of Edward	320	Conduct of Richard duke of Glocester	323
Orders issued for the corona- tion of his son	322	He receives the king's rela- tions	324

PAGE	PAGE		
And arrests them	325	Penance of Jane Shore	332
The young king enters London	327	Sermon in favour of the protector's right to the crown	333
The duke is made protector	ib.	Speech of the duke of Buckingham	336
Murder of Lord Hastings ...	328	Petition presented to the protector	337
And of the prisoners at Pontefract.....	330	He accepts the crown	339
The queen surrenders her second son	1	And takes possession	340

CHAP. V.

RICHARD III.

CORONATION OF RICHARD—DEATH OF HIS TWO NEPHEWS—CONSPIRACY AGAINST HIM DEFEATED—IS RECONCILED WITH ELIZABETH—WISHES TO MARRY HIS NIECE—RAISES AN ARMY AGAINST THE EARL OF RICHMOND—IS KILLED IN THE BATTLE AT BOSWORTH.

Coronation of Richard	341	Death of the king's son	355
His progress through the kingdom	342	Henry flees from Bretagne into France	ib.
And coronation at York	343	Negotiations with Scotland ..	356
Confederacy against him	344	The king wishes to marry the princess Elizabeth ..	357
Death of his nephews.....	346	But is dissuaded	358
Conspiracy in favour of the Earl of Richmond	347	His difficulties and preparations	360
Insurrection	349	His distrust of lord Stanley	361
Richard is successful	350	His proclamation	362
He assembles a parliament..	352	Henry lands in Wales	364
Attempts to defeat the plans of Henry	353	Battle of Bosworth	365
Prevails on Elizabeth to quit the sanctuary	354	Richard is slain	366

CHAP. VI.

HENRY VII.

PROCEEDINGS IN PARLIAMENT—THE KING'S MARRIAGE—INSURRECTION IN FAVOUR OF A PRETENDED EARL OF WARWICK—CORONATION OF THE QUEEN—WAR IN BRETAGNE—IMPOSTURE OF PERKIN WARBECK—HE IS EXECUTED—ALSO THE EARL OF WARWICK—TREATIES WITH FRANCE—WITH SCOTLAND—WITH SPAIN—MARRIAGE AND DEATH OF PRINCE ARTHUR—HENRY'S RAPACITY—HIS ILLNESS AND DEATH—HIS CHARACTER.

Defects of Henry's title	368	The king makes his entry into the capital	371
He sends Elizabeth to London.....	370	The sweating sickness	372

PAGE	PAGE		
Proceedings in parliament ..	373	And by the dutchess of Bur-	
Settlement of the crown.....	374	gundy	416
Papal dispensation of mar-		Henry seeks to obtain pos-	
riage	379	session of Warbeck	417
Insurrection of lord Lovell ..	381	His designs are betrayed ..	418
The king's progress through		His partisans executed	419
the realm	382	Submission of the Irish	420
Treaty with Scotland.....	384	Warbeck attempts to land ..	422
Birth of a prince	385	Proceedings in parliament..	423
A pretended earl of Warwick ..	386	Warbeck is received in Scot-	
He is received in Ireland ...	387	land	425
The king's conduct on the		He invades England	426
occasion	388	Insurrection in Cornwall ..	428
The pretender is joined by		Peace with Scotland	430
the earl of Lincoln	390	Warbeck in Cornwall.....	431
He lands in Furness	391	He flies to a sanctuary	432
Battle at Stoke	392	Submits to the king	433
Coronation of the queen	394	Escapes	434
Jurisdiction of the star-		Reads his confession	ib.
chamber.....	395	A pretended earl of Warwick ..	435
Prolongation of peace with		Execution of Warbeck	437
Scotland.....	398	And of the real earl of War-	
Affairs of Bretagne	400	wick	438
Henry's affected delays	401	Treaties with France	439
He obtains aid from parlia-		Treaties with Scotland	440
ment	404	Marriage of James with the	
Battle of Dixmude	405	king's daughter	441
Insurrection in Northumber-		Marriage of Prince Arthur ..	444
land	407	His death	446
Anne of Bretagne married		Contract of marriage be-	
by proxy	408	tween Henry and Catha-	
She is compelled to marry		rine	447
the king of France	409	The king and queen of Cas-	
Henry prepares for war	411	tile in England	450
He lands in France	412	Henry gets possession of the	
And concludes a peace with		earl of Suffolk.....	451
Charles	413	New projects of marriage ..	454
Story of Perkin Warbeck ..	414	The king's scheme to get	
He is acknowledged in		money	456
France	416	His sickness and death ..	459

HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND.

CHAP. I.

HENRY V.

CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

<i>Emperor of Ger.</i> Sigismund.	<i>King of Scotl.</i> James I.	<i>King of France.</i> Charles VI.	<i>Kings of Spain.</i> Henry III. 1416. John II.	<i>Popes.</i> John XXIII. Martin V.	1415.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--	---	-------

SUCCESSION OF HENRY V.—INSURRECTION OF THE LOLLARDS—
—INVASION OF FRANCE—BATTLE OF AZINCOURT—SECOND
INVASION OF FRANCE—CONQUEST OF NORMANDY—MURDER
OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY—HENRY IS MADE REGENT OF
FRANCE—REDUCES MEAUX—AND DIES—HIS FUNERAL—AFFAIRS
OF THE CHURCH.

THE late king had outlived his popularity: and the intelligence of his death excited little regret in any part of his dominions. His eldest son, Henry of Monmouth, immediately ascended the throne. He had so long been considered as heir

CHAP.
I.
~~~~~  
Succes-  
sion of  
Henry V.  
1415.  
Mar. 21.

CHAP.

I.

apparent, that the claim of the earl of March was never mentioned; and though his errors had created a prejudice against him, his subjects were willing to attribute them rather to the giddiness of youth than to depravity of heart. Neither did he disappoint their expectations. As soon as his father expired, he withdrew to his closet, spent the rest of the day in privacy and prayer, and in the evening hastened to his confessor, a recluse in the church of Westminster; by whom he was confirmed in his resolution to atone for the scandal of his past, by the propriety of his subsequent conduct. The dissolute companions of his pleasures were instantly dismissed: men of knowledge and experience were invited round the throne: and those, who by checking his excesses had earned the enmity of the *prince*, found themselves, to their surprise, honoured with the approbation and friendship of the *king*.<sup>1</sup> As an act of justice he set at liberty the earl of March, who from his childhood had been kept in confinement by the late monarch, for no other crime than his right to the throne: after some time he restored the son of Hotspur, an exile in Scotland, to the honours and hereditary estates of the Percies; and when the remains of the unfortunate Richard were removed by his orders from Langley to Westminster abbey, he testified his respect for that prince by

---

<sup>1</sup> Tit. Liv. 5. Wals. 382. Otterb. 273. Elm. 16.

attending as chief mourner in the funeral procession.<sup>2</sup>

Henry had partaken of the general alarm excited among the higher classes by the levelling principles of the lollards : and, when he was only prince of Wales, had joined the lords and commons in presenting a petition to his father for the arrest and punishment of their preachers.<sup>3</sup> Now, however, the chiefs of the sect, whether they were urged forward by enthusiasm, or intoxicated with success, instead of labouring to remove these unfavourable impressions, sought to intimidate their adversaries : and during the king's first parliament affixed papers to the doors of the different churches in the metropolis, stating that, if the authority of the crown should be employed in opposition to their doctrine, they were able to assemble one hundred thousand men ready to draw the sword in its defence.<sup>4</sup> This daring menace provoked an investigation : and it was discovered, that the person, by whose councils the party had been led, and on whom it chiefly relied, was Sir John Oldcastle, called from the inheritance of his wife, the lord of Cobham. His castle of Cowling had long been the head quarters of the teachers of lollardism : thence they issued forth on their missions in the

CHAP.  
I.

Insurrec-  
tion of the  
lollards.

<sup>2</sup> Walsing. 385. Otterb. 274. Rot. Parl. iv. 6. 37.

<sup>3</sup> See vol. iv. p. 432.

<sup>4</sup> Walsing 382.

CHAP. I. neighbourhood ; and, protected by his servants, set at defiance the prohibitions of the bishops, and the citations of the spiritual courts.<sup>5</sup> The convocation, to spare the honour of a man, who had been one of Henry's most intimate companions,<sup>6</sup> instead of summoning him before the usual tribunal, denounced him to the king, who, with the zeal of an apostle, undertook the task of working his conversion. But the obstinacy of the disciple speedily exhausted the patience of the master : after a few days the king began to enforce his arguments with threats ; and Oldcastle thought it time to withdraw from Windsor to his own residence at Cowling.<sup>7</sup> His flight was followed by a royal proclamation, ordering the magistrates to arrest not only the itinerant preachers, but their hearers and abettors ; and by a mandate to the archbishop of Canterbury, requiring him to proceed against the fugitive

Aug. 21.

<sup>5</sup> Wilkins, Conc. iii. 330. 338. 352, 353.

<sup>6</sup> Tit. Liv. p. 6. Elm. p. 31, who add that on account of his opinions he had been dismissed by the king before the coronation. From Fuller (p. 168) we derive the curious information that sir John Oldcastle was, among our more ancient dramatists, the debauched but facetious knight, who now treads the stage under the name of sir John Falstaff.

<sup>7</sup> A book belonging to Oldcastle had been seized in the shop of a limner, with whom it had been left to be illuminated. It was read before the king in the presence of the owner. Henry declared that he had never heard doctrines so pernicious, and asked the knight what he thought of them. Of course he did not dispute the judgment of his sovereign, but alleged in his own excuse that he had never read more than two pages of the work. Conc. iii. 352.

according to law.<sup>8</sup> The spiritual powers of that prelate were soon exhausted. Oldcastle disobeyed his summons, and laughed at his excommunication ; but was compelled to surrender to a military force sent by the king, and was conducted a prisoner to the tower. On his arraignment before the primate, his conduct was as arrogant and insulting, as that of his judge was mild and dignified. Not content with signifying his dissent from the established creed, he poured out a torrent of abuse against all those by whom it was upheld. He maintained that the church had ceased to teach the doctrine of the gospel from the moment that it became infected with the poison of worldly riches : that the clergy were the antichrist : that the pope was the head, the bishops and prelates the limbs, and the religious orders the tail of the beast : and that the only true successor of St. Peter was he, who most faithfully practised the virtues of St. Peter. Then turning to the spectators, and extending his arms, he exclaimed : “ Be- “ ware of the men who sit here as my judges. “ They will seduce both you and themselves, “ and will lead you to hell.” He was brought to the bar on two different days, and persisting in his opinions, was pronounced an obstinate heretic.<sup>9</sup> The primate, however, when he de-

CHAP.  
I.  
Apprehen-  
sion of  
Oldcastle.

Sept. 23.

<sup>8</sup> Rym. ix. 46. Conc. 357.

<sup>9</sup> Rym. ix. 61—66. Conc. 353—357.

CHAP. I. livered him to the civil magistrate, procured from the king a respite of fifty days: during which Oldcastle found the means to escape from the Tower, and to assemble the most ardent of his partisans. Emissaries were immediately dispatched into the neighbouring counties: an army was secretly organized: and thousands of fanatics held themselves in readiness to march to the metropolis, though they were kept in ignorance of the real object of their leaders. The first plan of the conspirators, to surprise the king at Eltham, was defeated by his unexpected departure for Westminster: and a second resolution was formed to collect all their adherents in the fields at St. Giles's, on the day after the epiphany. The king, who was perfectly apprized of their intentions, having secured the gates of the city to separate the lollards within the walls from those without, proceeded a little after midnight with a strong body of forces to the place of rendezvous. The roads were covered with insurgents hastening from all quarters towards St. Giles's: but the first companies that arrived were surrounded and secured: the fugitives who escaped, spread the alarm, and the parties on their march precipitately dispersed.<sup>10</sup>

Dispersion  
of the in-  
surgents.

1414.  
Jan. 7.

Their  
number  
and de-  
signs.

The number of the insurgents on this occasion is calculated at twenty thousand: and the object of their leaders was, if we may credit royal pro-

<sup>10</sup> Tit. Liv. 6. Wals. 385, 386. Elm. 31, 32.

clamations and parliamentary records, of the most dangerous tendency. The commons in their address state, that the lollards had sought “to destroy the christian faith, the king, the spiritual and temporal estates, and all manner of policy and law:” Henry in his proclamation declares that they meant “to destroy him, his brothers, and several of the spiritual and temporal lords, to confiscate the possessions of the church, to secularize the religious orders, to divide the realm into confederate districts, and to appoint Sir John Oldcastle president of the commonwealth.”<sup>11</sup> That leader escaped; and though the king offered the most tempting rewards for his apprehension, eluded for several years the pursuit and search of his enemies. Of his accomplices many were secured, condemned, and executed. The failure of the insurrection had the usual effect of adding to the severity of the penal laws already in existence. It was enacted that all judges and magistrates should be authorized to arrest persons suspected of lollardism: and that the prisoners on their conviction should forfeit their lands, goods, and chattels, as in cases of felony.<sup>12</sup>

The restoration of tranquillity allowed the king to direct his attention towards the French

CHAP.

1.

Henry claims the crown of France.

<sup>11</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 24. 108. Rym. ix. 89. 119. 129. 170. 193.

<sup>12</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 24. In this parliament the king's brothers, John and Humphrey, were made dukes of Bedford and Gloucester. Elm. 33.

CHAP.

I.

1413.  
April 28.1414.  
July 10.

throne, which was still occupied by an imbecile monarch, and was daily undermined by the rage of contending factions. Within the course of a few months the reins of government had successively passed from the hands of John the fearless, duke of Burgundy, to the dauphin, a young prince, rash, headstrong, and capricious;<sup>13</sup> to the populace of the capital, whose ephemeral superiority had been accompanied with the imprisonment or massacre of the lords and ladies attached to the court;<sup>14</sup> and lastly to the duke of Orleans, who persisted in waging a successful but impolitic war against the Burgundians, the ancient foes of his family. To the aspiring mind of Henry these troubles opened a most alluring prospect. He determined to revive the claim, and tread in the footsteps, of his great grandfather, Edward III.; and, if he consented to a succession of short truces at the prayer of Charles, it was only that he might have leisure to mature his plans, to provide money for his expenses, and to open the war with an army adequate to his object. A little more than a year had elapsed from his accession, when he unexpectedly demanded the crown of France, with all its appurtenances, as the heir

<sup>13</sup> He is said to have sent in derision to Henry a present of tennis balls. The king promised to return the compliment with English balls, which should batter to the ground the walls of Paris. Otterb. 275.

<sup>14</sup> See the letter of the king of France in Rymer, ix. 51. and the account of Monstrelet, i. 165—170.

of Isabella, daughter of Philip IV. The French ministers might have replied, that he was not the legitimate representative of that princess :<sup>15</sup> but they deemed the claim an insult to the national independence; and refused to admit it even as a subject of discussion. Henry therefore consented that Charles should continue to possess his throne, but required as the price of his forbearance conditions, which would have reduced France to a secondary station among the powers of Europe: that he should cede to England in full sovereignty the provinces of Normandy, Maine, and Anjou; the territories which formerly composed the dutchy of Aquitaine; and the several towns and counties included in the great peace of Bretigny: that he should put Henry in possession of one half of Provence, the inheritance of Eleanor and Sanchia, the queens of Henry III. and of his brother Richard, and two of the four daughters of Berenger, once sovereign of that country: that he should faithfully discharge the arrears of the ransom of king John, amounting to twelve hundred thousand crowns; and that he should give his daughter Catharine in marriage to the king of England with a portion of two millions of crowns.<sup>16</sup> To these demands the duke of Berri, the organ of

<sup>15</sup> The reader will recollect that our kings claimed the French crown on the plea that it could descend by females. Now in that hypothesis it belonged not to Henry, but to the earl of March.

<sup>16</sup> Two crowns were equal to a noble English.

CHAP.

I.

~~~

the French government, replied : that Charles for the sake of peace was willing to restore all the territories anciently comprehended within the dutchy of Aquitaine; and to give with his daughter six hundred thousand crowns, a greater portion than had ever been given on a similar occasion by any of his predecessors. By a prince of ordinary ambition such offers would have been cheerfully accepted. It was evident that they were made not on account of the real superiority of England, but of the temporary embarrassments of France; and there was reason to fear, that, if they should be refused, the different factions might unite against the common enemy, and by their union defeat all his projects. Great, however, as they were, they did not satisfy the expectations of Henry.¹⁷ He recalled his ambassadors, summoned a parliament, avowed his intention of vindicating his right by arms, and obtained a supply of two tenths, and two fifteenths.¹⁸ The grant of so large a sum created considerable alarm in the French court: and Henry resolved to make a second attempt by negociation. A few days before the conclusion of the armistice, the earl of Dorset, with the bishops of Durham and Norwich, and a retinue of six hundred horsemen, entered Paris, where by their parade and magnificence, they surprised

Oct. 3.

Nov. 19.

1415.
Jan. 24.

¹⁷ The whole process of the negociation is to be found in Rymer, ix. 208.

¹⁸ Rot. Parl. iv. 35.

and mortified the vanity of the French.¹⁹ Their first object was easily attained, to prolong the truce during four months. They next proposed a treaty of peace and alliance on a new basis. The claim of Normandy, Maine, and Anjou, was entirely abandoned: they consented to accept of the princess with half the sum originally required: but every other demand made by the late embassy, was repeated and enforced. The duke of Berri gave the same answer, with this unimportant difference, that he offered eight instead of six hundred thousand crowns as the marriage portion of Catharine. The ambassadors immediately returned.²⁰

It is probable that the result of the negotiation was not displeasing to Henry. His counsellors might wish to avert the impending calamities of war: but the young hero longed to encircle his brow with the laurels of a conqueror. A council of fifteen spiritual and twenty-eight temporal peers was immediately assembled: the king declared his resolution “to recover his inheritance” by arms:²¹ and his speech was received with applause, and assurances of support. The duke of Bedford, one of his brothers, accepted the office of regent during the royal absence: his duties and powers were specified: the members of the council

CHAP.
I.

March 13.

March 14.

Makes
prepara-
tions for
war.

April 16.

¹⁹ Monstrel. i. 216.

²⁰ Rym. ix. 205. 212—215.

²¹ Rym. ix. 222.

CHAP.
I.
~~~

appointed : and the terms of military service arranged.<sup>22</sup> The barons and knights, anxious to obtain renown, or to secure the royal favour, engaged to furnish troops according to their abilities : and while *they* levied men, Henry himself pawned his jewels, solicited loans, and by great exertions amassed the sum of five hundred thousand nobles.<sup>23</sup>

Dismisses  
the French  
envoys.

The French ministers had made no preparations to meet the tempest, with which they were threatened. Occupied in maintaining the ascendency over the domestic rivals, they had flattered themselves that the king of England

---

<sup>22</sup>The following were the terms, and the manner of raising the army. 1. Contracts were made by the keeper of the privy seal with different lords and gentlemen, who bound themselves to serve with a certain number of men for a year, from the day on which they were first mustered. 2. The pay of a duke was to be 13*s.* 4*d.* per day; an earl, 6*s.* 8*d.*; a baron or banneret, 4*s.*; a knight, 2*s.*; an esquire, 1*s.*; an archer, 6*d.* 3. The pay, or security for its amount was to be delivered by the treasurer a quarter of a year in advance: and if the money were not actually paid at the beginning of the fourth quarter, the engagement was to be at an end. As an additional remuneration, each contractor received “the usual “regard,” or *douceur* of 100 marks for every 30 men at arms. 4. A duke was to have 50 horses; an earl, 24; a baron or banneret, 16; a knight, 6; an esquire, 4; an archer, 1. The horses were to be furnished by the contractor—the equipment by the king. 5. All prisoners were to belong to the captors: but if they were kings, the sons of kings, or officers high in command bearing commissions from kings, they were to belong to the crown, on the payment of a reasonable recompense to the captors. 6. The booty taken was to be divided into three parts. Two remained to the men: the third was again divided into three parts, of which the leader took two, and left the third to the king. See the several contracts in Rymer, ix. 223. 227—239. <sup>23</sup>Ibid. 241. 271. 284—287.

would accept of the terms which had been offered him: and with this fallacious expectation they even now sent the archbishop of Bourges, and the earl of Vendome, to repeat the proposals which had lately been made by the duke of Berri. The ambassadors were introduced to the king at Winchester: the next day Henry Chichely, who had lately succeeded to the archbishopric of Canterbury, informed them that his sovereign would accept nothing short of the restoration of all the territories which had ever been possessed by his predecessors: and Henry following the primate, added, that the crown of France was his right, and that he would wrest it from its unjust possessor in defiance of all his enemies. These words aroused the spirit of the archbishop of Bourges, who having previously obtained permission, replied: that if the king attributed to fear the offers which had been made, he deceived himself. The throne of France was the most excellent in Europe. It would require more than the power of England to shake it. Let Henry, if he chose, make the attempt: he would either be driven back to the sea, or would pay the forfeit of his presumption with his liberty, perhaps with his life. As for himself, the archbishop added, that he had nothing more to do in England. He requested his passports: but trusted that the king would give the answer in writing, and spare him the pain of delivering so insulting a message by word of

CHAP.

I.

Conspira-  
cy against  
him.

July 21.

Aug. 2.

mouth. Henry did not resent the freedom of the prelate, but dismissed him and his colleague with valuable presents.<sup>24</sup>

Every preparation was now complete: the army had assembled at Southampton; and the king superintended the embarkation. At that very moment, while his mind was occupied with visions of conquest and glory, he was suddenly alarmed with the intelligence that a conspiracy against his life had been formed in the bosom of his own family and household. The ringleader was his cousin Richard, a brother to the duke of York, and lately created earl of Cambridge. The principal accomplices were sir Thomas Grey, of Heton, a Northumbrian knight; and the lord Scroop, of Masham, who had been honoured with the highest employments in the state, and was, both in bed and at board, at the council table and in the chase, the king's individual companion. What motives could induce them to form the design, or whence they derived their hopes of success, it is impossible to discover; the historian must content himself with describing the facts as they appear upon record. By an inquest of twelve jurors of the county it was found, but on what testimony is not mentioned, that the earl of Cambridge had conspired with sir Thomas Grey to collect a

---

<sup>24</sup> See Monstrelet (i. 221), who praises the spirit, and Elmham (p. 30) and Walsingham (p. 389), who reprove the insolence, of the French prelate.

body of armed men, to conduct the earl of March to the frontiers of Wales, and to proclaim him the rightful heir to the crown in case Richard II. were really dead :<sup>25</sup> and had also by their emissaries solicited Thomas of Trumpyngton, who still personated Richard, Henry Percy, who had not yet returned from Scotland, and several Scottish lords, to invade the king's dominions at an appointed time : and that the lord Scroop had received from them the knowledge of their treasonable intentions, had concealed that knowledge from the king and council, and given to the conspirators his aid and abettance. On this indictment the prisoners were arraigned, and severally pleaded guilty ; but the lord Scroop added, that his intention was innocent, as his only object in learning, was to defeat, the plans of the conspirators. The usual judgment of treason was passed against Grey : but the king commuted the most disgraceful parts of the sentence. Instead of being drawn, he was permitted to walk to the place of execution, and suffered decapitation instead of being hanged. Cambridge and Scroop claimed the privilege of being tried by their peers. The duke of Clarence presided in the place of the king : all the lords in the army were summoned : and the duke of York, that he might not sit in

Aug. 5.

<sup>25</sup> It should be observed that the earl of Cambridge had married Anne, sister to the earl of March, who, on the death of her brother without issue, would have had the real right to the crown.

CHAP. judgment on his brother, appointed the earl of  
 I. Dorset his proxy. By this court both were con-  
 demned :<sup>26</sup> and after a fruitless appeal by the  
 earl of Cambridge to the mercy of his royal  
 relative, were executed. Though the earl of  
 March sat among the judges at the trial, he  
 soon afterwards received from Henry a general  
 pardon for all treasons and offences : whence it  
 has been inferred by some writers that he was  
 privy to the conspiracy, and had secured the  
 royal favour by betraying his accomplices. But  
 the inference is not warranted by the practice of  
 the age. Such pardons were frequently solicited  
 by the most innocent, as a measure of precau-  
 tion to defeat the malice, and prevent the accu-  
 sations, of their enemies.<sup>27</sup>

He lands  
in Nor-  
mandy.  
Aug. 13.

Aug. 14.

Aug. 17.

Henry's impatience had hastened the trial and execution of the conspirators. As soon as the wind would permit, he left Southampton ; and after a rapid voyage entered the mouth of the Seine with a fleet of fifteen hundred sail, carrying six thousand men at arms and twenty-four thousand archers. Three days were consumed in landing the men, stores, and provisions : and immediately Harfleur, a strong fortress on the right bank of the river, was invested by land

<sup>26</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 64—67.

indeed true that the earl of Cambridge in his written confession charges the earl of March with having assented to the plan : but the charge was certainly disbelieved. He sat as a judge. Rot. Parl. iv. 66.

<sup>27</sup> Rym. ix. 303. It is

Reduces  
Harfleur.  
Sept. 26.

and blockaded by water. The knights in garrison, confident in their valour and numbers, repeatedly assailed the intrenchments of the besiegers: but successive defeats taught them to confine themselves within the walls: their defences were in a short time shattered or demolished by the artillery: and in the fifth week they submitted to an unconditional surrender. The men at arms were dismissed in their doublets, after taking an oath to yield themselves prisoners within a fixed time to the governor of Calais: the inhabitants, men, women, and children, were banished from their homes for ever, carrying with them a portion of their clothes, and five pennies each to procure subsistence: and the riches of the town, with the arms and horses of the garrison, were faithfully distributed among the conquerors, according to their terms of service. Harfleur in the estimation of Henry had already become a second Calais: but its reduction had been purchased with the sacrifice of many officers and men, who perished not only from the casualties of the siege, but from the ravages of a dysentery caused by the dampness of the place, the immaturity of the fruits, and the exhalations of the putrid remains of animals slaughtered for the use of the camp. When the sick and wounded had been sent to England, and a competent garrison had been selected for the defence of the place, the army was reduced to one half of its former number:

CHAP. I. a force evidently too inconsiderable to attempt any expedition of importance.<sup>28</sup> But the king's honour was now at stake: and, to brave the enemy, he took the bold and chivalrous resolution of marching to Calais through the hostile provinces of Normandy, Picardy and Artois. It was in vain that the uselessness of so hazardous an expedition was represented by the majority of the council: the objections of prudence were opposed by the fear of incurring the imputation of cowardice: and every voice was silent, as soon as the king had declared, that he would never shun the men, who had unjustly seized his inheritance.

Crosses the Somme,  
Oct. 6

The army proceeded in three grand divisions, attended by two detachments, which alternately served as wings in the field, and as van and rear guards on the march.<sup>29</sup> At every step they were closely watched by strong bodies of the enemy; who, while they avoided an engagement, cut off the stragglers, and laid waste the country. The progress of the English was slow. Often they were compelled to pass the day without food: and it was with difficulty that they could extort a scanty subsistence from the fears of the inhabitants in the villages, where they rested during the night. As they crossed the river

<sup>28</sup> Tit. Liv. 9—11. Wals. 390, 391. Elm. 40—49. Monstrel. i. 223, 224. 226.

<sup>29</sup> Livius observes on this arrangement, that it was the custom of the English, p. 12. Elmham also says, *ut Moris est*, p. 51.

Bresle, they were attacked by the garrison of Eu with loud shouts and amazing impetuosity :<sup>30</sup> but they received the assailants with coolness ; and after a sharp contest drove them back to the walls. At length, the van guard reached Blanchetaque on the Somme. Henry had expected to force the passage like his grandfather Edward III. : but the enemy had profited by experience, and had intersected the ford with lines of palisades, behind which were posted strong bodies of archers and men at arms. The king now became sensible of his danger. He hastily retraced his steps to Arrames : and avoiding Abbeville, where D'Albret, the constable of France, had fixed his head quarters, proceeded along the left bank of the river to Bailleul. The enemy from the opposite side observed all his motions : and as he advanced, he found every bridge broken down, and every ford protected by troops and fortifications. Each day added to his disappointments : and his followers began to abandon themselves to despair, when fortunately a ford was discovered near Bethencourt, which had been neglected by the militia of St. Quentin's. The English hastened to establish themselves at Monchy la Gauche, on the right bank : and the constable, mortified at their success, retired on the road to Calais as far as Bapaume

CHAP.  
I.  
~~~

Oct. 12.

Oct. 13.

Oct. 19.

³⁰ Clamore et impetu maximo....., cantu terrifico, impetuque maximo, ut moris est Gallis. Tit. Liv. p. 13.

CHAP.

I.

Messages
between
the ar-
mies.

Oct. 20.

and St. Pol, ordering at the same time the numerous reinforcements, which he expected, to quicken their march to his assistance.³¹

It had long been the policy of the French commanders to decline an engagement with the English, unless they possessed a decided superiority in numbers or strength of position. On the present occasion the expediency of offering battle was debated in a military council, held at Rouen in presence of Charles : and the question was decided in the affirmative by a majority of five-and-thirty voices to five. As soon as the constable had received his orders, he communicated their purport to Henry by three heralds, who were introduced to him by the duke of York, and delivered their message on their knees. The king answered with apparent indifference, that the will of God would be done. They enquired by what road he intended to March. “By that which leads straight to Ca-“lais,” was his reply: “and if my enemies at-“tempt to intercept me, it will be at their peril. “I shall not seek them: but I will not move a “step quicker or slower to avoid them. I could “however have wished that they had adopted “other counsels, instead of determining to shed “the blood of christians.” It is probable that the last words alluded to a private challenge which the king had sent to the dauphin, and

³¹ Monstrel. i. 226.

which, if we may believe his solemn declaration, had been made for the sole purpose of sparing the blood of men, who had no personal interest in their quarrel. The heralds, who had delivered their message under considerable apprehensions, received a present of one hundred crowns, and returned impressed with a deep veneration for the character of the king.³²

The English continued their march leisurely and in good order towards Blangi. The deep and rapid stream of the Ternois intersected the road: but a detachment arrived in time to secure the bridge, which the French were preparing to demolish: and the whole army crossed without any molestation. In a short time the duke of York discovered several large masses of the enemy marching in the direction of Azincourt: and Henry, having reconnoitred them from an eminence, gave orders to form in line of battle. The men remained in their ranks till it was dark: but as no enemy approached, they broke up in the evening, and advanced in silence by a white road which lay before them. Fortunately it led to Maisoncelles, a large village, where they found better food, and more comfortable accommodations than they had known for some weeks.³³

CHAP.
I.
The English at
Maisoncelles.
Oct. 4.

³² Monstrel. i. 226. Liv. 14. Elmh. 55.

³³ Elmh. 56. Monstrel. i. 227. From the notices in this writer may be drawn the following journal of the king's march.—Oct. 6. He left Harfleur (Otterburn says it was the 9th).—12. Was disap-

CHAP.

I.



It was with difficulty that the constable had checked the impetuosity of his followers, who now amounted, at the lowest calculation, to one hundred thousand cavalry. But he knew, that in the fatal battles of Creci and Poitiers, the French had been the assailants, and he determined on the present occasion to leave that dangerous honour to the English. To him delay could bring only new accessions of force: to them it was pregnant with famine and inevitable destruction. On this account he had selected a strong position in the fields in front of the village of Azincourt, through which it was necessary for the king of England to cut his way, unless he would consent to yield himself prisoner. His mareschals had allotted their stations to the different divisions of the army: and each lord had planted his banner on the spot which he intended to occupy during the battle. The night was cold, dark, and rainy: but numerous fires illumined the horizon; and bursts of laughter and merriment were repeatedly heard from the French lines. The men collected round their banners; spent their time in revel-

pointed at Blanchetaque, and slept at Arrames.—13. Slept at Bailleul.—14. Repulsed at Pont St. Remy, and slept at Hangest.—15. Repulsed at Ponteau de Mer, and slept at Bones.—16. Slept at Herbonnieres.—17. Slept at Wauvillers.—18. Slept at Bainvillers.—19. Crossed the Somme at Voyenne and Bethencourt. Slept at Monchy la Gauche.—22. Marched by Encre, and slept at Forceville.—23. Marched by Lucheu, and slept at Bouvieres.—24. Passed through Blangi to Maisondcelles.

ling and debate ; discussed the probable events of the next day ; and fixed the ransom of the English king and his barons. No one suspected the possibility of a defeat : and yet they could not be ignorant that they lay in the vicinity of the field of Creci.³⁴

To the English it was a night of hope and fear, of suspense and anxiety. They had been wasted with disease, broken with fatigue, and weakened by the many privations which must attend the march of an army through a hostile country, and in the presence of a superior force. But they were supported by the spirit and confidence of their gallant leader, and by the proud recollection of the victories won in similar circumstances by their fathers. As men, however, who had staked their lives on the issue of the approaching battle, they spent the intervening moments in making their wills, and in attending to the exercises of religion. The king himself took little repose. He visited the different quarters of the army ; sent, as soon as the moon arose, officers to examine the ground ; arranged the operations of the next day ; ordered bands of music to play in succession during the night ; and before sunrise summoned the men to attend at matins and mass. From prayer he led them into the field, and arrayed them after his usual manner in three divisions and two wings ; but

CHAP.
I.

Prepara-
tions for
battle.

Oct. 23.

³⁴ Monstrel. i. 227.

CHAP. J. so near to each other, that they seemed to form but one body. The archers, on whom he rested his principal hope, were placed in advance of the men at arms. Their well earned reputation in former battles, and their savage appearance on the present day, struck terror into their enemies. Many had stripped themselves naked: the others had bared their arms and breasts, that they might exercise their limbs with more ease and execution. Beside his bow and arrows, his battle-axe or sword, each bore on his shoulder a long stake sharpened at both extremities, which he was instructed to fix obliquely before him in the ground, and thus oppose a rampart of pikes to the charge of the French cavalry. The king himself appeared on a grey palfrey, followed by a train of led horses ornamented with the most gorgeous trappings. His helmet was of polished steel, surmounted with a crown sparkling with jewels; and on his surcoat were emblazoned in gold the arms of England and France.³⁵ As he rode from banner to banner, cheering and exhorting the men, he chanced to hear an officer express a wish to his comrade that some of the good knights, who were sitting idle in England, might by a miracle be transported to the field of battle, “No,” exclaimed Henry, “I would not have a single man more. “If God give us the victory, it will be plain that

³⁵ Tres flores aurei et tres leopardi aureri. Elmh. 61.

“ we owe it to his goodness. If he do not, the
 “ fewer we are, the less will be the loss to our
 “ country. But fight with your usual courage,
 “ and God and the justice of our cause will pro-
 “ tect us. Before night the pride of our ene-
 “ mies shall be humbled in the dust; and the
 “ greater part of that multitude shall be stretched
 “ on the field, or captives in our power.”³⁶

The French were drawn up in the same order, but with this fearful disparity in point of number, that while the English files were but four, theirs were thirty men deep.³⁷ The constable himself commanded the first division: the dukes of Bar and Alençon the second: the earls of Marle and Falconberg the third. The distance between the two armies scarcely exceeded a quarter of a mile: but the ground was wet and spongy; and D'Albret, faithful to his plan, ordered his men to sit down near their banners, and await in patience the advance of the enemy. Their inactivity disconcerted the king, who expected to be attacked. He improved the opportunity, however, to order a plentiful refreshment to be distributed through the ranks, while two detach-

Battle of
Azincourt..

³⁶ Liv. 16. Elm. 60, 61.

³⁷ Livius and Elmham observe that in the French lines were placed a number of military engines or cannons, to cast stones into the midst of the English (Liv. 19. Elm. 62). According to Livius the French were to the English as something more than seven to one. Monstrelet (i. 228) makes them as six to one. I suspect that in Elmham, where he mentions the files, we should read xxx instead of xx, as we do in Livius. A contemporary writer estimates the enemy at 100,000. Apud Raynald. v. 47³.

CHAP.
I.
~~~~~ ments stole away unperceived by the French ; of which one was instructed to lie in ambush in a meadow at Tramecourt on their left flank, and the other to alarm them during the battle by setting fire to the houses in their rear. Just as the king had made every preparation for the attack, he was surprized by the approach of three French knights, who demanded permission to speak with him. One of them was the baron de Helly, who had been a prisoner in England, and had broken his parole. He took the opportunity to deny the charge, and offered to meet in single combat between the two armies any man, who should dare to repeat it. The king, who saw his object, instantly replied : “ This is not a time for “ single combats. Go, tell your countrymen to “ prepare for battle before night, and doubt not “ that for the violation of your word, *you* will a “ second time forfeit your liberty, if not your “ life.” “ Sir,” returned Helly, “ I shall receive “ no orders from you. Charles is our sovereign. “ Him we obey : and for him we shall fight you, “ whenever we think proper.” “ Away then,” resumed the king, “ and take care that we are not “ before you.”<sup>38</sup> Immediately stepping forward,

<sup>38</sup> Livius, p. 17. Elmham mentions the arrival of the knights, but not their object, p. 63. But the contemporary ballad says that they summoned him to surrender.

The lord Haly un trewe knyzt  
Untel oure kyng he come in hye,  
And sayd: “ Syre, zeld zou withoute syzt  
“ And save zoure self and zoure meyney.”

*Elm.* 368.

he exclaimed, “ Banners, advance.” At the same moment sir Thomas Erpingham threw his warder into the air: and the men falling on their knees, bit the ground,<sup>39</sup> arose, shouted, and ran towards the enemy. At the distance of twenty paces they halted to recover breath, and then repeated the shout. It was echoed back by the detachment in the meadow, which issuing from its concealment, instantly assailed the left flank of the French. At the same moment the archers, having planted their stakes, ran before them, discharged their arrows, and retired behind their rampart. The constable had appointed a select battalion of eight hundred men at arms to break this formidable body. Of the whole number not more than seven score ever came into action. These were quickly dispatched: the others, unable to face the incessant shower of arrows, turned their visors aside, and lost the government of their horses, which, frantic with pain, plunged in different directions into the close ranks of the first division. It was a moment of irremediable confusion. Nor did the archers lose the opportunity. Slinging their bows be-

Defeat of  
the first  
division of  
the French.

<sup>39</sup> A singulis in ore capta terræ particula. Tit. Liv. 18, 19. Elmh. 65. This singular custom had been introduced by the peasants of Flanders before the great victory, which they gained over the French cavalry at Courtray in 1302. A priest stood in front of the army, holding the consecrated host in his hand: and each man, kneeling down, took a particle of earth in his mouth, as a sign of his desire, and an acknowledgment of his unworthiness, to receive the sacrament. Spondan. ii. 339.

CHAP. I hind them, and with their swords or battle-axes in their hands, they burst into the mass of the enemy, killed the constable and principal commanders, and in a short time totally dispersed the whole body.<sup>40</sup>

Of the second.

Henry, who had followed with the men at arms, ordered the archers to form again, and immediately charged the second division. The Frenchmen, though the fate of their fellows had checked their presumption, met the shock with courage, and maintained for two hours a most bloody and doubtful contest. The king's life was repeatedly in imminent danger. Seeing his brother, the duke of Clarence, wounded and lying on the ground, he hastily strode across the body, and bravely repelled the efforts of the assailants, till the prince was safely removed by his own servants. Soon afterwards, he was charged by a band of eighteen French knights, who had bound themselves to each other to kill him or take him prisoner. One of them with a stroke of his mace brought the king on his knees: but he was instantly rescued by his guards, and his opponents were all slain. At length the duke of Alençon, the French commander, fought his way to the royal standard. With one stroke he beat the duke of York to the ground: with a second he cleaved the crown on the king's helmet. Every arm was instantly

---

<sup>40</sup> Monstiel. i. 229. Wals. 392. Tit. Liv. 19.

uplifted against him. The duke, aware of his danger, exclaimed, “ I yield : I am Alençon.” Henry held out his hand : but his gallant enemy had already fallen. The death of the duke was followed by the flight of the survivors.<sup>41</sup>

CHAP.  
I.  
~~~

There still remained the third and most numerous division of the enemy. Though dismayed it was yet unbroken ; and the English were preparing for the charge, when the alarming intelligence arrived, that a powerful force approached the rear of the army. In this emergency the king hastily gave orders that all the prisoners should be put to death : orders which in most instances were unfortunately executed, before the mistake could be discovered. The force, which had been so greatly magnified, consisted only of six hundred peasants under Robinet de Bouronville, and Ysambert d’Azincourt ; who had profited of the moment to enter Maisonscelles, plunder the baggage, and drive away the horses of the army. That this enterprise should prove so disastrous to their countrymen, they could not have foreseen : but they were afterwards called to account, and severely punished by their immediate lord, the duke of Burgundy⁴².

And of the
third.

During this interval the ranks of the third division began to waver : and their irresolution was augmented by the flames kindled in their rear by the English detachment. Of the whole

⁴¹ Tit. Liv. 20. Elmh. 67. Monstrel. i. 231.

⁴² Monstrel. i. 229.

CHAP.

I.

number no more than six hundred could be persuaded to follow their leaders the earls of Falconberg and Marle, who boldly rushed on the conquerors, and found, what they probably sought, captivity or an honourable death. The English were in no condition to pursue the fugitives. As soon as resistance ceased, the king with his barons traversed the field, while the heralds examined the arms and numbered the bodies of the slain. He then called to him Montjoy, the French king at arms, and asked him to whom the victory belonged. "To you," said Montjoy. "And what?" continued the king, "is that castle, which I see at a distance?"—"It is called the castle of Azincourt," was the answer. "Then," resumed Henry, "let this battle be known to posterity by the name of the battle of Azincourt."⁴³

Loss of
the ene-
my.

The blood shed on this day was drawn from the noblest families in France. Among the slain were numbered eight thousand knights and esquires, more than a hundred bannerets, seven counts, the three dukes of Brabant, Bar, and

⁴³ The king impressed with the conviction that he owed his extraordinary success to the protection of heaven, sent for the clergy and ordered a service of thanksgiving to be immediately performed in the presence of the whole army. In allusion to their escape from the enemy, they chaunted the psalm cxiv. *When Israel came out of Egypt*: and at the verse, *Not unto us, O Lord, not unto us, but to thy name give the glory*, every man knelt on the ground. The ceremony was concluded with the *Te Deum*. Hall, f. 50.

Alençon, and the constable and admiral of France. The most distinguished of the prisoners were the dukes of Orleans and Bourbon, and the counts of Eu, Vendome, and Richmond. The loss of the conquerors amounted to sixteen hundred men, with the earl of Suffolk, and the duke of York. They left Maisonselles the next morning, and resumed their march towards Calais. As they crossed the field of battle, they killed such of the wounded, as still retained any appearance of life : and the moment they were gone, the hope of plunder conducted to the spot thousands of both sexes from the neighbouring villages. The foreign soldiers had carried off every article of value : these native plunderers stripped the slain of their clothes, and left more than ten thousand dead bodies exposed naked on the ground.⁴⁴ The count of Charolois, son of the duke of Burgundy, ordered them to be interred at his own expense. Those, which it was possible to recognise, were buried in the nearest churches, or conveyed to the tombs of their ancestors. The rest, to the number of five thousand eight hundred, were deposited in three long and deep pits dug in the field of battle. This vast cemetery was surrounded by a strong inclosure of thorns and trees, which pointed out to succeeding genera-

⁴⁴ *Et demourerent sur le champ tous desnuez, comme ils issirent du ventre leur mere.* Id. i. 231. Among the slain was the baron de Helly. Id. 230. Liv. 21.

CHAP.

L.

Henry re-
turns to
England.

tions the spot, where the resolution of a few Englishmen triumphed over the impetuous but ill-directed valour of their numerous enemies.⁴⁵

At Calais Henry assembled a council, in which it was determined to return to England. The army, indeed, wasted with disease, fatigue, and the casualties of war, was not in a condition to resume offensive operations : but the argument, which chiefly weighed with the king, will probably surprise the reader. It was maintained that his last expedition had sufficiently demonstrated his right to the crown of France : that God, by granting him the victory at Azincourt, had given the divine sanction to his claim : and that the same providence would hereafter furnish him with the opportunity of again seeking and ultimately recovering his inheritance. The fallacy of such reasoning could escape no one who recollects the events which followed the victories of Creci and Poitiers : but Henry was satisfied with a decision which allowed him to depart from France, and to receive in person the congratulations of his subjects. He sailed to Dover : the crowd plunged into the waves to meet him : and the conqueror was carried in their arms from his vessel to the beach.⁴⁶ The

⁴⁵ Monstrel. i. 230, 231, 232. Tit. Liv. 21.

⁴⁶ Tit. Liv. 22. The French captives of distinction were in the king's ship. They had never been at sea : and as it blew a storm, Henry was much diverted to hear them assert, that they would rather fight the battle of Azincourt over again, than encounter such another passage. Ibid.

road to London exhibited one triumphal procession. The lords, commons, and clergy, the mayor, aldermen, and citizens, conducted him into the capital: tapestry, representing the deeds of his ancestors, lined the walls of the houses: pageants were erected in the streets: sweet wines ran in the conduits: bands of children tastefully arrayed sang his praise: and the whole population seemed intoxicated with joy.⁴⁷ The parliament partook of the general enthusiasm. It ordered the tenth and fifteenth voted the last year to be levied immediately; added another tenth and fifteenth to be levied within twelve months; granted the king tonnage and poundage for the safeguard of the sea; and settled on him for life the subsidy on wool, wooll-fells, and leather.⁴⁸

In the spring Henry's vanity was flattered by a visit from several distinguished personages. Among those who sought to extinguish the schism, occasioned by the two pretenders to the papacy, no one had laboured more earnestly than Sigismund king of the Romans, and emperor elect: and as the co-operation of the kings of England and France was deemed necessary for the success of his endeavours, he cheerfully undertook to visit, and, if it were possible, to reconcile the two monarchs. In France he was received with honour, held several conferences

Arrival of
the emperor
Sigismund.

⁴⁷ *Liv. ibid. Elmh. 71, 72.*

⁴⁸ *Rot. Parl. iv. 63, 64.*

CHAP.

I.

1416.
April 7.

with Charles and his Ministers, and with their approbation proceeded on his journey. Henry endeavoured, by the most magnificent preparations, to convince his guests of his opulence and resources. By royal proclamation all the knights and esquires in the kingdom were summoned to the capital to attend on their sovereign: a fleet of three hundred sail assembled at Calais for the conveyance of Sigismund and his retinue, amounting to a thousand horsemen: and officers were appointed to escort him from Dover to London, and to defray his expenses on the road.⁴⁹ But before his arrival a story was told, which created some perplexity in the king's mind. It had chanced that curiosity led the emperor to witness the proceedings in the parliament of Paris: through courtesy he was invited to occupy the throne: and as, during the pleadings, one of the parties was in danger of being nonsuited, because he was only an esquire, Sigismund drew his sword, and dubbed him a knight. It was probably a harmless action, proceeding from the mere impulse of the moment: but by the spectators it was reproved, and in England was represented as an undue assumption of power in virtue of the imperial dignity.⁵⁰ Henry determined to preserve the rights and independence of his crown: and as soon as the emperor's ship cast anchor in the

⁴⁹ Rym. ix. 339, 340.⁵⁰ Monstrel. i. 235.

harbour, the Duke of Gloucester and several noblemen rode into the water with their swords drawn, and inquired whether the imperial stranger meant to claim or exercise any authority or jurisdiction in England. He replied in the negative, and was immediately received with all the honours due to the first sovereign in Europe.⁵¹

Sigismund had been accompanied or followed to England by ambassadors from France : and his mediation between the two crowns was seconded by the presence and exhortations of William of Bavaria, duke of Holland, and count of Hainault. Before them Henry explained his right to the kingdom of France : and alluding to his late victory, claimed the praise of moderation, when he offered to resign that right, on condition that the treaty of Bretigny should be faithfully executed in all its provisions. It is hardly credible that the French ministers could have advised their sovereign to accept of a proposal, which must have deprived him of one half of his dominions : though the emperor, when he afterwards entered into an alliance with Henry, accused Charles of having given to it a full but treacherous assent.⁵² Nothing in reality was more foreign from the present policy of the French court than humiliating concession. To the dauphin, who was lately dead, had succeeded in the administration of affairs, the count

CHAP.
I.

Naval vic-tory.

⁵¹ Tit. Liv. 21, 22. Elm. 73. 77.

⁵² Rym, ix. 327.

CHAP.

I.

of Armagnac, a nobleman of distinguished talents, and approved intrepidity. Anxious to signalize his entry into office with the recovery of Harfleur, he obstinately rejected every proposal for a truce, drew lines round the town, and with a fleet of French ships, and Genoese carracks, blockaded the harbour. The earl of Dorset, who commanded in Harfleur, earnestly solicited a supply of troops and provisions: and Henry himself would have sailed to the relief of his first conquest, had he not been restrained by the remonstrances of Sigismund, who deemed it an enterprise of less consequence than to require the presence of the sovereign. The Duke of Bedford accepted the command: and after a rough and dilatory passage reached the mouth of the Seine. At sunset the captains of the fleet were summoned on board the Admiral's vessel: the lights, which he displayed during the night, kept the ships together: and in the morning they bore down on the enemy. It was found that the loftiest of the English vessels did not reach to the upper decks of the Genoese by more than a spear's length: but the deficiency was supplied by the native courage of the combatants, who climbed up the sides, boarded the enemy, and made themselves masters of the carracks. Most of the French ships had previously struck: a few escaped up the river; and Harfleur was relieved.⁵³

Aug. 14.

Aug. 15.

⁵³ Liv. 24—26. Elm. 77—83. Otterb. 278. Monstrel. i. 239.

France still continued to present the same lamentable scene of confusion. The two parties ardently sought the extinction of each other: and as long as the Armagnacs maintained their ascendancy in the councils of Charles, the duke of Burgundy was urged by the motive of self-preservation to seek a counterpoise in the friendship of Henry. During the last campaign he had forbidden his vassals to serve in the French army according to the summons from their sovereign: and had allowed his county of Flanders to be declared neutral, for the advantage of the commercial intercourse between the natives and England: but he had cautiously abstained from entering into engagements with Henry, or lending assistance to the invading army. In the present year a continual correspondence was maintained between the two courts. The ostensible object was the regulation of trade: the real cause, the desire of each prince to derive advantage from the personal quarrel of the other. In the beginning of September the king of England, the emperor, who had concluded an alliance with his host, and had been enrolled a knight of the garter, and the count of Hainault, repaired to Calais: where they were met according to appointment by the Burgundian.⁵⁴ This congress surprised and alarmed the French ministers: nor could their envoys, who attended

CHAP.
I.
Confer-
ence at
Calais.

Sept. 4.

et 3.

⁵⁴ Rym. ix. 377—382.

CHAP.

I.

under pretence of soliciting a truce, discover the secret designs of the four powers. Men would not believe that they had assembled, as it was given out, for the sole purpose of deliberating on the state of the church, and the means of extinguishing the schism : and it was whispered that the duke, through enmity to the Armagnacs, had claimed the protection of Henry ; had formally acknowledged his claim to the French crown ; and had done homage to him for Burgundy and Allost. The French cabinet gave full credit to the report ; and to mark their abhorrence of his conduct, ordered the Burgundian prelates and envoys at Constance to be excluded from the meetings of the French nation : but there is reason to think, that the duke was calumniated ; and that, if such proposals were made to him at Calais, he rejected them as incompatible with his interests, or his honour.⁵⁵

Parties in
France.

From the congress Henry returned to England to obtain supplies from his parliament, and

⁵⁵ Rym. ix. 397. 401. 436. Monst. i. 240. That such proposals were made, appears from the protocol of a treaty preserved by Rymer, in which the duke was made to say, that though he formerly doubted, he was now convinced of Henry's right to the French crown ; to promise that he would do him homage, as soon as he should have conquered a notable portion of France ; and to engage to make war on A. B. C. if they should oppose the king's pretensions. This, though no more than a draught of a treaty without date or signature, shews what was demanded from him. See Rym. ix. 395, 396.

to make preparation for a second expedition. Sigismund proceeded through Dordrecht to Constance, to support by his presence the prelates, who sought by the deposition of the contending pontiffs, to restore the peace of the church. The duke of Burgundy retired to put in execution the plans which he had formed for his own aggrandizement, but which he had carefully concealed from Henry. At Valenciennes he met the second son of the king of France, who, on the death of his elder brother, had assumed the title of Dauphin. The two princes instantly swore eternal friendship to each other: the dauphin engaged to unite with the duke in removing the Armagnacs from the administration; the duke to assist the dauphin in his opposition to the claim of the king of England. But this union was speedily dissolved by the unexpected death of the young prince: and the moment that event was known, his unprincipled mother, Isabel of Bavaria, was arrested by order of her husband, stripped of her treasures, and sent a captive to the city of Tours. The duke seized the opportunity to send a circular letter to all the towns and cities in France. He charged his opponents with having administered poison to the dauphin; attributed to their rapacity and ambition all the evils which afflicted the kingdom; and claimed the aid of every good Frenchman to reform the government, and punish the traitors. At the head

CHAP.
I.

of sixty thousand cavalry he marched towards Paris. Many cities and towns opened their gates through fear of his resentment: by others he was welcomed as a saviour of his country: but the Armagnacs defied his power from the walls of the capital, and quelled the efforts of his partisans within the city. Isabel had been hitherto his bitterest enemy: her captivity taught her to solicit his assistance, and to offer her co-operation against the men who were equally enemies of them both. Early one morning, under pretence of devotion, she prevailed on her keepers to accompany her to a church in the suburbs of Tours: in a few minutes she was in the hands of her deliverer, the duke himself, who during the night had arrived with eight hundred men at arms in a neighbouring forest. She immediately assumed the title of regent during the malady of the king, and by proclamation appointed the duke of Burgundy her lieutenant.⁵⁶

The king
lands in
Norman-
dy.
Aug. 1.

This rapid view of the state of parties in France was necessary to explain the conduct, and subsequent success of the king of England. When the Burgundian commenced his march towards Paris, Henry landed without opposition on the coast of Normandy. But the failure of his former attempt had taught him to pursue a different policy. He no longer sought to irritate

⁵⁶ Monstrel. i. 241—257.

the vanity of his enemies by an insulting but dangerous march through the country. He came prepared to make permanent conquests : and his army, amounting to sixteen thousand men at arms, and probably an equal number of archers, was provided with a long train of artillery and military engines, and a useful body of artificers and sappers.⁵⁷ It was in vain that he called on the Normans to receive him as their lawful duke. At the expiration of two centuries, the natives felt nothing of that attachment for the descendants of Rollo, which had animated their ancestors : they looked on Henry as a foreign adventurer ; and defended their country with the most steady, and often enthusiastic, bravery. But they received no aid from their countrymen : they were even deprived of the presence and example of their nobles, whom the Armagnacs detained at Paris to oppose the efforts of the Burgundians ; and fortress after fortress fell into the hands of the invaders.

⁵⁷ Elm. 92. Tit. Liv. 31. 33. This army was raised in the following manner. The Duke of Clarence furnished 240 lances, the duke of Gloster 100, the six Earls of March, Warwick, Salisbury, Huntingdon, Suffolk, and the earl mareschal, 470, thirteen barons 526, seventy-seven bannerets and knights 950, in all 2186 lances, or 6558 men at arms. *Ibid.* They also furnished an equal number of archers mounted. The rest of the army, making up the gross amount of 16,400 men at arms, were the king's retainers, and private knights, who had entered into his service. Some of the numbers are incorrectly printed in *Livius* : but the mistakes may be corrected by comparing the number of archers with the number of men at arms.

CHAP.

I.

Sept. 2.

Sept. 19.

Nov. 28.

Execution
of Sir John
Oldcastle.

Tonques, Auvillers, and Villers surrendered after short sieges: if Caen refused to capitulate, it was carried by assault: Bayeux submitted spontaneously, and obtained the confirmation of its privileges; and the campaign was terminated by the successive reduction of Aigle, Lisieu, Alençon, and Falaise.⁵⁸ During its continuance the French government did not attempt to oppose the king in the field, but solicited a peace or an armistice. Henry, however, would not suffer his career to be interrupted by negotiation; and when at last he consented to listen to the envoys, cut short the conference by the inadmissible tenor of his demands. He would grant neither peace nor armistice, but on condition that Catharine, the daughter of Charles, should consent to become his wife; that the regency of the kingdom should be given to him during the lifetime of the king, and that he should be declared his successor in the event of his death.⁵⁹

But while Henry was thus occupied with the conquest of Normandy, a feeble attempt had been made to deprive him of England. In consequence of a secret understanding between the Scottish cabinet and the chiefs of the lollards, the duke of Albany and the earl Douglas suddenly crossed the borders, and laid siege, the

⁵⁸ Tit. Liv. 33—49. Rym. ix. 480. 487. 490. 493. 532. Elm. 96—138.

⁵⁹ Rym. ix. 521—524.

former to the castle of Berwick, the latter to that of Roxburgh. It proved, however, a “foul “raid.” They had persuaded themselves that the kingdom had been left without a competent force for its protection: but when they learned that the dukes of Bedford and Exeter were approaching at the head of one hundred thousand men, they decamped with precipitation, and disbanded their armies.⁶⁰ At the same time sir John Oldcastle emerged from his concealment, and arrived in the neighbourhood of London. The retreat of the Scots defeated all his projects. At St. Alban’s he eluded by a precipitate flight the pursuit of his enemies: in the marches of Wales he was taken after an obstinate resistance by sir Edward Charlton, a retainer of the lord Powis.⁶¹ At the petition of the commons (the parliament was then sitting) he was arraigned before the peers: the indictment on which he had been formerly outlawed, was read; and he was asked in the usual form by the duke of Bedford, why he should not receive sentence of death. Instead of replying directly to the question, he preached a long sermon on one of the favourite doctrines of his sect, that it is the duty of man to forgive, and to leave the punishment

Nov.

Dec. 14.

⁶⁰ Wals. 298. Ford. xv. 24. Elm. 163.

⁶¹ In the rolls, the capture of Oldcastle seems to be attributed to lord Powis (p. 111): but Herne has published a writ, dated Dec. 1, in which it is expressly asserted that he was taken by sir Ed. Charlton. Tit. Liv. 219.

CHAP. I. of offences in the hands of the Almighty. Being interrupted, and required to return a direct answer, he said that he would never acknowledge the authority of that court, as long as his liege lord king Richard II. was alive in Scotland. Judgment was instantly pronounced ; that he should be hanged as a traitor, and burnt as a heretic. St. Giles's fields, which had been the theatre of his rebellion, witnessed also his punishment. By his partisans he would have been revered as a martyr, had not their faith been staggered and scandalized by the non-accomplishment of a prophecy, which he was said to have uttered at the gallows, that he should rise from the grave on the third day.⁶²

Conquest
of Henry.

In the spring Henry resumed his victorious career : and by a reinforcement of fifteen thousand men, was enabled to divide his army, and undertake several operations at the same time. Cherburg, after a resistance of six months, opened its gates : the whole of Lower Normandy was reduced ; and the king proceeded to settle the government of his conquests. He appointed a treasurer and chancellor of the dutchy ; granted his protection to all who swore fealty ; abolished the odious tax upon salt ; and by the distribution of favours and the suppression of grievances, sought to attach the natives to the person of their new sovereign.⁶³ His progress

⁶² Rot. Parl. iv. 107—110. Wals. 399, 400.

⁶³ Tit. Liv. 50—58. Elm. 117, 118.

was viewed with indifference by the rival chiefs, who to gratify their own ambition, scrupled not to sacrifice the independence of their country. A project of reconciliation, framed by the cardinals Ursini and St. Mark, had been gratefully accepted by the Duke of Burgundy, and indignantly rejected by his opponents. From that moment the latter were stigmatized as the enemies of peace, and their interest visibly declined even within the walls of the capital. One night a gate of the city was treacherously opened to a party of Burgundians; who were instantly joined by thousands of citizens: and the king, unable to stem the torrent, reluctantly gave his sanction to their proceedings. A general arrest followed, and the count of Armagnac, several ladies and bishops, the lords of the council, the officers of the treasury, and the members of the parliament, were thrown into confinement. But the leaders of the Burgundians were not yet satisfied. By reports and accusations they goaded the passions of the populace to a state of madness: and on the night of the twelfth of June sixty thousand persons assembled in arms, broke open the gaols, and without distinction of rank or sex, guilt or innocence, massacred all the prisoners. At the same time perished numbers of those who were known or suspected to be hostile to the party: but one individual, Charles, the third and only surviving son of the king, escaped by the care of Tannegui du Chas-

May 23

Massacre
in Paris.

June 12.

CHAP. tel, who took him out of bed, wrapped him
 I. in a sheet, and carried him to a place of safety.
 After these horrors the queen, accompanied by
 the duke of Burgundy, entered Paris in tri-
 umph, and having possession of the king's per-
 son, exercised without opposition the royal au-
 thority.⁶⁴ But the remains of the opposite fac-
 tion repaired to Poitiers, proclaimed the young
 dauphin regent of the kingdom, and established
 a rival administration. Thus France was divided
 into two separate governments, more hostile to
 each other than to their natural enemy, the king
 of England, and equally desirous to purchase by
 concessions his assistance for their own interest.
 Henry listened to their proposals, but obstinately
 refused to accept them. It was his policy to
 play off one party against the other ; that by
 working on their apprehensions, he might in-
 duce them to rise in their offers. When his
 ministers met the envoys of the dauphin at
 Alençon, they assumed a tone of the most insult-
 ing superiority. It was not for them to bring
 forward any project : they had come to receive
 the proposals of the dauphin. The crown of
 France was the rightful inheritance of Henry.
 What could his adversary give him as an equiva-
 lent ? When they had thus drawn from the
 French negociators a declaration of the offers,
 which they had been authorized to make, they

Negocia-
 tions.
 Nov. 10.

⁶⁴ Monstrel. i. 262—266.

upbraided them with a want of sincerity ; questioned the validity of the powers with which they had been furnished ; and hinted a doubt whether their master at so early an age could give sufficient security for the fulfilment of his engagements.⁶⁵ This conference was hardly terminated, when a second was opened under the mediation of the cardinal Ursina, with the envoys of the king of France and the duke of Burgundy. They presented to Henry a flattering portrait of the princess Catharine : but the politician would not permit the charms of the lady to weigh in the balance against his interests. During a fortnight he practised upon the hopes and fears, and prejudices of the negotiators ; and then dismissed them with the remark, that Charles from his infirmity, and the duke from his inferior rank as a vassal, were equally incapable of disposing of the territories belonging to the French crown.⁶⁶

The negotiations for peace had not interrupted the operations of war : and Henry from

⁶⁵ Rym. ix. 633—645.
negociations the English contended that the Latin, the French that the French language should be employed. It was at last agreed that two copies of every instrument should be made, one in each language, and that in case of dispute the Latin should be deemed the authentic copy. This circumstance is deserving of notice, on account of the reason given by Henry, that his ambassadors did not speak or understand the French tongue : a proof that English had by this time become the language of the higher classes. Rym. ix. 655—659.

⁶⁶ Monstrel. i. 271. In both
negociations the English contended that the Latin, the French that the French language should be employed. It was at last agreed that two copies of every instrument should be made, one in each language, and that in case of dispute the Latin should be deemed the authentic copy. This circumstance is deserving of notice, on account of the reason given by Henry, that his ambassadors did not speak or understand the French tongue : a proof that English had by this time become the language of the higher classes. Rym. ix.

CHAP. I. the reduction of Pont de l'Arche advanced to lay siege to Rouen, the capital of Upper Normandy. In time of peace its population was estimated at two hundred thousand souls : but the approach of the enemy had prompted numbers to emigrate ; and the magistrates by proclamation had urged the departure of all, who were not furnished with provisions for ten months. By the French a confident hope was indulged that Rouen would arrest the victorious career of Henry. Its fortifications were strong : numerous batteries covered its walls : the Seine winding round it, served to protect it from insult : and to fifteen thousand citizens trained to war, had been added four thousand men at arms under the command of Guy de Boutellier, an officer of approved valour and the most ardent patriotism. By his orders the suburbs were immediately burnt, the ground levelled in the neighbourhood of the walls, and the country around reduced to the state of a naked wilderness. At the approach of the English, he boldly met them in the open field : and though he was repulsed by superior numbers, continued daily to repeat his attacks, destroying their works, beating up their quarters, and disconcerting their operations. The army encamped in six divisions, opposite to the six gates of the city : and to preserve the communication between them, trenches were opened sufficiently deep to screen the passengers from the shot of the enemy I

July 30.

shall neglect the events of the siege: but the works erected, and the precautions taken by Henry are, from their connexion with the history of the military art, more deserving of notice. The natural and artificial strength of the place, with the number and courage of the garrison, forbade a hope that Rouen could be reduced by force: but it might be starved into submission; and to prevent the introduction of supplies became the great object of the king's solicitude. Lines were drawn round the city, and strengthened with thick hedges of thorns: and without the camp the most commanding situations were chosen, and fortified with towers of wood, batteries of cannon, and engines for the projection of arrows. Still the Seine remained open to the besieged. But a bridge was soon thrown across it above the city; and near the bridge was moored a squadron of boats, which with incredible exertion had been dragged over the land by the labour of men and horses. Below, the navigation was impeded by two booms, each consisting of three strong chains of iron;⁶⁷ and the mouth of the river was carefully watched by a Portuguese fleet in the pay of the English monarch. Two hundred sail of small vessels, employed for the purpose, poured daily supplies of provisions into the camp of the besiegers: but within the walls the privations of

⁶⁷ One chain was suspended 18 inches within the water, the second level with the surface, the third three feet above it. Mons. 268.

CHAP.

I.

famine began to be felt before the expiration of two months. Twelve thousand individuals were expelled from the city by order of the governor. Henry forbade them to be admitted within the lines: and though a few were supported by the humanity of the troops, the rest perished through want of shelter and food. During the next month the besieged were content to feed on the flesh of their horses; and when that resource failed, contrived for ten weeks to protract their defence with no other nourishment than reptiles and weeds. It was calculated that the number of those, who fell victims to famine and disease, had amounted to fifty thousand. The survivors, by a trusty messenger to the French court, described their sufferings, and demanded relief. He returned with flattering but fallacious promises; he even announced the very day which had been fixed for their deliverance. At the news every eye glistened with hope: the bells were tolled; rejoicings were made; and each combatant was admonished to be on his guard, and to second the efforts of his friends. The day came: it passed; and no deliverer appeared.

The despair of the garrison now subdued the obstinacy of the governor: but, when he solicited a capitulation, Henry rejected his offers, and insisted that he should surrender at discretion. Le Boutellier assembled his men, and proposed to them to set fire to the city; to throw down that part of the wall which had been un-

It surren-
ders.

1419.
Jan. 16.

dermined ; and to burst in a mass into the camp of the enemy ; where, if they could not win a way with their swords, they would at least find an honourable death. The knowledge of the design changed the determination of Henry, who had no wish that Rouen should be reduced to a heap of ashes. He gave the men at arms their lives and liberty, on condition that they should not serve against him for twelve months : of the citizens he required a contribution of three hundred thousand crowns, in consideration of which they preserved their property and the franchises of the city. The other fortresses followed the example of the capital ; and the Normans submitted to wear the red cross, the distinguishing badge of the English nation.⁶⁸

The fall of Rouen was felt to the very extremities of France. It might have been hoped that the adverse factions would now forget their animosities, and unite against the common enemy : but every attempt to reconcile them proved ineffectual ; and each had again recourse to a separate negotiation with Henry. The duke of Burgundy requested a renewal of the conferences for peace ; the dauphin solicited a personal interview. For reasons which are not mentioned, the young prince did not keep his ap-

Confer-
ences at
Meulan.

⁶⁸ Rym. ix. 654. Tit. Liv. 60—71. Elm. 176—202. Monstrel. 268. 272—274. It was remarked as something very singular that, when the king made his entry into Rouen, he was followed by a page mounted on a spirited charger, and bearing as a pennon the tail of a fox, attached to the head of a spear. Monst. 273.

CHAP.

I.



pointment:⁶⁹ and the duke, improving the opportunity, affected a willingness to assent to the demands of the English king, who was even persuaded to undertake in person the conduct of the negociation. Mante was assigned for the residence of Henry, Pontoise for that of Charles. Between these towns, and in a plain near Meuliant, was marked out a square plot of ground, of which one side was washed by the Seine, the other three were enclosed with a deep trench and a line of palisades. The mast of a ship erected in the centre designated the spot, where it was intended that the kings should meet: and two magnificent pavilions, standing near it, offered them the convenience of withdrawing from the view of the spectators. The ground without the enclosure on the right, was allotted to the attendants of Henry, that on the left to the attendants of Charles; and for their accommodation tents were erected, in the decorations of which the two nations strove to outvie each other. It chanced that on the appointed day the king of France suffered an access of his disorder: but in the morning Isabella, her daughter Catharine, and the duke of Burgundy, left Pontoise with a retinue of one thousand horse: and Henry, accompanied by his brothers of Clarence and Gloucester, departed at the same time from Mante, escorted by an equal number of

May 30.

⁶⁹ Rym. ix. 701. 789. Tit. Liv. 71. Elm. 209.

men at arms. At a signal they entered the enclosure from the opposite sides, and met in the centre at the same moment. Henry bowed to Isabella and her daughter, saluted them, and taking the former by the hand led her into the pavilion. It was the first time that he had seen his intended bride. She was young, graceful, and beautiful ; and by the instruction of the queen employed all her charms to make an impression on the heart of the conqueror. Though Henry strove to suppress, he could not conceal, his emotions from the inquisitive eye of the mother. This was sufficient for Isabella. From that moment the daughter was withdrawn from the conferences. It was hoped that her absence would irritate the king's passion, and thus induce him to consent to more favourable conditions.⁷⁰

The first conference was employed in arranging the order of the subsequent discussions. Two days later Henry stated his demand : the possession of Normandy, his other conquests and the territories ceded by the peace of Bretigny, to be held in full sovereignty, and independently of the French crown. Four days elapsed, when the ministers of Charles returned their answer. They made no objection to the king's pretensions : but brought forward eight demands on the part of their own sovereign, respecting re-

Henry is
cheated.
June 1.

June 5.

⁷⁰ Monst. i. 276, 277. Tit, Liv. 73, 74.

CHAP.

I.

July 3.

nunciations, exchanges of territory, and the payment of debts. Henry fondly persuaded himself that he should at last obtain the prize of his labours. Yet doubts were artfully started, explanations required, and the intervals between the conferences prolonged. In a whole month no more than seven meetings were held : a day had been appointed for the eight : but the French ministers did not appear, and Henry discovered that his own arts had been turned against himself. The conference, conducted at Meulant with so much parade, was but a feint : the real negociation was carried on between the dauphin and the duke of Burgundy, whose respective demands and replies had been conveyed from one to the other by the secret agency of Madame de Giac. A week after the interruption of the conferences, the two princes met and embraced near Melun on the road to Paris. They bound themselves by oath to forget their former quarrel, to live in amity, to concert measures which might heal the dissensions in the kingdom, and to unite their forces against their enemy the king of England.⁷¹

Surprise of
Pontoise.

Never had Henry experienced a more cruel disappointment : but his passion was gratified by the surprise of Pontoise, a populous town in the neighbourhood of Paris. He immediately

⁷¹ Compare Rym. ix. 762. 776. 779. 789, with Elmham, 217—226, Livius, 74, 75, and Monstrelet, i. 277—279.

published a manifesto, in which he boasted of his moderation ; complained of the fraud of his opponents ; and offered, notwithstanding the insult he had lately received, to conclude a peace on the terms which he had formerly proposed, but with this proviso, that Pontoise, with the country lying between that town and Normandy, should be included among the territories to be ceded to the English crown ⁷² His prospects, however, began to darken. The duration and expenses of the war had provoked the remonstrances of his subjects : the king of Castile had fitted out an armament, which swept the coast of Guienne, and threatened the city of Bayonne ; and the dauphin and duke of Burgundy were preparing to array against him the whole power of France. But if others doubted, he still appeared confident of success : and within a few days that confidence was converted into certainty by an unexpected revolution, which placed one of the two factions at his disposal, and involved the other in calamity and disgrace.

Two months had elapsed since the apparent reconciliation of the dauphin and the Burgundian : yet their correspondence shewed how deeply they mistrusted the sincerity of each other. The duke importuned the prince to join his father's council at Troyes : the prince required that the duke should previously meet him

Murder of
the duke
of Bur-
gundy.

⁷² Rym. ix. 786.—791. Tit. Liv. 76.

CHAP. I.
Sept. 10. at Montereau sur Yonne. It was not without hesitation that the latter complied. As he approached the town, he was told that three barriers, with a gate in each, had been drawn across the bridge : but at the same time a courier informed him, that the dauphin had already waited his arrival more than an hour on the opposite bank. Both circumstances awakened his suspicions : he consulted his friends ; and a hasty determination was taken to proceed, that he might not afterwards be accused of having by groundless jealousies replunged his country into civil dissension. With twelve attendants the duke passed the first and second gates, which were immediately locked behind him. Before he reached the third, the dauphin appeared. He bent his knee, and was addressing the prince, when he received a stroke in the face from a small axe in the hand of Tannegui du Chastel. It was in vain that he grasped his sword : a multitude of wounds instantly laid him dead on the ground. Of his attendants one vaulted over the barrier, and escaped : a second was slain : the others remained captives in the power of the assassins. To apologize for this foul murder, recourse was had to the same plea, by which the Burgundian himself had once attempted to justify that of the duke of Orleans : that when a criminal is too powerful to be punished according to law, it is the duty of every loyal subject to make himself the minister of public justice.

Whatever might be his guilt, the circumstances of the assassination perpetrated under the mask of friendship, in violation of the most solemn oaths, and in the presence of the dauphin, fixed an indelible stain on the character of that prince. Perhaps some extenuation may be found in his youth, and the violence of his counsellors: and perhaps some credit may be given to his repeated asseverations, that he had been kept in ignorance of the design, till it was carried into execution.⁷³

This tragical event excited throughout the kingdom one common feeling of detestation and horror. Every other interest was forgotten: and the former cry for the salvation of the country was drowned in the still louder cry for revenge on the murderers. To the partisans of the late duke it was evident that their security depended on the ruin of the dauphin, and the protection of the king of England. The city of Paris hastened to conclude an armistice;⁷⁴ Philip, son and heir to John, solicited his aid and friendship; and Isabella informed him, that whatever arrangements he should make with that prince, would be cheerfully ratified by Charles. Henry was not slow to name the price, at which he would consent to be the minister of their vengeance, or rather of his own ambition. He required the hand of the

Henry is
made re-
gent of
France.

⁷³ Monstrel. i. 281. Elm. 235.

⁷⁴ Rym. ix. 812. 815.

CHAP. I. princeess Catharine, the regency of the kingdom during the life of the king, and the succession to the crown at his death. Blinded by passion and personal interest the queen and the duke signified their assent. Within ten weeks after the murder these important preliminaries were signed: it employed five months to settle the minor arrangements. By these Henry bound himself to settle on Catharine the usual income of an English queen, amounting to twenty thousand nobles; to govern during his regency with the advice of a council of natives; to conquer the territories now in possession of the dauphin for the benefit of his father-in-law; to lay aside the title of king of France during the reign of that monarch; to re-annex Normandy to the French crown as soon as he should ascend the throne; to preserve the parliaments, peers, nobles, cities, towns, commonalties, and all individuals in the full enjoyment of their liberties; and to administer justice according to the laws and customs of the kingdom.⁷⁵ At length, accompanied by an army of sixteen thousand men at arms, he entered Troyes, the residence of the French court.⁷⁶ The “perpetual peace” was ratified the next day by Isabella and Philip as com-

⁷⁵ Rym. ix. 816. 825. 840. 877. 890. 893, 894.

⁷⁶ The wine of Champagne was strong and heady (*fortissimum et fumosum vinum*). Henry, to preserve sobriety in the army, published a very unpalatable order, that no Englishman should drink wine unmixed with water. Tit. Liv. 83. Elm. 251.

missioners of Charles : the parliament, nobles, citizens, and commonalties, actually acknowledging his authority, swore to observe it ; and the union of the two crowns was celebrated with every outward demonstration of joy. According to the national custom Henry and Catharine were first affianced to each other. Then after a short interval the marriage was celebrated ; and two days later "the regent and heir of France," with his beautiful bride, departed from Troyes to assume the command at the siege of Sens.⁷⁷

The operations of the campaign were limited to the reduction of that city, of Montereau, and of the strong fortress of Melun.⁷⁸ At the approach of winter the kings with their queens made their triumphal entry into the capital.

CHAP.

I.

And mar-
ried to Ca-
tharine.

June 2.

The treaty
is con-
firmed.

Nov. 18.

⁷⁷ Rym. 895—906. The following letter contains some interesting particulars (*Ibid.* 910). "Worshipful Maister, I recomand me to you. And as touchyng tydyngs, the kyng owre sovereyn loord was weddid with greet solempnitez in the cathedrale chirche of Treys, abowte myd day on Trinitie Sunday. And on the Tuysday suying he removed toward the town of Sens, xvi leges thennis, havyng wyth hym thedir owre queen and the Frensh estatz. And on Wednysday thanne next suying, was sege leyd to that town, a greet town and a notable, towards Bourgoyne-ward, holden strong with greet nombre of Ermynakes. The whiche town is worthily besieged : for ther ly at that sege, two kyngs—queenes, iv ducks, with my loord of Bedford, whanne he cometh hedir : the which the xiiij day of the monyth of Juyn shall logge besyde Parys hedir-ward. And at this sege also lyn many worthy ladyes and gentil-women, both Frensh and English : of the whiche many of hem begonne the faitz of armes long time agoon, but of lyging at seges now they begynne first.—John Ofort."

⁷⁸ Tit. Liv. 89, 90.

110 HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

CHAP. I. Charles had summoned the three estates of the kingdom ; and in a long speech exposed to them the reasons which had induced him to conclude a “final and perpetual peace with his dear son “the king of England.” He left for their inspection a copy of the treaty, which in a few days was returned with their unanimous approbation.⁷⁹ In this assembly appeared the duke of Burgundy, dressed in mourning, and accompanied by the princes of his family. He demanded justice against the assassins of his father : and Charles, after the usual formalities, pronounced the judgment, by which they were declared guilty of high treason, rendered incapable of holding or inheriting office or property, and deprived of all command over their vassals, whom at the same time the king absolved from all oaths of fealty, and obligations of service. It should, however, be observed that this sentence was issued against the murderers in general, without naming any individual. The young prince is indeed mentioned by the designation of “Charles, styling himself dauphin :” but not so much as a suspicion is hinted, that he was either the author or an abettor of the crime.⁸⁰

Defeat at Beaujé. 1421. From Paris Henry, accompanied by the queen, bent his way towards England. His subjects, proud of their victorious monarch, conducted him in triumph to London, where Catharine was

Feb. 23.

⁷⁹ Rym. x. 30—32.

⁸⁰ Id. 33—35.

crowned with a magnificence hitherto unparalleled in the English annals.⁸¹ After the ceremony they made a progress through the kingdom: but at York their joy was clouded with the melancholy news of the battle of Beaujé. The duke of Clarence, whom the king had appointed his lieutenant in Normandy, undertook to lay waste the county of Anjou, which still recognized the authority of the dauphin. To oppose him La Fayette had assembled an army of the natives, to whom he joined five or seven thousand Scottish auxiliaries under the earls of Buchan and Wigton, and the lord Stuart of Darnley. The duke suffered himself to be deceived by the false reports of his prisoners. He hastened without the archers to surprise the enemy; and was surrounded with his men at arms by a more numerous force. Twelve hundred of the English remained on the field; three hundred were taken. The duke, who was distinguished by his coronet of gold and jewels, received a wound from sir William Swynton, and was slain with a battle-axe by the earl of Buchan. The archers arrived in time to recover his body: but the enemy, who retired in haste, carried off the prisoners. This victory raised the fame of

March 22.

⁸¹ La fut faicte telle et si grande pompe, et bobant, et jolivite, que depuis le temps que jadis le très noble combattant Artus, roy des Bretons et Anglois commenga a regnez jusques à present ne fut veue en la dite ville de Londres la pareille feste de nuls des roys Anglois. Monst. i. 303. Fabian has preserved the names of all the dishes served at the three courses for dinner, p. 402.

CHAP.
I.
~~~~  
Henry re-  
turns to  
France.

May 12.

May 30.

the Scots, and their general was named by the dauphin constable of France.<sup>82</sup>

Revenge and vexation speedily recalled the king to the theatre of war. Troops were ordered to assemble at Dover; loans were raised in every county; and the parliament and convocation were summoned. Both, at Henry's request, approved and ratified the treaty of Troyes.<sup>83</sup> The clergy voted him a tenth: from the lords and commons he did not receive, probably did not ask, any grant of money: but they cheerfully empowered the ministers to raise loans for the use of the crown on the security of parliament.<sup>84</sup> Anxious to wreak his vengeance on the men who had slain his brother, the king resolved to oppose Scot to Scot, and to procure the ministers of his resentment from among their own countrymen. Archibald earl Douglas, in consideration of an annuity of two hundred pounds, contracted to serve him during his life, with two hundred men at arms, and two hundred foot soldiers: and James the young king of Scotland, who had now spent sixteen years in

<sup>82</sup> Elm. 302—304. Monst. i. 306. Des Ursins, 389. The Scottish historian, who ascribes all the merit of the victory to his countrymen, tells us that only 12 Scots and 2 Frenchmen were killed. Ford. xv. 33. Monstrelet more honestly admits the loss of the two nations to have amounted to more than a thousand men. Monst. ibid.

<sup>83</sup> Per ipsum et tres status regni sui,....videlicet prælatos et clerum, nobiles et magnates, neconon communitates dicti regni. Rot. Parl. 135. This passage must distress those, who contend that the king himself is one of the three estates.

<sup>84</sup> Ibid. 130.

captivity, on a promise that he should revisit his own country within three months after his return, consented to accompany the expedition in quality of a volunteer. He probably was not aware of the object of Henry; who indulged a hope that the Scots in the pay of the dauphin would not venture to fight against their native sovereign. In this he was disappointed: but the presence of James afforded him a pretext to gratify his revenge; and every Scot taken in arms was immediately executed as a traitor.<sup>85</sup>

June 10.

The king landed at Calais with a reinforcement of four thousand men at arms, and twenty-four thousand archers.<sup>86</sup> By his orders they proceeded towards the seat of war under the command of the earl of Dorset, while he paid a rapid but welcome visit to his father-in-law at the Bois de Vincennes. Returning to the army, he drove the dauphin from the walls of Chartres; and, leaving the king of Scots to besiege Dreux, chased his adversary into the strong city of Bourges. Thence, to pay his court to the Parisians, he repaired to the capital; and at their request undertook to reduce the city of Meaux. Its commander was the celebrated bastard of Vaurus, whose activity and barbarity had rendered him an object of terror and detestation. Bursting from his asylum with unexampled rapidity, he often swept the whole country to the

Oct. 6.  
Siege and  
reduction  
of Meaux.<sup>85</sup> Rym. x. 124, 125. Ford. xv. 34.<sup>86</sup> Monst. i. 307.

CHAP.

I.

~~~1422.  
May 10.

very gates of Paris: and was accustomed on his return to hang on a particular tree every prisoner, who would not, or could not, pay the ransom which he demanded. The town at the end of ten weeks was carried by storm: but the garrison retired into an adjoining work called the market-place; and during five months bade defiance to the united attempts of Henry and his father-in-law. Famine at length compelled them to surrender at discretion. The governor was decapitated. His banner, surmounted with his head, was fixed in his favourite tree, and his trunk suspended from one of the branches. With him were executed three of his officers, who had earned the distinction by their insolence and inhumanity: a few persons, accused of having participated in the murder of the duke of Burgundy, were sent to Paris to take their trials before the parliament.⁸⁷

He falls ill.

By the surrender of Meaux the northern division of France from the frontier to the Loire, with the exception of Maine, Anjou, and a few castles in Picardy, was brought to acknowledge the authority of the king of England: and to add to his good fortune, his queen had lately been delivered of a son, who had received in baptism the name of his father. As soon as Meaux was reduced, she left England, in the

1421.
Dec. 6.

⁸⁷ Mons. i. 313. 316. 318, 319. Tit. Liv. 92, 93. Elm. 315—329.

company of the duke of Bedford, and hastened with her child to her father and mother at the Bois de Vincennes. Henry flew to join her: and the two courts repaired together to Paris against the festival of Whitsuntide. The citizens gazed at the magnificence of the regent and his nobles: but at the same time pitied and resented the comparative insignificance to which their own sovereign had been reduced. The shews and pageantries with which Henry sought to amuse them, did not sooth their feelings, nor silence their murmurs: and these nascent expressions of discontent might have taught him to entertain a doubt of the ultimate result of his enterprise.⁸⁸ But his attention was now called to a more serious subject; a secret malady, which he had for some time affected to despise, but which rapidly undermined his constitution, and baffled the skill of his physicians.⁸⁹ At the invitation of the duke of Burgundy he undertook to raise the siege of Cosne: but the failure of his strength rendered him unable to proceed; and at Corbeil he delivered the command of the army to his brother the duke of Bedford. The dauphin, alarmed at the report of his advance, had retreated across the Loire.⁹⁰

From Corbeil Henry was conveyed back to And dies.

⁸⁸ Monstrel. i. 320.

⁸⁹ By different writers it is described as a dysentery, a fistula, and a pleurisy. Raynald, vi. 50.

⁹⁰ Tit. Liv. 94, 95. Monst. i. 324.

CHAP.

I.

1422.

May 21.

May 30.

July 30.

CHAP
I.
~~~

the Bois de Vincennes, where the progress of his disorder soon extinguished every hope of recovery. He met his fate with composure ; and divided the short remnant of his time between the concerns of his soul and those of his family. Whatever might be his feelings, he saw the French crown, the great object of his ambition, slip from his grasp without expressing a regret. But for the prosperity of his son he appeared deeply solicitous ; the evils of a long and perhaps a tumultuous minority offered themselves to his mind ; and his apprehensions and advice, his wishes and commands, were strongly and repeatedly inculcated to the members of his council. On the day of his death he called to his bedside the duke of Bedford, the earl of Warwick, and four other noblemen of distinction. To their loyalty he recommended his wife and her child : and then appointed the earl of Warwick tutor to the prince, the duke of Gloucester guardian of the kingdom. As his last advice he conjured them to cultivate the friendship of the duke of Burgundy, and offer him the regency of France ; but, should he refuse, to give it to his fair brother of Bedford. The issue of the war, he observed, was in the hands of God : but he forbade them, whatever might happen, to release from captivity the French princes of the blood during the minority of his son ; or to conclude any peace with the dauphin unless Normandy were

CHAP.

I.

Aug. 31.

ceded in full sovereignty to the crown of England. Then turning to his physicians, he requested to know how long he might expect to live; and was told, that the Almighty had it in his power to restore him to health. Dissatisfied with the evasion, he repeated his question, and required a direct answer. "Then, sir," replied one of them falling on his knee, "attend to the 'health of your soul, for you cannot live more than two hours." He heard the awful denunciation unmoved, sent for his confessor, and devoted the remaining moments to exercises of devotion. While the assistants recited around his bed the penitential psalms, he interrupted them at the verse, "Thou shalt build up the 'walls of Jerusalem," and said in a faint voice, that it had always been his intention to visit Palestine, and free the holy city from the yoke of the Saracens. He expired in a few hours, on the last day of August in the year 1422.<sup>91</sup>

The splendour which conquest threw round the person of Henry during his life, still adheres to his memory four centuries after his death. But he was not only a warrior; he was also a statesman. The praise of constitutional courage he may share with many of his predecessors:

His cha-  
racter.

<sup>91</sup> Tit. Liv. 95. Monstrel. i. 324. Wal. 407. Martin V. in a letter asserts that the king died in the most edifying sentiments. In Domino mortuus est: nam, sicut accepimus, cor ejus excelsum humiliavit, et depositis curis saeculi animum direxit ad Deum, devote ecclesiæ sacramenta accipiens. Apud Raynald, vi. 50.

CHAP. I. he surpassed most of them in the skill with which he fomented the dissensions among his antagonists, and improved to the best advantage the unexpected events which chequered the busy scene of French politics. Success, however, gave a tinge of arrogance to his character. He did not sufficiently respect the prejudices, or spare the feelings, of his new subjects : the pomp and superiority, which he displayed, mortified their vanity : and the deference which he exacted from the proudest of the French nobility, was reluctantly yielded by men, who, under the weak reign of Charles, had been accustomed to trample on the authority of their sovereign. Continually engaged in war, he had little leisure to discharge the duties of a legislator : but he has been commended for his care to enforce the equal administration of justice ; and was beloved by the lower classes both in France and England, for the protection which he afforded them against the oppression of their superiors.<sup>92</sup> To those who served him, if he were a stern, he was also a bountiful master : and though he punished severely, he rewarded with munificence. By military men he was beloved and adored : and the officers of the army in France resolved to prove the sincerity of that attachment which they professed for him while living, by the extraordinary pomp with which they paid the last duties to his remains.

---

<sup>92</sup> See Monstrelet, i. 326, and Du Fennin, 501.

On the funeral car, and under a rich canopy of silk, was placed a bed of crimson and gold, on which reposed the effigy of the king in his robes, with a crown of gold on the head, the sceptre in the right hand, and the globe and cross in the left. It was preceded and followed by five hundred knights and squires in black armour, with their spears reversed. Around the corpse walked three hundred torch-bearers, intermixed with persons bearing achievements, banners, and pennons. The clergy of every district, through which the procession passed, were arranged in lines on each side; and behind rode the nobility, the princes of the blood, and the king of Scots as chief mourner. After these, at the distance of a league, followed Queen Catharine with a numerous retinue. In this manner the body of the king was conveyed to Paris and Rouen, where it lay in state; and from Rouen by short journeys to Calais, where a fleet was in waiting to transport it to England. As the procession approached the metropolis, it was met by the bishops, the mitred abbots; and the clergy: and the obsequies were performed in presence of the whole parliament, first in St. Paul's, and then in Westminster abbey. The corpse was interred near the shrine of Edward the confessor: and the tomb was long visited by the people with sentiments of veneration and regret.<sup>93</sup>

<sup>93</sup> Elm. 336. Wal. 407. Monstrel. 325, 326. He adds: et

CHAP.  
I.  
Proceed-  
ings of  
parlia-  
ment.

During Henry's reign the commons obtained from the king a confirmation of their claim, that no statute should be valid, unless it were enacted with their assent. They had repeated an ancient complaint, that the terms of their petitions, whether delivered in writing or by the mouth of the speaker, were frequently so altered by additions, omissions, and pretended corrections, that the law, when it was published, proved to be very different from their original intention. In reply, the king granted, that, “fro thenceforth no thynge should be enacted “to the petitions of his comune, that might be “contrarie of hyr askyng, wharby they shuld be “bound without their assent: savyng alwey to “himself his real prerogatif to graunte and “denye what him lusted of their petitions and “askynges aforesaid.”<sup>94</sup> He soon afterwards gave them another proof of his esteem and condescension, by submitting to their inspection and approval the articles of the treaty, which he had concluded with the emperor Sigismund.<sup>95</sup> Henry, like his predecessors, was repeatedly obliged to ask for pecuniary aid: but his victories kept the nation in a frenzy of joy; and both houses liberally acceded to his requests.

---

mesmement luy mort et mis en sepulture, luy ont faict, et font chacun jour aussi grand honneur et reverence, comme s'ils fussent acertenez, qu'il fut ou soit saint en paradis.

<sup>94</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 22.

<sup>95</sup> Ibid. 96. 98. It seems, however, to have become a common practice, in most kingdoms at this period, to have solemn treaties ratified by the three estates.

Though the example of Richard II. had proved the danger of rendering the sovereign independent of parliament, they granted him for life the tonnage and poundage, with the duties upon wool:<sup>96</sup> and to enable him by loan to anticipate the produce of the taxes, offered the security of parliament to those who refused to advance money on the sole security of the crown.<sup>97</sup> By these means, and with the tenths granted by the clergy, the king was enabled to raise armies, and carry on a successful war in the heart of France; though, at the same time, if we may believe a statement laid before him by the officers of his treasury, the ordinary revenue of the crown was hardly equal, if it were equal, to the annual expenditure.<sup>98</sup>

<sup>96</sup> Ibid. 63, 64.

<sup>97</sup> Ibid. 95, et passim.

<sup>98</sup> The receipts of the year ending the 29th of September, 1420, from the customs and duties, amounted to 40,676*l.* 19*s.* 9*½d.*: from the crown lands, escheats, &c. under the head of casualties, to 15,066*l.* 11*s.* 1*d.*, making the gross sum of 55,743*l.* 10*s.* 10*½d.* The ordinary expenses for the custody of the marches, the fees of the judges and crown officers, and the annuities granted to different persons amounted to 52,235*l.* 16*s.* 10*½d.*, leaving the small balance of 3,507*l.* 13*s.* 11*½d.* But out of that sum provision was to be made for the chambers of the king and queen, their household and wardrobe, the royal works, the navy clerk, the constable of the Tower, and the care of the lions, the guard and support of prisoners, embassies, &c., and an allowance of 100*l.* per month lately granted to the dutchess of Brabant. It was moreover observed that no provision whatever had yet been made for the payment of old debts, among which were numbered those contracted by the king in his prodigal career before he came to the throne. Rym. x. 113, 114. It has, however, been suggested that this statement in

CHAP.

I.

Schism  
in the  
church.

I may here direct the attention of the reader to the schism in the Papacy, a subject which at this period excited considerable interest. He has witnessed its origin at the death of Gregory XI.: after the lapse of almost forty years it still continued to divide and agitate the nations of Europe. The original competitors, Urban and Clement, were indeed dead; but their rival claims had been perpetuated by the zeal or ambition of their partisans; and to Urban had succeeded Boniface IX., Innocent VII., and Gregory XII.; to Clement Peter de Luna, an Arragonese, who, under the name of Benedict XIII., wore the tiara for the long period of thirty years. The evils arising from the conflicting jurisdiction and opposite anathemas of these pontiffs, provoked complaints and remon-

---

Rymer is incorrect; that its deficiency should be supplied from another statement in the rolls, belonging to the twelfth year of the next reign; and that a sum of 20,000*l.* should be added for the revenue derived from fee-farm rents, from Ireland, Aquitaine, the dutchy of Lancaster, &c. I see no cause for the addition. Both statements are divided in the same manner. In the first part is given the revenue belonging to the crown, in the second that derived from parliamentary grants. The chief difference between them is, that the statement in Rymer gives the net amount of the first, after the deduction of all charges upon it: the second contains every particular sum as well as the charges. If it be said that the statement in the rolls gives something more than 30,000*l.* for the hereditary revenue, while that in Rymer gives only 15,000*l.*—the answer is obvious. This sum of 30,000*l.*, after the deduction of the charges upon it, dwindles to about 11,000*l.*: and thus comes as near as could be expected to the amount of the revenue in the time of Henry V. as it is stated in Rymer.

stances. Consultations were held : princes and prelates united their efforts to put an end to the schism : and a general understanding prevailed, that the two rivals should be induced or compelled to resign, and a new pope should be canonically elected. With this view the church of France withdrew from the obedience of Benedict, whose authority it had previously acknowledged : but, when this example was proposed for the imitation of the English prelates, they contented themselves with petitioning the king to withhold from Gregory XII. the monies which the pontiffs annually drew from the kingdom.<sup>99</sup> At length the cardinals of the two parties united : a council assembled at Pisa : a sentence of deposition was pronounced against both the competitors ; and Peter, a Greek, was raised to the papacy by the name of Alexander V. But the remedy added to the evil. Both Gregory and Benedict disputed the authority of the council ; and Europe saw for the first time three pontiffs contending for the chair of St. Peter. The restoration of tranquillity was owing to the exertions of the emperor Sigismund, who, by persuasion and menaces, prevailed on John XXIII., the successor of Alexander, to call the council of Constance. In this assembly Gregory resigned : and the refusal of John and Benedict to copy his example, was

<sup>99</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 306.

CHAP.

I.

—  
—Its termina-  
tion.1417.  
Nov. 11.

followed by a solemn sentence of deposition. To give the greater stability to the election of the new pope, six persons from each of the five nations of Italy, Germany, England, France, and Spain entered the conclave: and at the nomination of the bishop of London, the cardinal Colona was unanimously chosen.<sup>100</sup> He assumed the name of Martin V. Benedict indeed maintained his pretensions in his native country, but after his death his successor acknowledged the claim of Martin. If the schism was thus terminated, it had previously given a shock to the temporal authority of the pontiffs, from which it never recovered. The contending rivals dared not employ the imperious tone of their predecessors. It was the policy of each to conciliate, to increase the number of his adherents, and to avoid every measure which might drive men to seek the friendship of his opponent. Hence the pretensions which had given so much offence to the sovereigns, were allowed to fall into desuetude; enactments, hostile to the immunities or claims of the church, were either passed over in silence, or but feebly opposed; and instead of the spiritual weapons of excommunication and interdict, were adopted the more persuasive means of entreaty and concession.

---

<sup>100</sup> The English nation was represented by the bishops of London, Bath, Lichfield, and Norwich, the dean of York, and the abbot of St. Mary's in the same city. *Hatps. f. 610.*

In England the duration of the schism had allowed the statutes against provisors to be executed with little opposition. Experience, however, shewed that they operated in a way, which had never been contemplated, to the depression of learning, and the deterioration of the universities. Both these bodies, in the year 1399, presented petitions to the convocation, setting forth, that while the popes were permitted to confer benefices by provision, the preference had always been given to men of talents and industry, who had obtained degrees in the universities ; and that the effect of such preference had been to quicken the application, and multiply the number of the students : but that, since the passing of the acts against provisors, their members had been neglected by the patrons, the students had disappeared, and the schools were nearly abandoned.<sup>101</sup> The evil continued to increase. Sixteen years later it attracted the notice of the commons, who, to preserve the universities from utter destruction, petitioned the king, that the statutes against provisors might be repealed, or an adequate remedy might be provided.<sup>102</sup> He informed them that he had referred the matter to the bishops. But these prelates had no wish that the statutes should be repealed : and in convocation a law was published, obliging every spiritual patron

CHAP.  
I.  
Evils arising from the statutes against provisors.

1399.

1416.

1417.

<sup>101</sup> Wilk. Con. iii. 242.

<sup>102</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 81.

CHAP.  
I.  
~~~

1421.

during the next ten years to bestow the first vacant benefice in his presentation, and after that every second or some member of either university, graduated in one of the three faculties of divinity, law, or physic. It was hoped that this expedient would silence their complaints ; though on account of objections raised by the universities themselves, four years elapsed before it was put in execution.¹⁰³ The truth is, that the persons who chiefly suffered from the practice of provisions, and who chiefly profited by the statutes against them, were the higher orders of the clergy. These, as their right of presentation was invaded by the exercise of the papal claim, had originally provoked the complaints, which the reader has so frequently noticed ; and now were ready to submit to a minor sacrifice, rather than allow the repeal of the statutes, which secured to them the influence of patronage, and shielded them from the interference of the pontiffs.¹⁰⁴

¹⁰³ Wilk. Conc. iii. 381. 401.

¹⁰⁴ I profit of this open space to notice a singular assertion of Hume at the close of his nineteenth chapter : that “the first commission of array which we meet with, was issued by Henry V. in 1415 : “when the feudal militia gave place to one which was still less orderly “and regular.” The fact is, that such commissions were usual in every reign since Henry II. See vol. ii. p. 438, and vol. iv. p. 184.

CHAP. II.

HENRY VI.

CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emperors of Ger.</i> | <i>Kings of Scotland.</i> | <i>Kings of France.</i> | <i>Kings of Spain.</i> | <i>Popes.</i> |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|
| Sigismund....1437. | James I.1437. | Charles VI. 1422. | John II....1454. | Martin V.1431. |
| Albert.....1439. | James II.1460. | Charles VII. | Henry IV. | Eugenius IV.....1447. |
| Frederic III. | James III. | | | Nicholas V.....1455. |

Calixtus III.....1453,
Pius II.

GOVERNMENT DURING THE MINORITY—DUKE OF BEDFORD REGENT OF FRANCE—JACQUELINE OF BAVARIA—SIEGE OF ORLEANS—JOAN OF ARC—CHARLES IS CROWNED AT RHEIMS—HENRY AT PARIS—DEFECTION OF THE DUKE OF BURGUNDY—ARMISTICE BETWEEN ENGLAND AND FRANCE—DISPUTES IN THE ENGLISH CABINET—THE KING'S MARRIAGE—DEATHS OF GLOCESTER AND BEAUFORT—LOSS OF THE FRENCH PROVINCES—IMPEACHMENT AND MURDER OF SUFFOLK—CADE'S INSURRECTION—DUKE OF YORK PROTECTOR—HENRY RECOVERS HIS AUTHORITY—DISASTERS OF THE YORKISTS—THEIR SUBSEQUENT SUCCESS—THE DUKE IS DECLARED HEIR TO THE THRONE—IS KILLED AT WAKEFIELD—HIS SON EDWARD ENTERS LONDON—AND IS PROCLAIMED KING.

THE French throne was preserved from ruin by the premature death of Henry V. The task of

CHAP.
II.
~~~

CHAP. maintaining the ascendancy which he had gained, devolved on an infant successor, and a divided ministry : while the dauphin, in the vigour of youth, and seconded by the wishes of the people, called the different factions under his banner, and directed their combined efforts against the invaders of their country. We shall see that prince recover in the course of a few years the crown of his ancestors ; expel the English from their conquests ; and seal a long series of success with the subjugation of Gascony, the last fragment of the ancient patrimony belonging to the English monarchs in France.

Settlement  
of the go-  
vernment.

1422.  
Nov. 17.

The new king, the son of Henry and Catharine, was hardly nine months old. On the first advice of his father's decease, several spiritual and temporal peers assembled at Westminster ; issued commissions in the name of Henry VI. to the judges, sheriffs, and other officers, to continue the exercise of their respective duties ; and summoned a parliament to meet in the beginning of November. The first care of that assembly was to ratify all the acts of the authority by which it had been convened, as sufficiently justified by the necessity of the case :<sup>1</sup> its second, to supply the defect arising in the exercise of the royal authority from the infancy of the king. The two last centuries furnished three instances of minorities, at the accession of

<sup>1</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 170.

Henry III., Edward III., and Richard II. But on none of these occasions had the powers of the executive government been intrusted to a guardian or regent, if we except the two first years of Henry III., when the appointment of such an officer was deemed requisite to oppose the pretensions of a foreign competitor at the head of a powerful army, and in possession of the capital. The duke of Gloucester, however, preferred a claim to the regency on two grounds: because in the absence of the duke of Bedford he was the nearest of kin to his nephew; and because the late king, when he lay on his death-bed, had appointed him to that charge. The lords (for such matters did not appertain to the cognizance of the commons) having searched the rolls, and consulted the judges, replied: that his demand was not founded either on law or precedent, but was contrary to the constitution of the realm, and the rights of the three estates: and that the appointment of the late king was of no force, because he could not alter the law of the land without the three estates, nor delegate the authority which expired with his life, to be exercised by another after his death. To satisfy him, however, as far as was in their power, they would appoint him president of the council, in the absence of his brother the duke of Bedford, not with the title of regent, lieutenant, governor, or tutor, words which might be construed to import a delegation of the sovereign authority, but

CHAP. II. with that of “ protector of the realm and church of England : ” an appellation, which could serve only to remind him of his duty.<sup>2</sup> Acting on these principles they named the chancellor, treasurer, and keeper of the privy seal, and sixteen members of the council with the duke of Bedford, and in his absence, the duke of Gloucester, for president: and by a deputation notified these nominations to the commons, who gave their assent.<sup>3</sup> Regulations were then enacted for the direction of the council,<sup>4</sup> the duties on wool with the tonnage and poundage were continued for two years, and the parliament was dissolved.<sup>5</sup> England presented no cause of uneasiness: but every eye was most anxiously turned towards France.

Death of Charles of France.

The regency of that kingdom had, according to Henry’s last injunctions, been offered to the duke of Burgundy; and on his refusal was given

<sup>2</sup> Ibid. iv. 326.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid. iv. 174, 175. 326. Their salaries were as follows :—

|                             | £.   | s. | d. |
|-----------------------------|------|----|----|
| To the protector, per annum | 5333 | 6  | 8  |
| dukes and archbishops       | 200  | 0  | 0  |
| bishops and earls           | 133  | 6  | 8  |
| barons and bannerets        | 100  | 0  | 0  |
| esquires                    | 30   | 0  | 0  |

The bishop of Winchester, when he was chancellor, received the same as an archbishop, and the lord Stafford, as treasurer, the same as an earl (Rot. Parl. v. 404. Rym. x. 268. 359, 360). This difference in the amount seems to have been regulated by the establishments which each was obliged to maintain in proportion to his rank.

<sup>4</sup> Ibid. iv. 175.

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

CHAP.  
II.  
Oct. 21.

to the duke of Bedford by Charles, with the advice of his council. But Charles survived this transaction only a few days : and his death gave to the English interest a shock from which it never recovered. Many of the French nobility had adhered to Henry out of deference to the will of their sovereign : but when this check was removed, their affection, and with it their obedience, reverted to the dauphin, the real representative of their native monarchs. That prince was not slow to profit by the event. On the first day after he had received the news of his father's death, he wore mourning : on the second he assumed the insignia of royalty with the title of Charles VII. king of France. As Rheims was in the possession of his enemies, he was anointed and crowned at Chartres. The ceremony operated as a charm, and drew crowds to his standard.<sup>6</sup>

On the other side the regent, a prince not inferior to his late brother in abilities, superior in the more amiable qualities of the heart, did not neglect the interests of his nephew. He obtained from the duke of Burgundy the warmest assurances of support: and prevailed on the duke of Bretagne to signify his approbation of the treaty of Troyes. The three princes met at Arras. They swore to love each other as brothers; to aid each other against the attacks of

Conduct of  
duke of  
Bedford.

1423.

April 8.

<sup>6</sup> *Monst.* ii. 1.

CHAP. II. his enemies ; to protect the poor and defenceless against all oppression ; and to unite their efforts to remove the scourge of war from the soil of France. To cement this friendship, the dukes of Bedford and Bretagne married each a sister of the duke of Burgundy, and then separated to raise forces in support of the common cause.<sup>7</sup>

Battle of Crevant.

The Loire formed the line of demarcation between the opposite parties. To the south of that river every province, with the exception of Gascony, had espoused the cause of Charles : to the north Anjou and Maine professed to be neutral ; and the garrisons of a few insulated fortresses adhered to their native prince : but the rest of the population, with the inhabitants of the capital, acknowledged the authority of the regent. It was not long before the flames of war were rekindled. The country was pillaged by both parties : towns were taken and retaken : and the fortune of the belligerents was nearly balanced by alternations of defeat and success. The most brilliant event in the campaign was the battle of Crevant on the Yonne. An army of French with the Scottish auxiliaries had formed the siege of that town, and to relieve it four thousand men at arms under the earl of Salisbury were ordered to join the Burgundians at Auxerre. The regulations

for the combined army, before it left that city, are an interesting monument of the military discipline of the age. It was ordered that the soldiers should love and treat each other as brothers: that the van guard should consist of one hundred and twenty men at arms, with the same number of archers taken in equal portions from each nation: that when orders were given to dismount in the presence of the enemy, disobedience should be punished with instant death: that all the horses should be conducted half a league into the rear, and such as were found within that space should be forfeited; that if any man should leave his station in the line, he should suffer death; that no prisoners should be made till the victory was certain, under the penalty of the death of the prisoner, and also of the captor, if he offered resistance: that every archer should be furnished with a long pole sharpened at both extremities; and that each man should carry with him provisions for two days.<sup>8</sup> The enemy occupied an eminence; but were drawn from their advantageous position by the manœuvres of the allies, who dismounting from their horses, and marching on foot in their armour, attempted to make themselves masters of the bridge. For three hours the two armies stood facing each other divided only by the river: at length the English forced

<sup>8</sup> Monstrel, ii. 7.

CHAP. II. their way to the opposite bank, and were followed by the Burgundians. The Scots, who bore the brunt of the battle, were almost annihilated: and the French suffered severely from the garrison, which assaulted them in the rear. The victors entered the place in triumph, carrying with them the French and Scottish commanders, each of whom, after losing an eye in the contest, had been made prisoner.<sup>9</sup>

Charles receives succour.

This defeat threw a gloom over the prospects of Charles: but it was quickly removed by the arrival of powerful reinforcements from Italy and Scotland. The duke of Milan sent to his assistance a numerous body of Lombards: and the earl Douglas landed in the port of Rochelle with five thousand men. The king, in testimony of his confidence and gratitude, selected his body guard from the Scottish auxiliaries; and, as he had already granted to Stewart of Darnley, the French lordships of Aubigny and Concessault, he gave to Douglas the still more valuable dukedom of Tourraine, which had belonged to himself before his accession. The duke of Albany, the regent of Scotland, and the Scottish nobility, swore in the presence of the French ambassador to maintain the ancient alliance between the two countries, and promised, what it was not in their power to enforce, that

1423.  
March.

April 19.

Oct. 8.  
16.  
26.

<sup>9</sup> The French commander was the count of Ventadour, the Scottish the earl of Buchan, or Stewart of Darnley. Both were afterwards ransomed. Monstrel. ii. 8. Ford. xvi. 25. Hall, f. 83.

their king, in the event of his liberation, should ratify their engagements.<sup>10</sup>

The necessity of interrupting the harmony between France and Scotland had now become evident: and with this view the English ministry proposed to king James to treat with them respecting his release from captivity. The offer was joyfully accepted: the Scottish envoys were permitted to join their sovereign: and after much negociation it was mutually agreed, that the king should be set at liberty, and that in return he should forbid his subjects to enter into the service of France;<sup>11</sup> should pay by instalments, in six years, the sum of forty thousand pounds, as a compensation for his expenses during the time of his detention;<sup>12</sup> and should give hostages as a security till the whole of the money were paid. To attach the Scottish prince more firmly to the interests of England, it was wished to marry him to an English princess: and the

CHAP.  
II.

~~~~~  
Liberation
and mar-
riage of
the king of
Scotland.

Sep. 10.

¹⁰ Du Tillet, 135, 126. Douglas was made the king's lieutenant and commander of the French armies, Apr. 19, 1424. *Ibid.*

¹¹ As James could not enforce the return of the Scots already in France, they were excepted from the benefit of the treaty. *Rym.* x. 331.

¹² The maintenance of James had been fixed by Henry V. at 700*l.* per annum; which in nineteen years would amount to 13,300*l.* There can be no doubt that of late his expenses had considerably increased. (See *Rym.* x. 293. 296.) But it is probable that so large a sum was demanded under that pretence, because it could not decently be claimed as a ransom. The English commissioners had private instructions to accept of 36,000, if the Scots objected to 40,000. *Id.* x. 295.

CHAP.

II.

1424.
Feb.

ambassadors were instructed to entertain the subject, if it were opened by the Scots, but not to be the first to suggest it, “because, by the “custom of England, it did not become the lady “to be the suitor.” It was not, however, necessary to urge the willing mind of James by political motives. His affections were already engaged by a beautiful and accomplished woman, Jane, descended by her father, the earl of Somerset, from Edward III., and by her mother, Margaret Holand, from Edward I. He married her before his departure: and the protector to express his satisfaction, remitted, with the consent of the council, a sixth part of the sum stipulated to be paid by the treaty.¹³ The event proved that an English education of nineteen years had not rendered James less fit to wear the crown of Scotland. He proved, as a monarch, a blessing to his country; but though he laboured to fulfil the conditions on which he had been liberated, his revenue had been so impaired by the regents, and his people appeared so unwilling to submit to taxation, that he was never able to discharge one third part of the debt.¹⁴

¹³ Rym. x. 323.

¹⁴ If we may believe Hollingshead (p. 587), and Hall (f. 86), James, before his departure, did homage to the young Henry at Windsor, and swore fealty in these words: “I, James Stewart, king of Scotland, shall be true and faithful “unto you, lord Henry, by the grace of God king of England and “France, the noble and superior lord of the kingdom of Scotland, “which I hold and claim of you. And I shall bear you faith and “fidelity, &c.” This we are told was done before three dukes,

In France the campaign of the present year was chequered with the same variety of events which marked that of the last. Arthur, brother to the duke of Bretagne, and several Burgundian lords passed over to the service of Charles : his partisans surprised Compeigne and Crotoi : and the garrison of Ivri, consisting of Bretons, received and unfurled his standard. On the other hand, the duke of Bedford procured a reinforcement from England, recovered Compeigne and Crotoi, and with two thousand men at arms, and seven thousand archers, laid siege to Ivri. A French army of eighteen thousand men, under the duke of Alençon, approached to relieve that fortress ; but despairing of success, abandoned it to its fate, and surprised Verneuil. The duke, leaving a garrison to secure his conquest, marched to seek the enemy, who boldly came forward to meet him. The men at arms were arrayed in one compact mass : in front and on each flank was stationed a body of archers, protected as usual by long stakes fixed in the ground: and in the rear were collected the baggage, servants, and horses of the army, under the protection of two thousand archers ; who, to oppose the irruption of the enemy, had tied

CHAP.
II.Battle of
Verneuil.

two archbishops, twelve earls, ten bishops, twenty barons, and 200 knights, and yet there can be little doubt that it is a mistake. For in all the public records James is treated not as a vassal but an independent sovereign : and Henry in a private letter styles him : Rizt heigh and myghty prince by the grace of God kyng of Scotes. Rym. x. 635.

CHAP.

II.

the horses to each other, both by their bridles and tails, and intermixed them with the carriages in such a manner as to form an almost impenetrable rampart. The shock of the two armies is described as dreadful. They fought hand to hand; and with such resolution, that for near an hour neither party seemed to gain any advantage. In the hottest of the battle a body of French and Italian cavalry, destined to annoy the rear of the English, endeavoured to charge through the horses and baggage: but unable to force their way, or to disentangle themselves, they stood exposed to the arrows of the archers: who, after they had slain or repelled the assailants, turned towards the front, and with a loud shout rushed on the enemy. This manœuvre decided the action. The courage of the French sank: their front was pierced in different points; and the plain was soon covered with fugitives and pursuers. According to the account of the enemy, they lost above three thousand men, the English sixteen hundred. The Scots were so reduced that they never afterwards formed a distinct corps in the French army. The new duke of Tourraine, and the earl of Buchan, were left on the field: the duke of Alençon, and two hundred gentlemen, were made prisoners. The regent immediately called his officers around him, and returned thanks to God on the field of battle.¹⁵

¹⁵ Monstrel. ii. 15.

Hitherto the duke of Bedford had supported the honour of the English army, and displayed talents equal to the difficult situation in which he was placed. But in every measure he had the misfortune to be thwarted by the private ambition of his brother the duke of Gloucester. Jacqueline of Bavaria, heiress of Hainault, Holland, Zealand, and Friesland, had been first married to John dauphin of France, and, after his death, had been remarried, contrary, it is said, to her inclination, to her cousin german, John duke of Brabant, who was only in his sixteenth year. The duke was a weak prince, and entirely under the government of his ministers; the dutchess, a woman of a masculine and restless temper, who despised the tame spirit of her husband. If he dismissed the ladies and servants whom she had brought with her from Holland, his favourites in return were soon afterwards massacred in an insurrection of the people. At length she separated from him, and repaired to her mother at Valenciennes, eloped from Valenciennes, and sought an asylum in England.¹⁶ The duke of Gloucester was soon enamoured with her charms, perhaps still more with her inheritance. But the late king, who saw that a marriage between them would be followed by a rupture with the duke of Burgundy, cousin german and apparent heir to Jacqueline's

CHAP.
II.
Story of
Jacqueline
of Bavaria.

1420.

¹⁶ Monstrel. i. 267, 299, 303.

CHAP.
II.
~~~

husband, restrained the imprudence of his brother, and on his death-bed inculcated with extraordinary earnestness the necessity of making every sacrifice to preserve the friendship of his ally. Gloucester was too headstrong to regard the advice of the king, or to yield to the remonstrances of the council. Maintaining that the marriage of Jacqueline with the Duke of Brabant was void, on account of consanguinity, though a dispensation had been obtained from the council of

She is mar-  
ried to the  
duke of  
Gloucester.

1424.

Constance, he married her himself, and immediately laid claim to her dominions. Had her husband been left to his own decision, he might probably have yielded: but the duke of Burgundy

espoused his cause, and declared that he would oppose force to force in his behalf. It was in vain that the regent employed all his influence to prevail on his brother to withdraw a demand which would alienate the Burgundian from the interests of England, and might ultimately throw

Oct. 24. him into the arms of Charles. As a last resource, in a great council at Paris, it was determined, that the legitimacy of the two marriages should be referred to the pope; and that all parties should await his decision. The duke of Brabant acquiesced: the duke of Gloucester refused.

He was already at Calais with Jacqueline and an army of five thousand men: and proceeding into Hainault, immediately obtained possession of the county in right of his pretended wife. The duke of Burgundy on this intelligence

Dec. 20.

sent forces to the aid of his cousin: insulting messages passed between him and Gloucester: a challenge was given and accepted :<sup>17</sup> and the two combatants agreed to decide their quarrel on the feast of St. George in presence of the duke of Bedford, the regent. In the interval the Burgundian recalled his forces: and Gloucester prepared to return to England. Notwithstanding the objections of Jacqueline, it was resolved, at the request of the inhabitants, that she should remain at Mons. She parted from the duke with tears, predicting the evils which would result from their separation. The Brabanters renewed the war; the towns of Hainault returned to the obedience of the duke; and Jacqueline was delivered to the Burgundians to be detained a captive, till the see of Rome should pronounce on the validity of her marriage. The intended duel between the two princes was never fought. In a letter to the duke of Gloucester, the pontiff declared him excommunicated, if he persisted in putting his design in execution; and by a circular brief directed to all the christian princes in Europe, exhorted them not to permit the combat within their

CHAP.

II.

1425.

March 3.

March 16.

<sup>17</sup> On this occasion the duke of Burgundy paid a high compliment to the duke of Bedford. *Si mieux vous plait, he says to his antagonist, je suis content, que nous prenons a juge mon tres cher et aimé cousin, et aussi votre beau frere le Regent duc de Bethfort—car il est tel prince que je scay, qu'a vous et a moy, et a tous autres il voudroit estre droiturier juge.* *Monst. ii. 20.*

CHAP.

II.

July.

Sept. 1.

respective dominions. The English parliament, seconding his views, recommended that the dowager queens of France and England, with the regent, should take the quarrel into their hands ; and in a council held at Paris, it was decided that the challenge had been given without sufficient cause.<sup>18</sup> In the mean time Jacqueline was conducted by the prince of Orange to Ghent, where she bore her confinement with impatience, and exerted all her ingenuity to contrive her escape. At length she dressed herself and her female attendant in male attire, mounted a horse, rode unobserved in the dusk of the evening out of one of the gates, and continued her flight till she reached in safety the borders of Holland, where she was joyfully received by her subjects. The Burgundians pursued her thither: and Holland became for two years the theatre of war. The duke of Gloucester sent her five hundred men at arms, and was severely reprehended by the council : he renewed the attempt ; but was prevented by his brother the regent.<sup>19</sup> In 1426 the pope is said to have pronounced in favour of the first marriage :<sup>20</sup> but the duke of Brabant

<sup>18</sup> Ep. Mart. V. apud Raynald. vi. 75. Rot. Parl. iv. 277.

<sup>19</sup> Monstrel. ii. 18—29.

<sup>20</sup> This is said by different writers. If it were true, I know not how the English government could, consistently with the agreement at Paris, continue to acknowledge her for dutchess of Gloucester. Yet she is so called in two different instruments in Rymer, dated in 1427 and 1428. Rym. x. 375, 398, and in the address of the commons of 1427. Rot. Parl. iv. 318.

died soon afterwards, and Jacqueline assumed the title of dutchess of Gloucester. The slender aid which she received from England served to defer her submission till 1428, when she was compelled to appoint the duke of Burgundy her heir, to allow him to garrison her fortresses, and to give her word that she would never marry without his consent.<sup>21</sup> In the terms of this treaty she virtually acknowledged that she was not the wife of the duke of Gloucester: and yet, only a few weeks before it was concluded, her interests had been espoused in England by a party of females against the neglect of her supposed husband. A lady of the name of Stokes, attended by the wives of the principal citizens of London, went to the house of Lords, and presented a petition against the duke, accusing him of having neglected his lawful wife, the dutchess Jacqueline, and of living in open adultery with Eleanor Cobham,<sup>22</sup> daughter of Reginald lord Cobham of Sterborough. The beauty of Eleanor was as distinguished as her morals were dissolute. After contributing to the pleasures of different noblemen, she became acquainted with the duke, whose attachment to her was so great, that, even after his union with Jacqueline, he kept her always near his person, and took her with him in his expedition to Hainault.<sup>23</sup> What answer was

<sup>21</sup> Monstrel. ii. 37. Meyer, lib. xv. p. 310.

<sup>22</sup> Stow, 369.

<sup>23</sup> Laquelle le dit duc par avant avoit tenue en sa compagnie certain temps, comme sa dame par amours: et avec ce avoit este dif-

CHAP. II. returned to the petition of these female champions in the cause of conjugal fidelity, is not known: but the duke soon afterwards, to the surprise of Europe, publicly acknowledged Cobham for his wife; and Jacqueline, in breach of her promise to her adversary, married a gentleman called Frank of Bursellen. He was immediately seized by the Burgundians, and his wife, to purchase his liberty, ceded the greater part of her dominions, retaining only an annual rent for her own support. She died without issue in 1436.<sup>24</sup>

Oct. 8.

Had it not been for this unfortunate attempt of Gloucester to obtain the inheritance of Jacqueline, it was pretended that the party of Charles might have been effectually crushed after the battle of Verneuil. But to defend the duke of Brabant, the duke of Burgundy withdrew his forces from the scene of action, and employed them in Hainault and Holland: and the duke of Bedford, reduced to depend on his own resources, became unable to improve the advantages which he had gained. For three years the war in France was suffered to languish: and the operations on both sides were confined to skirmishes and sieges, unimportant in their consequences to the two parties, but most disastrous to the unfortunate inhabitants. If the regent was inactive through weakness, Charles was equally so

famee deaucuns autres hommes que de icelui duc. Monstrel. ii.  
32. Also, ii. 29.

<sup>24</sup> Meyer, 329.

through poverty : and if the court of the latter became a scene of intrigue, dissension, and bloodshed, the council of the king of England was not less divided by the jealousy of its members, their quarrels, and their opposite interests.<sup>25</sup>

Among these the minister who bore the chief sway, both from his situation and relationship to the king, was the duke of Gloucester: but he was often, and sometimes successfully, opposed in his politics by Henry Beaufort, the great bishop of Winchester. That prelate was second son to John of Ghent by Catherine Swynford, and was consequently uncle to the regent and his brother, and great uncle to the king. From the bishopric of Lincoln he had been translated to the more valuable see of Winchester; had thrice borne the high office of chancellor; had assisted at the council of Constance; and had made a pilgrimage to Jerusalem. His frugality multiplied his riches: but they were rendered subservient to the interests of his country; and his loans to the late monarch amounted to twenty-eight, to the present king to more than eleven, thousand pounds.<sup>26</sup>

Opposi-  
tion in the  
council.

<sup>25</sup> The pontiff, as if he had foreseen the evils which followed, had on the succession of the young Henry written to the council, recommending to them above all things to live in harmony with each other, as the best means of preserving the dominions of their infant sovereign. *Ad regnum hoc in rerum statu salubriter dirigendum nulla res est tantum necessaria, quantum est vestra concordia, qui reipublicæ præsidetis: vobis enim habentibus unam mentem, una voluntate regentibus, nulla accidere calamitas potest.* Apud Raynald, vi. 51.

<sup>26</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 111. 132. 275. 277.

CHAP.

II.

1424.

July 16.

Quarrel  
between  
Glocester  
and Beau-  
fort.1425.  
Oct. 29.

Oct. 30.

He had again accepted the office of chancellor, and in that situation had strenuously opposed Gloucester's favourite plan of claiming the inheritance of Jacqueline. During the absence of that prince, the council, under the influence of the prelate, and with a view to repress the mutinous disposition of the populace, had garrisoned the Tower, and committed it to the care of sir Richard Wydevile, with orders "to admit no one "more powerful than himself." When Gloucester returned, he demanded lodgings in that fortress, and attributed the refusal of Wydevile to the secret instructions of his uncle. In his resentment he ordered the mayor to close the gates of the city against the bishop, and to furnish him with five hundred horsemen, that he might visit in safety the young king at Eltham. The next morning the retainers of Beaufort attempted to burst open the gate on the bridge ; barricadoed the road ; placed archers in the houses on each side ; and declared that, as their lord was excluded from entering the city, so they would prevent the duke from leaving it.<sup>27</sup> It cost the archbishop of Canterbury and a Portuguese prince, the duke of Coimbra, eight journeys in the same day from party to party, to prevent the effusion of blood, and to induce them to keep the peace, till the return of the duke of Bedford.<sup>28</sup>

<sup>27</sup> See the charges of Gloucester, and the answers of the bishop in Hall, f. 94. 97.

<sup>28</sup> The bishop wrote on the 30th of October to the regent, request-

With reluctance the regent left Paris, landed in England, called a meeting of peers at St. Alban's, and afterwards summoned a parliament at Leicester.<sup>29</sup> As soon as the commons had presented their speaker, they conjured the regent and the lords to reconcile the duke of Gloucester with the bishop of Winchester. The former had preferred a bill of impeachment against his uncle, in which to his own grievances he added two charges, which, if we may believe him, he had received from his brother the late king: the first, that the prelate had hired an assassin to take away his life, while he was yet prince of Wales, the second that he had exhorted him to usurp the crown during the life of his father. In his answer, Beaufort endeavoured to shew that the conduct of which Gloucester complained, was justified by the behaviour of that prince: and to the charges said to have been made by Henry V., he opposed the confidence and employments with which that

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~~~  
Dec. 20.
1426.
Feb. 18.

ing his immediate return: "for," he adds, "by my troth, and ye 'tarry long, we shall put this land in jeopardy with a field, such a 'brother ye have here: God make him a good man!'" They entered the city of London together. Bedford appears to have favoured his uncle, and to have blamed his brother. When the citizens made him a present of 1000 marks in two basins of silver gilt, he hardly thanked them. *Fabian*, 414, 415.

²⁹ This parliament was called the parliament of bats. As arms had been forbidden, the servants of the members followed their lords with bats or clubs on their shoulders; when these also were forbidden, they concealed stones, and plummets of lead in their sleeves and bosoms. So suspicious were they of each other. *Fab. ibid.*

CHAP.

II.

Mar. 7.
They are
reconciled.

Mar. 12.

king had honoured the man, who was now accused of having attempted his life. The duke of Bedford and the other lords took an oath to judge with impartiality : but in what manner the trial proceeded, we are not informed. Seventeen days later the duke and bishop consented to leave their quarrel to the decision of the primate and eight other arbitrators, by whose award the following farce was enacted. Beaufort began by addressing the king, to whom he protested his innocence of the charges, which respected Henry V. : and the duke of Bedford replied, in the name of the infant sovereign, that he had no doubt of the innocence of his great uncle, but held him to have ever been a true man to the late king both before and after his succession to the throne. Then turning to the duke of Gloucester, the bishop expressed his sorrow, that his nephew should have conceived any displeasure against him : “but, sir,” he continued, “I take “God to witness, that what reports soever have “been made unto you of me (peradventure by “such as have not had great affection unto me: “God forgive them!) I never imagined nor “purposed thing that might be hindering or “prejudice to your person, honour, or estate: “and for so much I pray you that you will be “unto me good lord from this time forth: for “by my will I gave you never other occasion, nor “purpose not to do hereafter through God’s “grace.” The duke replied: “Bel uncle, since

1427.
Feb.

March 25.

Jan. 28.

" you so declare you such a man as you say, I
 " am right glad that it is so, and for such I take
 " you." Each then took the other by the hand,
 and the ceremony was finished. Such a reconcilia-
 tion could not be real : and the bishop, whether it were his own resolve, or the suggestion
 of others, resigned the seals the next day, and
 requested permission to travel. He remained
 however in England till the beginning of the fol-
 lowing year, when he accompanied his nephew,
 the duke of Bedford, to Calais. There he re-
 ceived the welcome intelligence that he had been
 named a cardinal by pope Martin, and was in-
 vested with the insignia of his dignity in the pre-
 sence of the regent and a numerous court.³⁰

There is reason to believe that this quarrel
 between the uncle and nephew originated in the
 jealousy which Beaufort entertained of the ambition
 of the duke, who was suspected of a design
 to render himself independent of the council. A
 few days before the departure of Bedford, the
 other members sent for the two brothers, and
 presented to them a written address, stating
 that the young prince was the rightful king of
 England, and entitled to the obedience of all his
 subjects, of whatever rank they might be : that
 young as he was, he yet possessed by law all the
 authority which would belong to him at a more
 mature age : that, as during his infancy he could

³⁰ See the proceedings in the rolls of parliament, 296. 299. Rym.
 x. 35S. Fab. 416.

CHAP.

II.

~~~

not exercise such authority, it was vested in the council appointed by the lords spiritual and temporal : and that the council, representing the King's person, had a right to exercise the powers of government, " withouten that any one person " may or ought to ascribe to himself the said " rule and government." They concluded by begging the two dukes to inform them, whether *they* held the same sentiments. First Bedford, and after him Gloucester, replied and (subscribed their replies with their own signatures) that they cheerfully assented to the principles which had been laid down, and that " in all things that be- " longed to the rule of the land and the observ- " ances of the king's laws, and to his estate, they " would be advised, demeaned, and ruled by the " lords of the council, and obey unto the king, " and to them as for the king, as lowly as the " least and poorest of his subjects." It should, however, be observed, that the answer of the duke of Bedford was much more full and submissive than that of his brother : and that taking up the book of the gospels, he solemnly swore to observe through life the promise which he had then made. Gloucester did not swear.<sup>31</sup>

Submis-  
sion of  
Bretagne.

But the regent was hastily recalled to France by the vacillating conduct of the Duke of Bretagne, who through apprehension rather than inclination had formerly espoused the interests

Sept. 8.

Siege of  
Orleans.

of the English. But when he saw the seeds of dissension sown between them and the Burgundians, he willingly listened to the suggestions of his brother Arthur, who had been raised to the office of constable of France. His forces were recalled from the armies of the allies : men for the service of Charles were raised in his territories : and a promise was given of open co-operation as soon as the duke of Burgundy could be detached from his allies. Informed of these proceedings, the regent poured his troops into Bretagne ; they spread the flames of war to the very gates of Rennes ; defeated the Bretons in several recontres ; and compelled the duke to seek a reconciliation. By an instrument under his seal, and those of his sons, barons, prelates, and the commonalties of his dutchy, he acknowledged Henry for his rightful sovereign, and promised upon oath to observe the treaty of Troyes, to obey the commands of the regent, and to do homage for his territories to the king of England, and to no other person.<sup>32</sup>

Five years had now elapsed since the death of the late monarch ; and, if no addition had been made to his conquests, at least no considerable loss had been experienced. But at length in an evil hour it was determined to cross the Loire, and to attack Charles in the pro-

<sup>32</sup> Rym. x. 360, 373, 385.

## CHAP.

## II.



vinces, which had always adhered to his cause. With this view several councils were held at Paris: the regent yielded, it is said with regret, to the majority of voices: and a resolution was taken to open the campaign with the reduction of Orleans.<sup>33</sup> Montague earl of Salisbury, had lately returned from England with a reinforcement of six thousand men. After the earl of Warwick he was the most renowned of the English commanders: and to him by common consent was intrusted the conduct of the siege. On the part of the French no preparation was omitted, no sacrifice was spared, to preserve the city, and annoy the aggressors. The garrison received a plentiful supply of ammunition and provisions: numerous batteries were erected on the walls: and every building within the range of the cannon was levelled to the ground.

Oct. 12. The earl having previously reduced several places in the neighbourhood, passed the Loire with ten thousand men, and established his head quarters on the left bank amid the ruins of a convent. His first operations were directed against the Tourelles, a castle which defended the entrance of the bridge. It was carried by

Oct. 23. assault: but the garrison had previously broken down one of the arches, and had built an addi-

---

<sup>33</sup> In his letter to the king, the regent certainly appears to disclaim having given any approbation to the attempt. “Alle things “prospered for you, till the tyme of the seage of Orleans taken in “hand Gud knoweth by what advice.” Rot. Parl. v. 435.

tional fort at the other extremity. A few days afterwards, as the English commander stood at a window in one of the towers of the fort, and was carefully examining the defences of the city, a shot was fired at him from the rampart. He saw the flash, and attempted to withdraw: but the ball tore away the iron of the casement, and so lacerated his face, that he died in the course of the next week. The command devolved on the earl of Suffolk, who received several reinforcements, and successively established his men in different posts round the city. They were lodged in huts, and covered from the fire of the besieged by intrenchments of earth. But the walls were of such extent, and the intervals between these posts, which were called bastiles, were so spacious, that often in the night supplies of men and provisions forced their way into the place. For that purpose Charles had established immense magazines in the neighbouring city of Blois.<sup>34</sup>

The siege, or rather blockade, continued during the winter. In the beginning of Lent sir John Falstaff left Paris with fifteen hundred men, to conduct to Orleans four hundred waggons and carts, laden with stores and provisions. He had almost reached the village of Rovray, when he received the alarm ingintelligence that the earl of Claremont was advancing

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~

Nov. 3.

The battle
of Rov-
ray.

1429.
Feb 12.

³⁴ Monstrel. 38, 39.

CHAP.
II.
—

to intercept him with from four to five thousand cavalry. He halted immediately, surrounded his little army with a circle of carriages ; and left but two openings, at each of which he posted a strong body of archers. It was the middle of the night : and for two hours the attack of the enemy was delayed by the disputes among their leaders. Sir John Stewart who commanded the small remnant of the Scots in the service of Charles, earnestly contended that the men at arms should dismount : the earl of Claremont, by the advice of his countrymen, preferred to charge on horseback. At three in the morning it was agreed that each nation should follow its own judgment. An attempt was made to force an entrance at each opening : but the cavalry were repulsed by showers of arrows : and the Scots on foot were all slain. About six hundred dead bodies were left on the field : and Falstaff continued his march in triumph to the camp before Orleans.³⁵ In the spring the English resumed their operations : lines of communication were drawn from one bastile to another : and the besieged, seeing themselves entirely invested, proposed, with the permission of Charles, to deliver the city into the hands of the duke of Burgundy, to be held by him as neutral during the war, for the benefit of the

³⁵ In the quaint language of the times, this was called “the battle of herrings :” because salt herrings formed a great portion of the provisions. Monstrel. ii. 42.

duke of Orleans, a captive in England. The regent refused the offer. It was but just, he said, that what had been won with English blood, should be the reward of English valour. In this determination the Burgundian acquiesced with apparent cheerfulness; but the refusal sank deep into his heart, nor was it forgotten on a subsequent occasion.³⁶

CHAP.
II.
~~

The fall of Orleans was now confidently anticipated: and the most gloomy apprehensions prevailed in the councils of the French monarch. Many of those who had been the warmest in their professions of attachment, silently withdrew from his court: and the prince himself meditated a retreat into the distant county of Provence, when an unexpected event revived his hopes, and struck dismay into the hearts of his enemies. In the beginning of March, a female in man's attire, attended by two esquires and four servants, arrived at his palace, and announced herself as the deliverer of France. This extraordinary personage, called Joan d'Arc, was a country girl, about the age of twenty, who had lived as a servant with an inn-keeper of the petty town of Neufchateau in Lorraine. But if her station were humble, her mission, so at least she believed, had been dictated to her from heaven. In her former occupation she had listened to travellers describing

Story of
Joan
d'Arc.

Mar. 1.

³⁶ Id. 45.

CHAP.
II.
~~~

the insolence of the English, the oppression of her countrymen, and the wrongs of the native sovereign. These subjects had taken strong hold of her mind : her imagination insensibly became excited : the enthusiast persuaded herself that her country might yet be saved by the arm of a woman : at last she fancied that the saints Margaret and Catharine had actually commissioned her, in the name of the Almighty, to take upon herself the glorious enterprize. With this conviction she applied to Baudricourt, the governor of Vaucouleur, and was by him forwarded to Chinon, the residence of Charles.

Her intro-  
duction to  
Charles;

To most of the courtiers her arrival afforded a subject of mirth and ridicule. The council was divided. The credulity of a few indulged a hope that there might be something supernatural in so extraordinary an event; the prudence of the others foresaw that much advantage might be derived from the delusion of the girl, and the superstition of the people. After a short delay they introduced her to the presence of her sovereign. She betrayed no signs of timidity: but addressing him with the air of a prophetess, “Gentle dauphin,” said she, “I am “Joan the maid. My commission is from “heaven, to drive your enemies from Orleans, “and to conduct you to Rheims. There, if you “accept of my services, you shall receive that “which is your right, the crown of France.” Charles thanked her for her zeal, but abstained

from delivering any opinion on the reality of her mission. A thousand stories, however, were circulated to nourish the public curiosity. Though she had never before seen the king, it was said that she had immediately pointed him out among his courtiers: that she had revealed to him secrets, which naturally could be known to no person besides himself: and that she had demanded, and accurately described, a sword deposited in the church of St. Catharine of Fierbois, the very existence of which had for many years been forgotten. In aid of these reports a commission of divines and lawyers sate at Poitiers, repeatedly examined her depositions, and unanimously decided in favour of her claim to inspiration. Every doubt was now silenced; a ray of hope shot athwart the gloom, which had so long enveloped the French throne; and men consented to believe that, which it was so much their interest should be true.

When the public mind had thus been prepared, Charles deemed it time to acknowledge her in her supernatural character. In one respect her former employment had fitted her for her present situation. She could mount and direct a horse with ease and address. On a beautiful grey charger, and armed at all points like a knight, she rode forth in the view, and amidst the shouts of an immense multitude. Before her was borne a banner, in which for her device was painted, amidst a profusion of fleurs

and to the  
army.

CHAP.  
II.  
She enters  
Orleans.

de lys, the Almighty under the figure of a venerable old man bearing the globe in his hand. To the spectators her manner appeared more than human : the enthusiasm ran through all ranks of men : the air was rent with acclamations ; and thousands demanded to fight under her guidance. She herself was eager to meet the enemy : but Charles restrained her impetuosity ; and coolly watched the effect of her pretensions on the English as well as on his own subjects.

All these particulars with due exaggeration had been conveyed to the besieging army before Orleans : and at first the tale was received with derision as an impotent artifice to raise the spirits of a desponding people. But it soon began to affect the imaginations of the more credulous. Insensibly the alarm communicated itself to their neighbours : and at last the stoutest heart shrunk from the idea of encountering a celestial, though female champion. It was in vain that the earl of Suffolk and his officers exerted themselves to check this dangerous feeling. If she was called an impostor, an appeal was made to the wonders ascribed to her by common report. If she was represented as a sorceress, the soldiers replied that they feared not any mortal like themselves, but were not a match for the spirits of darkness.

Sixty bastiles, raised in a circle round Orleans, had effectually prohibited the introduction

of provisions: and the garrison informed Charles that without a speedy and plentiful supply famine would compel them to surrender. A convoy for their relief was provided at Blois under the protection of seven thousand men. The maid (so for distinction she was now called) obtained leave to join the expedition. She was received at Blois as an envoy from heaven, and immediately began the exercise of her supernatural authority. She ordered the soldiers to prepare themselves for the combat by acts of devotion; expelled all women of loose character from the army; and sent a letter to the earl of Suffolk, commanding him under the penalty of the divine displeasure to retire from the walls of Orleans. That general had prepared a strong body of troops to intercept the convoy on the road through La Beausse. Joan earnestly requested to attack this detachment: but La Hire, the French general, listened more to the dictates of prudence than the suggestions of his heavenly counsellor. Embarking the provisions in boats, he ordered them to be rowed up the Loire, while he marched along the bank for their protection. The maid, with her mysterious banner displayed before her, led the van: the attention of the besiegers was distracted by a sortie in a different quarter; and the convoy, together with the heroine, entered the city almost without opposition.

This exploit established the reputation of

April 27.

CHAP.

II.


 Destroys  
several  
forts.

Joan : and the officers of the garrison resolved to improve the enthusiasm which she had excited, wisely affecting to follow, while in reality they dictated, the inspired advice of their champion. A week later a body of volunteers accompanied her to the attack of the strong bastile of St. Paul. It was carried by escalade, the garrison put to the sword, and the fort reduced to ashes. On the next day a second sortie was made, and was attended with a similar result. On the third she led her followers to the castle of the Tourelles at the head of the bridge. This fortification, which was vainly deemed impregnable, was defended by men selected from the whole army. The assault continued fourteen hours. Joan received a wound in the neck with an arrow : but retiring a few paces, she extracted the weapon with her own hand, stanchéd the blood, and hastened back to her friends. Animated by her presence, they redoubled their efforts : an entrance was forced : and the banner of the maid waved triumphant above the turrets of the castle.

The siege  
is raised.

May 8.

The earl of Suffolk, disconcerted by so many losses, and warned by the desponding countenances of his soldiers, held a council of war in the night, and determined to abandon the siege. At dawn the English army was discovered at a small distance from the walls, drawn up in battle array, and braving the enemy to fight in the open field. After waiting for some hours, the

the signal was given : the long line of forts, the fruit of seven months' labour, was instantly in flames ; and the soldiers with mingled feelings of shame and regret turned their backs to the enemy. No pursuit was attempted : and Suffolk, having distributed his men in the neighbouring fortresses, informed the regent that he should be able to maintain his position, till the arrival of reinforcements from Paris.<sup>37</sup>

But it was not the attention of Charles to allow his enemies the leisure to breathe. The earl of Suffolk was soon besieged in Jargeau : and the place on the tenth day was carried by storm. The maid of Orleans (she had now received this addition to her former appellation) led the assailants, and reached the top of the wall, from which, by a stroke on the head, she was precipitated into the ditch. As she lay, unable to rise, she continued to exhort her friends with her voice. “Forward, countrymen,” she exclaimed, “fear nothing : the Lord ‘has delivered them into our hands.’” During the assault an unguarded corner had been discovered : the French poured into the place : more than three hundred of the garrison perished : and Suffolk with the remainder fell into the hands of the enemy. Of the officer, who demanded his sword, he inquired if he were a

Losses of  
the Eng-  
lish.  
June 12.

<sup>37</sup> For “the maid” and her exploits may be consulted Lenglet, *Histoire de la Pucelle d’Orléans*, Monstrelet, ii. 42—46, Daniel, Vil-laret, and the other French writers.

CHAP. II. knight : and being answered in the negative, "Then," said he, "I will make thee one." Having knighted him, he surrendered. Mehun, Baugeney, and other fortresses, experienced the same fate as Jargeau ; and the lord Talbot, who had succeeded to the command, retired towards Paris, till he received a reinforcement of four thousand men. He halted at Patray : but the enemy advanced to the town ; and the time for preparation was lost in unavailing debate. Sir John Falstaff proposed to retreat with expedition : Talbot refused to shew his back to the enemy. He dismounted, and after a sharp action was made prisoner with the loss of twelve hundred men. Falstaff fled in the beginning of the action ; and in punishment of his cowardice was condemned to forfeit the garter. He proved, however, to the satisfaction of the regent, that to fight with men so dispirited as were the soldiers at Patray, was not to avoid disgrace, but to invite defeat. His excuse was admitted, and he recovered his former honours.

Charles is  
crowned at  
Rheims.

Joan had always declared, that the object of her mission was twofold, the liberation of Orleans, and the coronation of the king at Rheims. Of these the first had been accomplished, and she vehemently urged the execution of the second. Though to penetrate as far as Rheims was an enterprise of difficulty and danger, though every intermediate fortress was in the possession of the English or the Burgundians,



Charles determined to trust to his own fortune and the predictions of his inspired deliverer. Having sent a strong division of troops to alarm the frontiers of Normandy, and another to insult those of Guienne, he commenced his march with an army of ten thousand cavalry. At Auxerre the citizens refused to admit him within their walls; but they supplied him with provisions, and engaged to imitate the conduct of the other cities. Those of Troyes, after a debate of four days, opened their gates. The inhabitants of Chalons spontaneously sent him the keys of the town: and the citizens of Rheims, having expelled the Burgundian garrison, received him with the most flattering testimonies of joy.<sup>38</sup> The coronation was performed in the usual manner: but as none of the peers of France attended, Charles appointed proxies to perform their duties. During the ceremony, the maid, with her banner unfurled, stood by the king's side: as soon as it was over, she threw herself on her knees, embraced his feet, declared her mission accomplished, and with tears solicited his leave to return to her former employment. But the king was unwilling to lose the services of one, who had hitherto proved so useful: and at his earnest request she consented to remain with the army, and to strengthen that throne, which she had in a great measure

July 17.

<sup>38</sup> Rym. x. 432.

CHAP.

II.

The ar-  
mies meet  
at Senlis.

Aug. 7.

established. Soon afterwards she accepted a patent of nobility for herself and her relatives, with a pension equal to the income of an earl.

This unexpected revolution in the relative situation of the two parties, while it afflicted the duke of Bedford, stimulated him to new exertions. He obtained fresh assurances of fidelity from the duke of Burgundy, withdrew five thousand men from his Norman garrisons, and received an equal number from his uncle Beaufort, who had raised a small army for the chimerical purpose of suppressing the Bohemian Hussites.<sup>39</sup> With these he went in pursuit of Charles, who, unwilling to stake his crown on the uncertain event of a battle, avoided him with equal industry. Weary of this useless labour, he wrote to the king a letter, in which he charged him with deluding the people by the impostures of a dissolute woman, and the sermons of an apostate friar; required him like a loyal prince to name a day and a place where they might meet in the county of Brie; promised that, if a stable peace could be made with a man who had violated his word to the late duke of Burgundy, and stained himself with innocent blood, he would condescend to reasonable conditions: and if not, offered to fight him hand to hand, that from the issue of the combat the world might know whose claim was favour-

<sup>39</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 435. 7

ed by heaven. To so uncourteous a message Charles did not vouchsafe an answer: but what the duke could not effect, was brought about by accident; and in the neighbourhood of Senlis the two armies undesignedly came in sight of each other. The English, inferior in number, prepared for the fight after their usual manner: the French officers, flushed with success, impatiently demanded the signal of battle. But the defeats of Azincourt and Verneuil had taught Charles not to rely on mere superiority of number. He consulted the maid: but her inspiration had deserted her since the expedition to Rheims. Sometimes she advised, at others dissuaded an engagement: two days were passed in deliberation: and on the third, after a few sharp skirmishes, the armies separated as if it had been by mutual consent. The regent hastened into Normandy, and repulsed the constable, who had penetrated into that dutchy: and Charles, at the solicitation of his female champion, took advantage of the duke's absence to make an attempt on the capital. Soissons, Senlis, Beauvais, and St. Denis opened their gates. He advanced to Montmartre, published an amnesty, and directed an assault on the faubourg of St. Honoré. The action lasted four hours. At its very commencement Joan received a dangerous wound, was thrown into the ditch, and lay there unnoticed, till she was discovered in the evening, and carried off by a party sent

And separate without a battle.

Sept. 12.

CHAP.

II.

Joan is  
made pri-  
soner.

to search after her. Charles, mortified by the obstinacy of the Parisians, retired to Bourges, where he passed the winter.<sup>40</sup>

1430.

While the severity of the weather suspended the operations of war, both parties endeavoured to strengthen themselves by means of negotiation. It was more than suspected that the duke of Burgundy began to repent of his alliance with England: and his fidelity was tempted by an honourable embassy from Charles, who offered him every reasonable satisfaction for the murder of his father. By the majority of his council the proposal was cheerfully received: but the influence of his sister, the dutchess of Bedford, fixed the wavering sentiments of her brother; and the duke, in consideration of the payment of twenty-five thousand nobles, engaged to assume the command of the united army at the commencement of spring.<sup>41</sup> He undertook to reduce the city of Compeigne: and the maid was selected to raise the siege. On her march she met an inferior force of Burgundians, defeated it after an obstinate resistance, and ordered its commander, Franquet, to be beheaded on the spot. On the very evening of her arrival, she surprised the post of Marigny: but reinforcements poured in from every quarter; and in a short time the assailants turned their backs. The heroine immediately took the com-

<sup>40</sup> Monstrel. ii. 52.

<sup>41</sup> Rym. x. 455.

mand of the rear guard, and repeatedly facing about, repulsed the pursuers. At last, however, her men were broken: an archer pulled her from her horse; and as she lay on the ground, she surrendered to the bastard of Vendôme. The shouts of the allied army announced to the besieged the fate of their heroine, who was conducted to the quarters of John of Luxemburgh, and after some months was sold by him to the regent. Though the garrison was grieved, it was not dismayed by this accident; and the place defied the power of the enemy, till the siege was raised by the approach of the French army under marshal de Boussac.<sup>42</sup>

The unfortunate maid was treated with neglect by her friends, with cruelty by her enemies. If ever prince had been indebted to a subject, Charles VII. was indebted to Joan d'Arc. She had dispelled the terror with which success had invested the English arms, had re-animated the courage of the French soldiery, and had firmly established the king on the throne of his ancestors. Yet, from the moment of her captivity she appears to have been forgotten. No sum was offered for her ransom; no attempt was made to alleviate the rigour of her confinement; no notice was taken of her trial and execution. Her enthusiasm had produced the promised ef-

<sup>42</sup> Monstrelet, 59—67. He was present at the time, and saw “the maid” in the tent of John of Luxemburgh.

CHAP. II. fect: and when it was no longer wanted, the jealousy of the French commanders was not displeased at the removal of a female and plebeian rival.

Her trial. By the humanity of later ages, the life of the prisoner of war is considered as sacred: a few centuries ago he remained at the mercy of the captor, who might retain him in custody, liberate him for money, or put him to death.<sup>43</sup> Avarice, however, generally prevailed over cruelty or resentment: and the wealth to be obtained by the ransom of prisoners was one of the most powerful inducements to military service. Yet, even the present war had furnished several instances, in which captives, distinguished for their ferocity or obstinacy, had suffered death; and the maid herself, but a few days before her capture, had ordered the execution of Franquet, the celebrated Burgundian leader. Had therefore her enemies dealt with her in the same manner, though her partisans might have lamented *her* fate, they could not have charged *them* with injustice:<sup>44</sup> but the

<sup>43</sup> Of this a memorable instance occurs in Fenn's collection of original letters, among which is one from Wennyngton the English admiral, stating his determination to kill or drown the crews of one hundred merchantmen, which he had taken, unless the council should think it better to preserve their lives. Vol. i. p. 213.

<sup>44</sup> This is the observation made in a letter written in the name of Henry to the duke of Burgundy. Ainsi que faire nous estoit raisonnablement licite, attendu les grans dommages et inconveniens, les horribles homicides, et detestables cruaitez, et autres maux innumerables,

bishop of Beauvais, in whose diocese she had been taken, claimed the right of trying her at his tribunal on an accusation of sorcery and imposture.<sup>45</sup> It is generally supposed that this claim was made at the suggestion of the duke of Bedford, who trusted that the general belief of her supernatural mission would yield to the condemnation of an ecclesiastical tribunal. That he considered her an agent of the devil, is evident from one of his own letters ;<sup>46</sup> and the history of her trial shews, that the same opinion had been imbibed by the credulity of her judges. The inquiry was opened at Rouen : on sixteen different days she was brought to the bar : the questions, with her answers, were laid before the university of Paris ; and the opinion of that body occurred with the judgment of the court. Still the sentence was delayed from day to day : and repeated attempts were made to save her from the punishment of death, by inducing her to make a frank and explicit confession. But the spirit of the heroine continued undaunted : she proudly maintained that she had been the inspired minister of the Almighty ; and repeated

1431.  
Feb. 13.

Judgment.

qu'elle avoit commis à l'encontre de nostre seigneurie, et loyal peuple obeissant. Apud Monstrel. ii. 72.

<sup>45</sup> This Bishop was so devoted to the English interest, that in the preceding year he had been recommended by the council to the pope to be translated to the archbishopric of Rouen. Rym. x. 438.

<sup>46</sup> "A disciple and lyme of the fiende, that used false enchantments and sorcerie." Rym. x. 408.

CHAP. II. her conviction, that she was often favoured with visits from the archangel Michael, and the saints Margaret and Catharine. The fatal day, however, arrived ; the captive was placed at the bar : but, when the judge had prepared to pronounce sentence, she yielded to a sudden impulse of terror, acknowledged with tears her delusion, and, having promised upon oath never more to wear male attire, was remanded to her former place of confinement. Her enthusiasm, however, revived in the solitude of a prison : her cell was again peopled with celestial visitants, and new scenes of military glory opened to her imagination. An impartial observer would have pitied and respected the mental delusion with which she was afflicted ; the credulity of her judges condemned her, on the charge of having relapsed into her former errors. She was led to the stake ; nor did the expectation of a heavenly deliverer forsake her, till she saw the fire kindled at her feet. She then burst into loud exclamations : and just before the flames enveloped her, was seen embracing a crucifix, and calling on Christ for mercy. This tragedy was acted in the market-place of Rouen, before an immense concourse of spectators, about twelve months after her capture.<sup>47</sup>

And execution.

May 30.

---

<sup>47</sup> Meyer, 316, 317. Twenty-five years later her sentence was reversed by the archbishop of Rheims and the bishop of Paris (7th

According to the general persuasion of the age, the ceremony of coronation was believed to consecrate the person, and confirm the right of the sovereign. No sooner had Charles been crowned at Rheims, than the Duke of Bedford determined that his nephew should be also crowned at the same place. The young king, as a preparatory step, received the regal unction at Westminster in his eighth year; from which moment the title of protector was suppressed, and that of prime counsellor only retained.<sup>48</sup> But the poverty of the exchequer, joined to the untoward events of the war, retarded his progress: and six months elapsed before he was enabled to leave England. At length the sums necessary for his journey were raised by loan: the cardinal of Winchester consented to accompany him: and the duke of Gloucester was appointed guardian of the realm during his absence. He proceeded to Rouen: but the prospect of penetrating to Rheims grew fainter every day; and at the end of eighteen months it was determined that the coronation should take place in Paris. In November, 1431, attended by the chief of the English nobility, and three thousand horse, he left Pontoise, and was met on the road by the clergy, the parliament, the magistrates, and the citizens of the capital. Triumphal arches had

CHAP.  
II.  
Henry is  
crowned in  
England.

1429.  
Nov. 6.

1430.  
May.

And at  
Paris.

July, 1456), whom pope Calixtus had appointed to revise it, at the solicitation of her mother Isabella. Raynald, vi. 77.

<sup>48</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 337.

CHAP.

II.

—1431.  
Dec. 17.

Dec. 25.

1432.  
Feb. 3.Quarrel  
between  
the Duke  
of Bedford  
and Bur-  
gundy.

been erected : mysteries were performed ; and devices were exhibited to honour and entertain the young king. But under these public demonstrations of joy, the Parisians could with difficulty conceal their forebodings of subsequent calamities. The coronation of Henry bore but little resemblance to the coronation of their native monarchs. The ceremony was performed by an English prelate, the cardinal of Winchester : the high offices of state were filled by foreigners, or by natives of inferior rank ; and no prince of the blood royal of France, not one of the lay peers, not even the duke of Burgundy attended to grace the court of the new king. After a few days Henry was re-conducted to Rouen : but a nocturnal, and almost successful, attempt to surprise the castle,<sup>49</sup> induced him to retire from that city, and to hasten his return to his own country.

The war languished during the two following years. Its duration had impoverished and exhausted both parties : but, if they were unable through weakness to act with vigour, they were equally unwilling through pride to put an end to the contest. In 1432 happened an event which inclined the balance in favour of Charles. The dutchess of Bedford, whose influence with her husband and brother had kept together the dis-

<sup>49</sup> Monstrel. ii. 78, 79. The English government acted on this occasion with great severity. 120 Frenchmen had been admitted into the castle in the night by a Bearnais. Not only he, but 150 of the citizens of Rouen were executed as traitors. Monstrel, ii. 80.

CHAP.  
II.  
1433.  
May 16.

cordant materials of which the confederacy was composed, died in November: and the precipitate union of the regent with Jacquette of Luxemburgh, a vassal of the Burgundian, hastened its dissolution. Philip's disapprobation was received by the duke with anger and contempt: officious friends were not wanting to widen the breach by their malicious suggestions; and so marked and public was the alienation of the two princes, that when the cardinal of Winchester laboured to effect a reconciliation, and had brought them both within the walls of St. Omer, he could not induce them to speak to each other.<sup>50</sup> This propitious opportunity was not lost by the ministers of Charles, who employed every expedient to detach the Burgundian from his allies. He had now taken ample revenge for the murder of his father: his prejudices and his interest were intimately connected with the cause of his native sovereign; and the wishes of his council and subjects ran in the same channel. If he still adhered to a league which he now hated and condemned, it was in consideration of his oath not to make peace without the consent of the English. To remove the difficulty it was suggested in a conference between him and his brothers-in-law, the duke of Bourbon, and the constable of France, to attempt a general pacification under the mediation of the pope, as the common father of the christian princes.

CHAP.  
II.  
—  
Congress  
at Arras.

To this proposal Eugenius IV. gladly acceded : and in 1435 was held the congress of Arras, the most illustrious meeting for political purposes, which Europe had yet witnessed. The duke of Burgundy, the most magnificent prince of the age, summoned to his court all the nobility of his states : the pontiff was represented by the cardinal of Santa Croce ; and the council of Basil, which was then sitting, by the cardinal of Cyprus : the interests of the young Henry were supported by his great uncle cardinal Beaufort, with twenty-six colleagues, half French and half English :<sup>51</sup> and Charles sent a legation of twenty-nine noblemen and ministers, at the head of whom were the duke of Bourbon and the constable. To these were added envoys from the kings of Sicily, Norway, Denmark, and Poland, from many of the princes of Germany and Italy, and from the cities of Flanders and the Hanse towns. The first days were spent in feastings, tournaments, and parties of pleasure : but even in these the cordiality between the Burgundians and French was sufficiently apparent to awaken the jealousy and apprehensions of the English. The cardinal of Santa Croce opened the conferences with a common-place harangue on the ravages and evils of war ; and projects and counterprojects were exchanged for several days : but the pretensions of the two courts were so oppo-

Peace be-  
tween  
France and  
Burgundy.  
1435.  
Sept. 26.

site and extravagant, that every hope of pacification speedily vanished.<sup>52</sup> Both the cardinals, mediators, and the Burgundian ministers had been gained by the French. The former openly blamed the inflexibility of the English: the latter had prepared for signature a treaty of amity between their master and Charles. To spare himself the mortification of witnessing so unfavourable a transaction, the cardinal of Winchester, with his colleagues, departed from the scene of negociation: and a fortnight afterwards peace was proclaimed between France and Burgundy. The conditions had been dictated by Philip; that Charles should express his sorrow for the murder, and engage to punish the murderers of the late duke; and should surrender to Philip several fortresses as a security for the payment of four hundred thousand crowns. As soon as the treaty had been signed, the French negociators falling on their knees in presence of the duke, begged pardon for the murder of his father; and he, laying his hands on a golden cross placed before the eucharist, solemnly declared that he forgave the king from his heart. The cardinals then absolved him and his lords from the oath of alliance with England. To conclude the ceremony, the barons on each side, according to the custom of the age, swore to enforce the observance of the treaty. The

<sup>52</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 481.

CHAP.

II.

~

inutility and impiety of such oaths were shewn by the remark of the lord of Launay, who, when it came to his turn, exclaimed : “This is the sixth peace to which I have sworn since the beginning of the war. The five first were all broken. But as for this, whatever others may do, “I declare before God, that I will observe it.”<sup>53</sup>

Subse-  
quent  
events of  
the war.

Death of  
the duke of  
Bedford.  
Sept. 14.

Loss of  
Paris.

To detail the complex but unimportant operations of the war during the ten following years, would be a tedious and intricate task. The leading particulars under different heads may suffice to gratify the curiosity of the reader.

1. Before the dissolution of the congress of Arras, the duke of Bedford expired at Rouen. He left the reputation of a prudent statesman, and a brave and experienced general : and his name was long and respectfully remembered by his enemies as well as his countrymen. He was buried in the cathedral on the right hand of the high altar : and when some years later it was suggested to Louis XI. to remove his bones to a less honourable situation, the monarch angrily replied : “I will not war with the remains of a prince who was once a match for your fathers and mine ; and who, were he now alive, would make the proudest of us tremble. Let his ashes rest in peace, and may the Almighty have mercy on his soul.”<sup>54</sup>

2. To the duke of Bedford succeeded Richard

<sup>53</sup> Monstrel. ii. 108—119. Meyer, 323.

<sup>54</sup> Stow, p. 475. Hall, 129.

CHAP.  
II.1436.  
April 13.

duke of York: but before his arrival Paris had returned to the obedience of its native sovereign. The citizens had always been attached to the Burgundians; and with them were willing to transfer their services from Henry to Charles. The gate of St. Jacques was betrayed in the night to Adam de Lisle, and the count de Du-nois: chains thrown across the streets prevented the arrival of the English: the lord Willoughby with the garrison retired into the bastile: and an honourable capitulation freed the capital from the dominion of strangers. The duke landed in Normandy with eight thousand men. He soon reduced the towns which had revolted or surrendered to the enemy; and John lord Talbot, afterwards earl of Shrewsbury, by his activity and courage restored the reputation of the English arms. He defeated near Rouen a body of French, who had been invited by the treachery of the inhabitants; and soon afterwards, taking advantage of a fall of snow, surprised the town of Pontoise by a body of men, who dressed in white had concealed themselves in the ditch. Thence he spread desolation and terror to the very walls of Paris.<sup>55</sup>

3. The duke of Burgundy intended to remain neutral: the insults of the English and the inclination of his subjects dragged him into the war. He proved, however, a feeble enemy.

Hostilities  
with the  
duke of  
Burgundy.<sup>55</sup> Monstrel. ii. 127.

CHAP. II. Some of his nobles refused to assist him, on the ground of the fealty which they had sworn to the king of England: nor is it improbable that he himself felt some scruple on the same account. This is certain, that he never could be induced to face an English army. At the request of the people of Flanders he undertook to reduce Calais: and the duke of Gloucester, who had been ordered to relieve it, sent the Burgundian a challenge to fight in the open field: but four days before his arrival Philip had retired with precipitation into his own territories. It was in vain that he was followed by Gloucester, to whom Henry, as king of France, had ridiculously granted the earldom of Flanders, forfeited, as it was pretended, by the treason of the Burgundian.<sup>56</sup> The next year Philip besieged with similar success the town of Crotoi, at the mouth of the Somme. To succour that fortress Talbot marched from Normandy with a small army of four thousand men. They spent the night at St. Valery: the next morning they plunged into the water at Blanchetaque; and, though it reached to their breasts, crossed the ford without accident. Astonished at their boldness the besiegers retired within their lines, and the duke withdrew to Abbeville. Talbot ravaged the country with impunity: the Burgundians mutinied in the camp; and the garrison seized the

opportunity to pursue them to a considerable distance.<sup>57</sup>

4. In 1437 the duke of York was recalled, and succeeded by Beauchamp, surnamed the good, earl of Warwick, with the title of lieutenant-general, and governor of France.<sup>58</sup> His short administration (for he died at Rouen in less than two years) was not distinguished by any remarkable event. Instead of the ravages of war, both countries were exposed to a more dreadful scourge in the combined operation of famine and pestilence.<sup>59</sup>

5. In 1439 the earl of Richmont, constable of France, recovered the city of Meaux in defiance of the lord Talbot, who endeavoured to raise the siege. But this loss was compensated the next year by the capture of Harfleur, which, with the greater portion of Caux, had been wrested from Henry in 1432. The earl of Somerset, with

CHAP.  
II.

A famine.  
July 16.  
1439.

April 30.

Siege of  
Harfleur.

<sup>57</sup> Monstrel. ii. 148—150.

<sup>58</sup> Rym. x. 675.

<sup>59</sup> In England the value of wheat rose to what was then considered the enormous price of three shillings and four-pence the bushel: and the people supported life by making bread of pease, beans, and vetches, though in London the merchants by the importation of rye from the Baltic contributed to lessen the scarcity. In France we are told by an eye witness, that the advance in the price of provisions was tenfold: and that the number of those who expired of want and disease among the lower classes, was immense. This calamitous visitation lasted two years. See Wyrcest. 459. Monstrel. ii. 151. 155. Fab. 435. On account of the danger of infection, an act was passed that no person, when he did homage, should, as usual, kiss the king, but the homage should be deemed good in law with the omission of that ceremony. Rot. Parl. v. 31.

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~

Talbot and many other distinguished officers, lay before it during several months; and so secure did they consider themselves, that the countess with several ladies consented to spend the summer in the midst of the camp. The count d'Eu, by order of Charles, attempted to relieve the place. The besiegers were attacked at the same time in four different points by sea and land: but every effort to break through their intrenchments proved ineffectual: the assailants were repulsed with considerable loss; and the garrison surrendered.⁶⁰

Loss of
Pontoise.
1441.
May.

6. The complaints of the Parisians stimulated Charles to undertake the siege of Pontoise. He invested it with twelve thousand men, threw up bastiles, and fortified them with batteries. Talbot on two occasions succeeded in throwing supplies and reinforcements into the place. The duke of York, who had been appointed the king's lieutenant a second time, arrived with eight thousand men, and offered battle to Charles. But the French monarch still respected the valour of his opponents: he declined fighting without a manifest advantage; and contented himself with observing the fords over the Oise. In the night Talbot made a false attack on the bridge of Beaumont, while lower down the river four men silently crossed to the opposite side in a boat of leather, and drew after them several

⁶⁰ Monstrel. ii. 173, 174.

others. A bridge of ropes was now thrown across: and before any discovery was made, six hundred men had strongly intrenched themselves on the left bank. A fruitless attempt was made to dislodge them: the French army dispersed, and the duke reinforced the garrison. He returned to Normandy, leaving two thousand of the enemy in one of the bastiles, which was too strongly fortified to be attacked with impunity; and the ridicule of the Parisians compelled Charles to resume the siege. At length the French got possession of the church of Notre Dame which overlooked the walls; and three days afterwards a bloody but successful assault restored this important place to the dominion of the French monarch.⁶¹

CHAP.
II.
~~

Sept. 16.
Sept. 19.

7. In the two next years Charles reduced several fortresses in Guienne, while the English spread themselves over Picardy, Maine, and Anjou. The pope repeatedly exhorted the rival powers to lay aside their arms; and Isabella dutchess of Burgundy, had offered herself as a mediatrix equally attached to each party; to France by her marriage with duke Philip, to England by her descent from John of Ghent, by her mother the queen of Portugal. At first every attempt to negotiate with France served only to create additional irritation from the irreconcilable demands of the two courts:⁶² but the

Negocia-
tions.

⁶¹ Monstrel. ii. 187—191.

⁶² The instructions delivered to the English negotiators on one

CHAP.

II.

~

quarrel with Burgundy, as it involved no great national interest, was more easily appeased. It

of these occasions, are still extant ; and present a most curious specimen of diplomatic finesse. They were ordered, 1^o. To demand from Charles a formal recognition of Henry's title to the throne of France : and to enforce this demand, not by any inquiry into the king's right, (that had been placed beyond the reach of doubt by the decision of his royal father and Edward III.) but by insisting on the pacification of Troyes, and the judgment of God, manifested by the victories which he had given to small bodies of Englishmen over the immense hosts of their enemies. But 2^o. If the demand were refused, they were to make an offer to Charles of a principality beyond the Loire to the annual income of twenty millions of crowns. 3^o. These, however, were but preliminary flourishes, proposals made that they might be rejected. The lord cardinal of Winchester was now to appear on the scene, not as a negotiator, (he was not even named in the commission) but as a prince of the church, brought to the place of conference by his zeal to stanch the effusion of human blood. In a set speech he was to exhort both parties to terminate a quarrel, which had now lasted a hundred years, and which had sacrificed the lives of more men than were at that time alive in the two kingdoms. He was to paint in lively colours the evils of war, both as to the temporal calamities which it inflicts, and the spiritual loss of souls, sent before the tribunal of God, in the midst of their sins : he was to observe that the question could be decided only by one of these two ways, the destruction of the English or French people, which was impracticable, or by an equitable adjustment of claims, which, if it were to be adopted, could not be adopted too soon. 4^o. The English ministers were to be marvellously affected by this speech : and in consequence of it to relax in their pretensions, and to offer to Charles the whole of France beyond the Loire, with the exception of Guienne. Nay : rather than incur the guilt of contributing to the evils so feelingly deplored by the cardinal, they were to suffer themselves to be satisfied with the faithful accomplishment of the great peace of Bretigny. But the French envoys were not to be blinded by so flimsy an artifice. They insisted that Henry should cede all his conquests besides Normandy, and hold that dutchy, with Guienne, of the crown of France. The proposal was received as an insult, and the negotiation broken off. Rym. x. 724.

had arisen from resentment for the apostacy of the duke : but England, in her endeavour to punish him, had, by the interruption of the trade with Flanders, inflicted a severe injury on herself. In 1443 Isabella (with her husband Henry seems to have refused to treat⁶³) concluded a suspension of hostilities with the duke of York.⁶⁴ In the next year her efforts to extend that benefit to all the belligerents were seconded by the more powerful influence of the duke of Orleans, who had been made prisoner at the battle of Azincourt, and after a captivity of twenty-four years had been permitted to revisit his country. Before his departure he paid down forty thousand nobles, gave security for the payment of eighty thousand more in the course of six months, and bound himself to return at the expiration of the year, unless he should prevail on Charles to consent to a final peace : and Henry on his part engaged to repay him the money on the signature of the treaty, or, in failure of that, on his return to captivity.⁶⁵ He was released about the end of the year 1440 : and instead of effecting the purpose of his mission, found himself excluded from the court by the intrigues of the royal favourites. Henry was compelled to enlarge the time fixed for his return : and he at

CHAP.

II.

April 24.

Nov. 13.

⁶³ Many conferences were held with her, none with him, as appears from the instruments in Rymer, x. 713. 730. 761. 767. 802, &c.

⁶⁴ Rym. xi. 24.

⁶⁵ Ibid. x. 820—829.

CHAP. II. length gained that influence in the council which was due to his rank and abilities. Charles now listened to his suggestions in favour of peace. The duke himself and the earl of Suffolk were the principal negociators: and though they could not induce their respective courts to agree to any general basis of pacification, concluded an armistice for two years, during which it was hoped that some way might be discovered of adjusting the opposite claims, and reconciling the interests, of the contending sovereigns.⁶⁶

An armis-
tice.

1444.
May 28.

Transac-
tions with
Scotland.

1424.
March 28.

1428.
July 17.

Hitherto the attention of the reader has been occupied by the conduct of the war in France: this temporary suspension of hostilities will afford him leisure to revert to the domestic occurrences of the last twenty years, and the miscellaneous incidents, which diversify the history of that period. I. Before James of Scotland was restored to his throne, a truce of seven years had been concluded between the two kingdoms.⁶⁷ By the king it was carefully observed; not that he retained any warm attachment for the place of his captivity, but that he wished for peace in order to curb the factious spirit of his nobles, and to encourage habits of industry and subordination among his people. Hence his connection with England did not prevent him from receiving the ambassadors of Charles. He renewed the ancient league be-

⁶⁶ Rym. xi. 59—67.

⁶⁷ Ibid. x. 329—332.

tween the two crowns, and agreed to give the princess of Scotland in marriage to the dauphin as soon as the parties should have attained the age of puberty. His poverty did not enable him to offer with his daughter a portion becoming her rank: but he assented to what was still more acceptable, an aid of six thousand Scottish troops, whenever a fleet for their conveyance should arrive from France.⁶⁸ To secure his friendship, Charles made him a grant of the county of Xaintogne, and the lordship of Rochfort, which the king of Scots condescended to hold of the French crown, engaging to send the first prince of his blood to perform the accustomed homage.⁶⁹ These treaties alarmed the English government. The cardinal of Winchester obtained a personal interview with James at Durham: and whether it were owing to his suggestions, or to the difficulty of providing a sufficient number of vessels, the stipulated auxiliaries never left Scotland.⁷⁰ James even consented to a renewal of the truce with England for five years, and to an understanding that if any of his subjects should sail to the assistance of the enemies of Henry, they might be treated as

CHAP.
II.
~~~

Nov.

1429.  
Feb.

1430.  
Dec. 15.

<sup>68</sup> Du Tillet, 138. Ford. xvi. 11.

<sup>69</sup> Du Tillet, *ibid.* The next month by a new agreement it was stipulated that after the expulsion of the English from France, the Scottish king, in lieu of Xaintogne and Rochfort, should receive either the dutchy of Berri or the county of Evreux, to be held on the same terms. *Ibid.* December 10, 1428.

<sup>70</sup> Rym. x. 409, 410.

CHAP. enemies themselves, without any interruption  
 II. of the harmony between the two crowns.<sup>71</sup>

1433. Oct. It was not long, however, before the French ministry reminded the Scottish king of his engagements : and the lord Scroop, on the part of England, solicited the hand of the princess for his own sovereign, offering, as an inducement, to cede to Scotland the towns of Roxburgh and Berwick. This proposal divided the Scottish parliament. During a debate of two days one party maintained that the king by his previous treaty with France was precluded from listening to the offers of England : the other that no prince could conscientiously bind himself to follow the dictates of another in the matter of war and peace, contrary to the commands of the gospel, and the interests of his people. They separated without coming to any result : and both the French and English envoys failed in the object of their missions.<sup>72</sup>

Two years later sir Robert Ogle had the presumption to pass the borders, and assist a Scottish lord, who had taken up arms against the king. He was defeated at Piperdan with great loss by the earl of Angus. James, irritated by this breach of the armistice, demanded repara-

<sup>71</sup> Ibid. x. 482—488. By a curious clause were excepted from the truce all the lands in England south of St. Michael's mount in Cornwall, and all the lands in Scotland, north of the river Forn, between Moray and Ross to the sea (Ibid. 484) ; that is, as far as I can understand it, no lands at all.

<sup>72</sup> Ford. xvi. 23, 24.

CHAP.  
II.  
1435.  
March 7.

tion: but though commissioners were appointed by Henry, and a letter was written by him to the king of Scots with his own hand, the difference was not accommodated.<sup>73</sup> Suspicious of his intention, the council ordered a fleet of one hundred and eighty sail to cruise in the German ocean, and intercept the princess of Scotland in her way to the French coast. She was, however, more fortunate than her father had been in similar circumstances: and by steering round the north of Scotland, eluded the English squadron, and reached the port of Rochelle.<sup>74</sup> This new insult determined James to seek revenge with the sword. He summoned every Scot between the ages of sixteen and sixty to join his banner: and, if we may believe a native and contemporary writer, more than two hundred thousand men followed him to the siege of Roxburgh.<sup>75</sup> The fall of the fortress was prevented by the inconstancy of the king, who, after a few days, without assigning any plausible reason, disbanded the army, and hastened to Edinburgh. It were idle to enumerate all the motives to which different writers have attributed his conduct: the most plausible conjecture supposes him to have received a hint of the dark and mysterious conspiracy, which within six months deprived him of life.<sup>76</sup> He was succeeded by his

<sup>73</sup> Rym. 635. Ford. xvi. 9.

<sup>74</sup> Ford. xvi. 9.

<sup>75</sup> Ford. xvi. 26. <sup>76</sup> It was in August that he raised the siege: at Christmas he repaired to his favourite residence in the

CHAP. son James II. who had only completed his fifth  
 II. year : and one of the first acts of the new reign  
 ~~~~~ was the conclusion of a truce with Henry till  
 the year 1447.⁷⁷

Marriages
 of queen
 Catharine
 and the
 dutchess of
 Bedford.

II. England, during this period, exhibited the unusual spectacle of two princesses, who, despising the pride of birth, had married into the families of commoners. Catharine, the daughter

dominican convent at Perth. On the evening of the 20th of February, after drinking the voidee, or parting cup, with his company, he retired to his bed chamber, and as he stood in his gown before the fire, conversing with the queen and her attendants, he was suddenly alarmed by the clash of arms. Aware of the danger, he called to the ladies to bolt the door, while he should escape by the window. But the iron bars were too close to admit a human body between them : and the king, seizing the fire-tongs, rushed into an adjoining closet, wrenched up one of the boards from the floor, and let himself through the aperture into the privy. The board immediately dropped into its former place : and it soon appeared that the noise proceeded from sir Robert Graham, who, with three hundred highlanders had scaled the defences of the monastery. They burst open the door, broke the arm of Catharine Douglas, who attempted to exclude them, and wounded the queen, when a voice exclaimed : "For shame! She is but a woman. Look after her "husband." Not finding him in the bed-chamber, they parted in separate directions to search the adjoining rooms: and James, seizing the opportunity, called to the ladies to draw him out. In the attempt, Elizabeth Douglas fell through the aperture : and during the confusion caused by this event one of the assassins entered the closet. He informed his associates: sir John Hall leaped below, and was followed by his brother: but the king, an athletic man, seized each in the descent, and attempted to throttle them on the floor. Graham sprang to their assistance. At the entreaties and promises of James he began to waver: but his confederates above terrified him by their threats: and the unarmed monarch was dispatched with sixteen wounds. See the contemporary relation of this tragical event, published by Pinkerton, vol. i. App. No. xiii.

⁷⁷ Rym. x. 689.

of France, the widow of the last, and the mother of the present sovereign, had given her hand to Owen ap Tudor, a Welsh gentleman employed about the court: and Jacquetta of Luxembourg, after the death of the duke of Bedford, married sir Richard Wydevile, an English knight, distinguished by the extraordinary beauty of his person. Both the husbands were thrown into prison, Wydevile immediately, Tudor after the death of the queen. Their offence was contempt of the royal prerogative, in marrying tenants of the crown (each princess was so by her dower) without previously obtaining the royal licence. Wydevile was released on the payment of a fine of a thousand pounds, and was afterwards created earl Rivers.⁷⁸ Tudor, impatient of confinement, made his escape from Newgate: but was retaken, and safely lodged in the castle of Wallingford.⁷⁹ Of his sons by Catharine, Edmund was created earl of Richmond, Jasper earl of Pembroke, and Owen the younger became a monk in Westminster abbey.

III. The care of the young king had originally been intrusted to his great uncle the duke of Exeter: but that nobleman died in 1424, and was succeeded by the earl of Warwick. In the patent of appointment he was commanded to take charge of the health and security of the

*Education
of Henry.*

1428.
June 1.

⁷⁸ Ryn. x. 677. Rot. Parl. iv. 498.

⁷⁹ Ibid. 685.

CHAP.

II.

royal person, to watch over the education of his pupil in morals and virtue, in literature and the languages, in manners and courtesy, and in all the acquirements which become a great king: and to chastise his negligence or disobedience in such manner as other princes of the same age were wont to be chastised.⁸⁰ But when Henry had reached his eleventh year, Warwick applied to the council for more ample powers. He found that officious persons, to make their court to their sovereign, had filled his mind with notions of his own importance, and that he would no longer submit to the punishments, which it was occasionally deemed necessary to inflict. The earl therefore demanded authority to appoint or dismiss the persons composing the royal household; to prevent any stranger from speaking with the king, unless it were in presence of one of the four knights of the body; and to remove him from place to place as he saw it necessary for his health or security. He also required the council to admonish the king in a body, of the necessity of obedience to his preceptor, and to promise that they would stand by him, if on that account his pupil should conceive any antipathy against him.⁸¹ All these demands were granted. It was, however, impossible to exclude flatterers from the prince; who, at their suggestion, in his fourteenth year

1432.
Nov. 29.⁸⁰ Rym. x. 399. Rot. Parl. iv. 411.⁸¹ Ibid. 433, 434.

demanded to be admitted into the council, and to be made acquainted with the manner in which the concerns of his kingdom were conducted. This claim was resisted with firmness but with respect.⁸² Yet Henry, though he acquiesced for the present, three years afterwards renewed his demands. To satisfy him, it was resolved, that the pardon of offences, the collation of benefices, and all special graces should be reserved to the king: that he should be made acquainted with all debates of importance respecting his crown and prerogatives: and should decide in all matters, regarding which the council should be so far divided in opinion that the majority did not exceed two thirds of the members.⁸³ Thus the government remained, till he became of full age.

CHAP.
II.
1434.
Nov. 12.

1437.
Nov. 13.

⁸² The members of the council (the duke of Gloucester alone was absent) replied, that, "God, indeed, had endowed the king with "as great understanding and feeling as ever they saw or knew in "any prince or other person of his age: nevertheless, to quit them "truly to God, to the king, and to his people, they dare not take "upon them to put him in conceit or opinion that he is yet en- "dowed with so great feeling, knowledge, and wisdom, the which "must in great part grow of experience, nor with so great foresight "and discretion to depart and choose in matters of great weight "and difficulty, as is expedient and behovful to him and his peo- "ple. They therefore think it would be perilous and harmful to "change the rule and governance that afore this in his tender age "hath been appointed for the good and surety of his noble person, "and of this land: and trust, that if any such motion be again "made to him, before he agree to it, he will take the advice of his "great council, or of his continual council, for the time being: the "which manner of his demeaning, it is trowed and thought, will "be the best that can be advised," Ibid. 438. ⁸³ Rym. 438, 439.

CHAP.
II.
Disputes
between
Gloccster
and the
cardinal.

IV. The reader has already noticed the commencement of the quarrel between the duke of Gloucester, and his uncle the bishop of Winchester. Their mutual rivalry converted these near relations into the bitterest enemies, and gave insensibly an opposite direction to their views of national polity. The duke proclaimed himself the warm and inexorable advocate of war: the bishop contended with equal vehemence for peace; and as the council perpetually oscillated between the influence of the one and of the other, the war was never conducted with vigour, and obstacles were constantly opposed to the conclusion of peace. The bickerings between these two ministers are of themselves beneath the notice of history: but they derive importance from their consequences, which were felt through the greater portion of Henry's reign.

Dec. 28.
1437.

When Beaufort, during the life of the last monarch, visited the council of Bazil, he was named by Martin V. cardinal and apostolic legate in England, Ireland, and Wales, with a promise that his creation and appointment should be afterwards published in the accustomed manner.⁸⁴ The intelligence alarmed the jealousy of archbishop Chicheley. Other legates were foreigners, whose stay was too short to create any permanent prejudice to the rights of the metropolitans: but Beaufort would fix his

⁸⁴ Ang. Sac. i. 800.

CHAP.
II.1419.
March 6.1426.
June 26.
1427.
Feb. 2.

March 18.

residence in England, and by his superior authority suspend or limit for years that jurisdiction which belonged to the successors of St. Augustine. On this account he wrote a long letter to the king, who, persuaded by his arguments, forbade the bishop of Winchester to accept the dignity which had been offered him.⁸⁵ Thus the matter rested, till the quarrel arose between that prelate and his nephew of Gloucester. It has been already noticed that Beaufort condescended to make him an apology, resigned the chancellorship, and obtained permission to travel: but it is probable that by these concessions he purchased the royal licence to accept the preferments to which he had been named in the court of Rome. He was soon afterwards declared cardinal priest of St. Eusebius, was invested with the usual habit at Calais, received the hat at Mechlin, and was appointed captain general of the crusaders destined to oppose the Bohemian Hussites.⁸⁶ His absence perhaps encouraged, or his promotion stimulated, the ambition of the

⁸⁵ After alluding to the ambition of Beaufort, he tells the king that, "There never was no legate a latere sent into no land, and specially into the realm of England, without great and notable cause. And they when they came, abiden but little while, not over a year, and some a quarter or two months, as the needs required: and yet over that he was treated with ere he came into the land, when he should have exercise of his power, and how much should be put into execution." See the whole letter apud Duck, *Vit. Cich.* p. 129.

⁸⁶ *Ang. Sac.* 318. *Raynald*, vi. 92, 93.

CHAP.

II.

Oct. 15.

1428.

March 3.

Beaufort
raises
troops for
the cru-
sade.

Sept. 1.

duke of Gloucester, who at the next meeting of parliament required of the lords a declaration of the powers vested in him as protector. Whether it was on this or some other account, is uncertain: but the parliament was soon afterwards prorogued. When it opened again the duke repeated his demand, adding that he would not take his seat till it was answered, and admonishing the house not to pass any bill in his absence. The reply must have proved most mortifying to his ambition. They reminded him that the act, which gave him the title of protector, invested him with no authority except in the two cases of foreign invasion, and internal revolt; “ marvelled from their hearts” that after he had subscribed this act, he should pretend to any additional power; declared that in parliament he was no more than any other peer; and exhorted him to resume his seat, and attend to the business of the nation, as he was bound to do in obedience to the king’s writ. The duke reluctantly acquiesced.⁸⁷

About six months later the cardinal ventured to return to England: and at his entry into the metropolis was met in solemn procession by the clergy, the mayor, and the citizens. But it soon appeared that though he had been received with honour, his new dignity had made him an object of suspicion. In the presence of the council,

⁸⁷ Rot. Parl. iv. 326, 327.

and at the requisition of the king's attorney, he was compelled to promise that he would abstain in the execution of his office from every act, which might derogate from the rights of the crown or of the subject:⁸⁸ and when the feast of St. George arrived, was forbidden to attend as chancellor of the order of the garter, on the ground that he ought to have vacated that office, together with the bishoprick of Winchester, from the day on which he accepted the dignity of cardinal.⁸⁹ Beaufort was content to submit, that he might not by opposition defeat the project, in which he was now engaged. As soon as Cunzo, the papal envoy, had delivered the letters of Martin V. to the council, the cardinal exhibited the bull appointing him captain general against the Hussites, and solicited the royal licence to publish the crusade, and to raise an army of five hundred lancers, and five thousand archers for the expedition. Both petitions were granted, but on condition that the troops should be reduced to one half of the number demanded,

CHAP.
II.
~~

1429.
April 17.

May 10.

June 18.

⁸⁸ The protest of Gaudray, the king's attorney, is still extant. He maintains that it is the right of the crown, founded on special privilege and prescription, with the knowledge and tolerance of the pontiffs, that no legate should come to England unless at the petition of the king: and that as the cardinal had come without being asked for, it was not the intention of the king or council to approve of his entrance in derogation of the laws or rights of the kingdom, or to admit him as legate contrary to law and right, or to consent that he should exercise his legation in opposition to the same. Fox, i. 920.

⁸⁹ Rym. x. 414.

CHAP.

II.

July 1.

Aug. 11.

and the donations of the people should be expended in the purchase of arms and provisions within the realm.⁹⁰ But soon a transaction occurred most disgraceful to all the parties concerned. For a bribe of one thousand marks the cardinal consented that the men, whom he had raised for the crusade, should be led against the king's enemies in France: and the council on their part engaged to indemnify him to the pontiff for this breach of his duty. He received their bonds: but promised to keep this part of the transaction secret, and not to apply for payment from them, till he should fail in his attempt to procure it from the regency of France.⁹¹ When Charles found the crusaders arrayed against himself, he complained most bitterly to the pontiff, who loudly protested his ignorance of this fraudulent transaction, and upbraided the cardinal with having injured the cause of religion, and stained the reputation of the holy see. Beaufort attempted to justify himself by allegations which it is difficult to believe: that the orders of his sovereign were intimated to him in such terms that he durst not disobey; and that the men themselves declared to his face, that they would

⁹⁰ Rym. x. 419—423.

⁹¹ Id. 424—426.

I suspect that the whole business was a fraud from the very beginning. The cardinal's petition to raise men was granted, and the agreement signed on the 18th of June: and yet on the 15th and 16th of the same month, orders had been given to prepare quarters for him and his army in Kent, and to provide a fleet for their passage to foreign parts, *on the king's service*: in *obsequium nostrum*. Id. 418.

not march against the Hussites, but were determined to restore the superiority of the English arms in France.⁹²

CHAP.
II.
~~~

He be-  
comes po-  
pular.

1429.  
Sept. 22.

Dec. 18.

Dec. 20.

If the conduct of the cardinal on this occasion irritated the court of Rome, it served to add to his popularity in England; and when the parliament assembled, both houses seemed to contend which should heap on him the most distinguished honours. The same objection which excluded him from the feast of St. George, had also excluded him from the king's council: but the lords now requested him, for the service of the king, and the benefit of the nation, to resume his seat at that board, and to absent himself only when subjects were debated which concerned the court of Rome.<sup>93</sup> To this flattering request he willingly assented: and two days later the commons, when they presented to the king a grant of a second supply, took the opportunity to preface it with a panegyric on the virtues and services of the cardinal.<sup>94</sup>

It is generally believed that the duke of Gloucester, finding himself unable to exclude his rival from the cabinet by force, undertook to re-

Charges  
against  
him.

<sup>92</sup> Raynald, vi. 73, 74.

<sup>93</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 33s.

<sup>94</sup> Facta prius speciali recommendatione reverendissimi in Christo patris et domini, domini Henrici, permissione divina titulo S. Eusebii, presbyteri cardinalis de Anglia vulgariter nuncupati, per prolocutorem suum ulterius declarabant, &c. Ibid. p. 337. I quote the words of the record, because they have generally been misunderstood to mean, that the commons granted a second subsidy at the recommendation of the cardinal.

CHAP.

II.

1431.  
Nov. 6.

move him by policy. So much is certain, that Beaufort, at the repeated instances of the council, consented to accompany the young king to France: and that during his absence, an ungenerous attempt was made to ruin him for ever. In a numerous meeting of the peers, the king's attorney, on the ground that the dignity of cardinal was incompatible with the possession of a bishopric, proposed that he should be removed from the see of Winchester, and condemned to refund its revenues from the day of his promotion in the court of Rome. Gloucester immediately arose, charged his uncle with having obtained for himself and his diocese a bull of exemption from the jurisdiction of Canterbury, and contended that by such act he had incurred the penalties of *præmunire*. But of this charge no satisfactory evidence was produced: and the lords after a long debate resolved, that the cardinal should be heard in his own defence, and that in the interval the records should be searched for precedents, and the judges be required to deliver their opinions.<sup>95</sup> This attack, which was

<sup>95</sup> Rym. x. 497. The objections now made were the cause, that when Eugenius in 1440 named the archbishops of York and Rouen cardinals, both these prelates refused that dignity: and to relieve them from all apprehension, Henry granted them the royal licence to retain their bishoprics together with the cardinalate, and the pope solemnly declared that it had not been his intention, by introducing them into the sacred college, to remove them from their churches of York and Rouen. The writs issued on this occasion shew how difficult it was for ecclesiastics at this period to secure themselves from the operation of the statutes of *præmunire*. Rym. x. 758. 840.

1432.  
May 12.

followed by the seizure of his jewels at Sandwich, valued at twelve thousand pounds, alarmed Beaufort. Instead of returning to England, he took his leave of Henry at Calais, under pretence that he had received orders from the pope to visit him at Rome: but remained for several months in Flanders, watching the motions of his enemies, and directing those of his friends. A conditional bill of indemnity, to protect him from the penalties of *præmunire*, if they had been incurred, was brought into the commons, and met with no opposition in its progress through either house. Shortly afterwards he appeared in his place, on a day when Henry was present. He had obtained, he said, the king's leave to proceed to Rome at the requisition of the sovereign pontiff, when he heard that it was intended to charge him with treason in his absence. As his reputation was dearer to him than any other treasure, he was returned to face his accuser. Let him come forth, whoever he might be, and he should find him ready to answer. After some deliberation between the duke and the lords, it was replied: that no one appeared to make such a charge, and that the king held him to be a good and faithful subject. Beaufort thanked his sovereign for his gracious declaration, and demanded that it might be delivered to him in writing under the king's signature: not that he meant to plead it on a future occasion—he scorned to depend on any thing but his own in-

CHAP. II.      nocence ; but that it might be publicly known, that no one dared to support such an accusation against him. His request was granted : and the declaration was entered on the rolls.<sup>96</sup>

From this period during several years, the uncle and nephew, equally jealous of each other, laboured to strengthen their own influence by the advancement of their dependants. Gloucester on all occasions brought forward Richard duke of York, in whom were now centred the rights of the family of Clarence : the cardinal espoused on all occasions the interests of his nephew, Henry Beaufort, earl, and afterwards duke, of Somerset. The former continued to preside in the cabinet, and to enrich himself by obtaining grants from the crown : the latter annually aided the government with loans, and conducted in person almost every negociation

---

<sup>96</sup> Rot. Parl. iv. 390, 391. Rym. x. 516, 517. He next complained of the illegal seizure of his jewels at Sandwich, and demanded their restitution from the justice of his sovereign. The duke, and many of the council pleaded the poverty of the crown, and resisted this demand. Proposals were made and rejected : and at last both parties assented to the following most singular compromise. The jewels were restored to the cardinal, who in return advanced to Henry six thousand pounds, on condition that when he should demand payment within the course of six years, the reasons on each side should be laid before the king, and on his decision as to the legality of the seizure, should depend the retention or repayment of the money. At the same time he lent the government another sum of six thousand pounds, in addition to eight thousand which he had advanced during Henry's residence in France, the repayment of which was secured by parliament on the next supply which should be granted. *Ibid.*

with foreign powers. Though these, as far as regarded peace, had been hitherto unsuccessful, they served to augment his popularity. The nation, exhausted by a long and ruinous contest, naturally transferred its attachment from the patron of war to the advocate of peace.

At length the two rivals made the grand trial of their strength. The duke of Orleans had often and earnestly sued to obtain his liberation, promising to exert all his influence to bend the French cabinet to proposals of peace. The cardinal favoured, the duke opposed his petition. The former argued, that in the present exhausted state of the nation, it was prudent to employ every probable expedient to put an honourable termination to the war: and that at all events the ransom of the duke would enable the king to continue the contest for two years without any additional burden to the people. Gloucester built his opposition on the abilities of the prisoner, and his acquaintance with the policy and resources of England. Charles and his son, he observed, were princes of slender capacity, guided by their ministers, and placed in opposition to each other by the intrigues of their favourites: but were the duke of Orleans to obtain his liberty, he would unite the two parties, assume the direction of the cabinet, and teach the English to condemn their own folly in supplying the enemy with

CHAP.  
II.

Liberation  
of the  
duke of  
Orleans.  
1439.

CHAP. so able a counsellor.<sup>97</sup> To lessen the influence of the cardinal, Gloucester delivered to the king a memorial, containing the real or supposed transgressions of that prelate under twenty different heads: but though it is probable that out of so great a number, some charges may have been founded in fact, the majority prove rather the enmity of the nephew than the guilt of the uncle.<sup>98</sup> The king read the

<sup>97</sup> Rym, x, 765.

<sup>98</sup> He accuses him of ambition in seeking the dignity of a cardinal after he had been prohibited by the late king, and of contempt of the royal authority in receiving the papal bulls, retaining his bishopric of Winchester, and procuring an exemption from the authority of the primate, without the king's permission. But if these offences subjected him, as Gloucester maintained, to the penalties of a *præmunire*, it should be remembered that they had been long ago pardoned by act of parliament. In the next place he complains of Beaufort's avarice, whose riches are too great to have been honestly procured. He makes, indeed, loans to the king, but seldom executes his engagements with fidelity, seeking pretexts to appropriate to himself the securities he receives, and defrauding the crown by means of his officers, who receive the customs in the port of Southampton. The cardinal's services in foreign embassies, so frequently applauded by the parliament, have, he maintains, produced advantage to no one but the king's enemies. By the congress at Arras he furnished the means of reconciliation to Charles and the duke of Burgundy: and by the late negociation at Calais, to the duke of Burgundy and the duke of Bourbon. It was the private interest of his family that induced him to liberate without authority the king of Scots; and some similar motive urges him now to insist so earnestly on the release of the duke of Orleans. In short he has contrived to arrogate all the powers of government to himself and his creature the archbishop of York; keeps at a distance from the king all those prelates and lords that are sincerely attached to the royal person;

memorial: but it seems not to have made on his mind any impression unfavourable to Beaufort. The negociation with the duke of Orleans continued: and as the council was divided in opinion, the arguments on both sides, according to the late arrangement respecting such cases, were laid before Henry in writing. He decided in favour of the cardinal. Gloucester, who could ill brook his defeat, lodged on the rolls of chancery, a solemn and argumentative protest against the measure:<sup>99</sup> and, to give the greater publicity to his disapprobation, retired to his barge on the river, as soon as the mass began, during which the duke of Orleans was to swear on the sacrament, that he would fulfil his engagements.<sup>100</sup>

The duke was, however, destined to experience a still more cruel disgrace. Though, by his marriage with his mistress, he had legitimated their union, he had not raised her character in the estimation of the public: and the pride, the avarice, and the licentiousness of

Jan. 2.

Oct. 28.

Prosecu-  
tion of the  
duchess  
of Glos-  
ter.

and has on all occasions opposed the offers of the duke of Gloucester to lead an army into France and recover for Henry the whole of his inheritance. See this memorial at length in Hall, 161—166. But he has placed it in the wrong year. From internal evidence it appears to have been composed after the negociation at Calais in June 1439, and before the renewal of that negociation in May 1440, or the assumption of the cardinalate by the archbishop of York on 4th February 1440. I conceive therefore that it was presented to the king about the close of 1439.

<sup>99</sup> Rym. x. 765—767.<sup>100</sup> See Fenn's original Letters, vol. i. p. 3.

CHAP.

II.

1441.  
Juns 28.

July 25.

July 27.

dame Eleanor (so she was called) ultimately led to her ruin. There have been in all ages professors of the black art : nor is it so very long since men have had the good sense to laugh at their pretensions. One of the duke's chaplains, Roger Bolingbroke, was accused of necromancy, and exhibited with the instruments of his art to the admiring populace on a platform before St. Paul's, "arrayed in marvellous attire," bearing in his right hand a sword, and in his left a sceptre, and sitting in a chair, on the four corners of which were fixed four swords, and on the points of the swords four images of copper.<sup>101</sup> The second night afterwards dame Eleanor secretly withdrew into the sanctuary of Westminster, a step which naturally excited suspicion. She was confronted with Bolingbroke, who declared that it was at her instigation that he had first applied to the study of magic. From the inquiry which followed, it appeared that Eleanor was a firm believer in

<sup>101</sup> Clericus famosissimus unus illorum in toto mundo in astronomia et arte nigromantica. Wil. Wyrces. 461. It was probably on account of his learning that he had been admitted into the duke's family. That prince is celebrated by contemporaries as the great patron of learned men. *Æneas Sylvius*, afterwards pope *Pius II.* in a letter to *Adam Molins*, whom he praises for his eloquence, says : "Sed magnæ ob hanc causam grates clarissimo illi et doctissimo principi Glocestriæ duci, qui studia humanitatis summo studio in regnum vestrum recepit, qui, sicut mihi relatum est, poetas mirifice colit, et oratores magnopere veneratur." Ep. 64. p. 584.

the mysteries of the art: that to secure the affections of the duke she had employed love-potions furnished by Majory Jourdemain, the celebrated witch of Eye: and that, to learn what would be her subsequent lot (her husband was presumptive heir to the throne) she had charged Bolingbrooke to discover the duration of the king's life. Soon afterwards an indictment of treason was found against Bolingbrooke and Southwell, a canon of St. Paul's, as principals, and the dutchess as an accessory. The former were said, at the solicitation of the latter, to have formed an image of wax, and to have exposed it to a gentle heat, under the persuasion, that as the image melted away, the health of the king would gradually decline. The two women, however, were arraigned before the ecclesiastical court: Jourdemain, as a relapsed witch, was condemned to be burnt. Eleanor, out of twenty-eight articles brought against her, confessed some and denied others: but when the testimony of the witnesses had been heard, withdrew her plea, and submitted to the mercy of the court. She was compelled, on three days of the week, to walk hoodless, and bearing a lighted taper in her hand, through the streets of the capital, and was afterwards delivered to the charge of sir Thomas Stanley, to be confined for life, with an annuity of one hundred marks for her support. Southwell died in the Tower before his trial: two others ob-

Oct. 21.

Oct. 23.

Nov. 13.

CHAP.

II.

Nov. 18.

tained their pardon : but Bolingbrooke was convicted and executed, acknowledging the guilt of necromancy, but denying that of treason.<sup>102</sup> Though the duke himself does not appear to have been implicated in this ridiculous but tragical business, he must have deeply felt for the disgrace and punishment of his wife.

The king's  
marriage.

The character which the duke of Gloucester had attributed to Charles of France, belonged with more justice to his own nephew, the king of England. Henry was free from vice, but devoid of capacity. Gentle and inoffensive, he was shocked at the very shadow of injustice : but easy and unassuming, was always ready to adopt the opinion of his advisers. He was now twenty-three years old ; his council suggested, that it was time he should marry ; and every one foresaw that the queen, whoever she might be, would possess the controul over the weak mind of her husband. - When the count of Armagnac quarrelled with the king of France, it was suggested that the power of that nobleman might form a bulwark of defence to the province of Guienne ; and commissioners were appointed to offer to his daughter the hand of the

<sup>102</sup> Wil. Wyrcester, 460, 461. Stow, 379, 380. Fabian, 438, 439. Some writers have attributed the prosecution of dame Eleanor to Beaufort's enmity to her husband. But their assertion stands on the slightest foundation, a mere conjecture of Fox that it might be so, because the witch lived, according to Fabian, in the neighbourhood of Winchester, of which Beaufort was bishop. See Fuller, 174.

English monarch.<sup>103</sup> But the transaction did not elude the vigilance of Charles, who immediately invaded the territories of the count, and made him and his family prisoners. Two years later the choice of Henry was directed towards Margaret, the daughter of Réné, king of Sicily and Jerusalem, and duke of Anjou, Maine, and Bar. In personal beauty she was thought superior to most women, in mental capacity equal to most men of the age. But it was not the charms of her person, or the power of her mind, that recommended her to the notice of the king's ministers. She was a near relation to Charles, who had always treated her with marked partiality ; and a hope was cherished that through her mediation a satisfactory and permanent peace might be established between the two kingdoms. The charge of conducting the negotiation was intrusted to William de la Pole earl of Suffolk, and was accepted by him with real or affected reluctance. He professed to believe himself unequal to the task. Perhaps he feared the subsequent resentment of Gloucester, who opposed the measure : perhaps he felt uneasy under the menaces of an act of parliament, passed in the reign of Henry V., which made it highly penal in any man to conclude a peace with Charles, unless the consent of the three estates in both realms had been previously obtained.

CHAP.

II.

1442.

May 20.

---

<sup>103</sup> Rym. xi. 6—8.

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~1444.  
Feb. 20.

To tranquillize his mind a singular instrument was signed by the king, and approved by the parliament, which authorised the earl to conduct the treaty to the best of his abilities, and pardoned beforehand every error of judgment, into which he might fall.¹⁰⁴ He met the duke of Orleans at Tours: a truce preparatory to a peace was concluded: and the question of the marriage repeatedly discussed. On the part of the French no opposition was raised: but several alarming difficulties suggested themselves to the mind of the English negotiator. The father of the princess with all his sounding titles was in reality a pauper. This nominal king of Jerusalem and Sicily possessed not one foot of land in either country; his dutchies of Maine and Anjou were, and had long been, in the possession of the English: and his territory of Bar was mortgaged to the duke of Burgundy for the payment of his ransom. Suffolk consented to take the lady without a marriage portion. But it was asked, could the king of England think of marrying the daughter, while he kept the father out of his patrimonial dominions? The earl felt the force of the objection, but fore-saw the danger of making the cession. At length he yielded: it was stipulated that Maine and Anjou should be restored: and at his return he prevailed on the majority of the council to ap-

¹⁰⁴ Rym. xi. 53.

prove of his conduct. In a general promotion of the chief nobility he was created marquess of Suffolk, and measuring back his steps, solemnly contracted, as proxy for Henry, with Margaret in the cathedral of Nanci. Justs and tournaments for eight days testified the joy of the court : Charles attended his fair kinswoman some miles from the city, and parted from her in tears. Her father accompanied her to Bar le Duc. She landed at Porchester, was married to Henry at Titchfield, and crowned with the usual ceremony at Westminster.¹⁰⁵

If Henry had flattered himself that his marriage would be followed by a peace, his expectations must have been grievously disappointed. Charles had determined to exclude, if it were possible, the English from the soil of France : and would only consent to short prolongations of the armistice, that he might improve the first opportunity, which should be offered by chance, or by the imprudence of Henry. His hopes were encouraged by the disputes in the council of his adversary, whose ministers were too busily employed in struggles for power at home, to support with vigour the national interests abroad. The queen had already gained the ascendancy over the easy mind of her husband : and Suffolk, the favourite of them both, gradually supplanted all his colleagues. The car-

CHAP.

II.

Oct. 28.

1445.

May 30.

Arrest and
death of
Glocester.

¹⁰⁵ Will. Wyrces. 462, 463

CHAP.

II.

dinal, who had retired to his bishopric soon after the last dispute with his nephew, appeared no more on the scene; unless it were to relieve the urgent wants of the crown by advances of money. Gloucester still attended the council occasionally: but, if we may believe the unauthenticated accounts of some writers, was chiefly employed in opposing the plans, and protecting himself against the intrigues of the favourite. We may however question their accuracy. Certain it is that he publicly testified his approbation of the king's marriage; and that, when Suffolk in parliament detailed the particulars of the treaty, and the commons petitioned Henry to approve the conduct of that minister, the duke fell on his knees, and seconded their request.¹⁰⁶ Of his conduct from that period we are ignorant; and our ignorance prevents us from unravelling the causes of the mysterious transaction which followed. It may be that Gloucester, harassed by the accusations of his enemies, had formed a plan to make himself master of the royal person¹⁰⁷ or that Suffolk, to screen himself from the resentment of the duke, infused into the

¹⁰⁶ Rot. Parl. v. 73.

¹⁰⁷ We are told that he was accused in the council of illegal executions, and of having unjustly enriched himself at the expense of the crown. From a singular instrument in Rymer it appears that he had been compelled to resign some possessions in Guienne, which were immediately given to John de Foix, who had married a niece of Suffolk: both circumstances of a nature to irritate a proud and ambitious mind. Rym. xi. 147. 22 Aug. 1446.

mind of Henry suspicions of the loyalty of his uncle.¹⁰⁸ However it were, Henry summoned a parliament to meet, not as usual at Westminster, but at Bury St. Edmund's. The precautions which were taken, excited surprise, and gave birth to numerous conjectures. The knights of the shire received orders to come in arms: the men of Suffolk were arrayed: numerous guards were placed round the king's residence: and patroles during the night watched all the roads leading to the town. The duke of Gloucester left his castle of Devizes, and was present at the opening of parliament: the next day he was arrested in his lodgings on a charge of high treason, by the lord Beaumont, constable of England: and seventeen days later was found dead in his bed, without any exterior marks of violence. Reports were spread that he died of apoplexy, or of a broken heart: suspicion whispered that he had been privately murdered.¹⁰⁹

1447.
Feb. 10.

Feb. 11.

Feb. 28.

¹⁰⁸ What evidence the king had we know not: but nothing could persuade him that his uncle was innocent. Whethamstede, 367.

¹⁰⁹ I am inclined to believe that he died a natural death, on the authority of Whethamstede, abbot of St. Alban's. That writer, who had received many benefits from the duke, was much attached to his memory, which he vindicates on all occasions, and equally prejudiced against his enemies, whom he calls, canes, scorpiones, impii susurrones, p. 366. And yet, though he wrote when the royal party was humbled in the dust, and he had of course nothing to fear from their resentment, he repeatedly asserts, that the duke fell ill immediately after his arrest, and died of his illness. *Fecit eum arrestari, ponique in tam arta custodia, quod præ tristitia* *decideret in lectum ægritudinis, et infra paucos dies posterius sece-*

CHAP. II. Several knights and esquires in his service had assembled at Greenwich on the very day of his arrest, and purposed to join him at Bury. They were, however, made prisoners, and five of their number were brought to trial, and convicted, on a charge of having conspired to release dame Eleanor, to come to the parliament in arms, to destroy the king, and to raise Gloucester to the throne.¹¹⁰ But the humanity of Henry did not permit them to suffer. He had been much affected by a sermon of Dr. Worthington, a celebrated preacher, on the forgiveness of injuries : and declared that he could not better prove his gratitude for the protection afforded him by the Almighty, than by pardoning in obedience to the divine command the persons who, so he believed, had plotted his destruction.¹¹¹ Dame

July 8.

July 14.

deret in fata, p. 365. Of course he could not be in perfect health on the evening preceding his death, as we are told by some writers. Again Whethamstede says: "This great warrior and second David, "præ tristitia modo depositus arma sua, recessitque ad regionem "illam, ubi pax est et tranquilla requies sine inquietudine ulla," p. 366.

¹¹⁰ Rym. xi. 178.

¹¹¹ They were, however, tied up, instantly cut down, stripped, and marked for dismemberment by the knife of the executioner. At that moment Suffolk announced to them the king's mercy. Stow. 386. This pardon, however, has been represented, on mere conjecture, as an artifice of Suffolk to lessen the odium, which he had incurred by the murder of Gloucester. But it is well known that Henry's humanity abhorred the punishment usually inflicted for treason. One day seeing the quarter of a person, who had been executed, fixed on the tower, he exclaimed: "Take it away. It is "a shame to use any christiā so cruelly on my account." (Blackman, 301.) In the present case the king asserts that the pardon

Eleanor, on account of “her former misgovernment of herself,” was rendered, by act of parliament, incapable of claiming as the duke’s widow,¹¹² and a great part of his estates was distributed among the marquess of Suffolk, his relatives and adherents.¹¹³ But Gloucester, though he had no issue, left many friends, who laboured to clear his memory from the stain of treason. In each successive parliament they introduced a bill declaratory of his loyalty: but no arguments could subdue the conviction or prejudice of the king: the bill was repeatedly thrown out by the influence of the crown: and if the attempt at last succeeded, it was under the protection of the duke of York, who had by force invested himself with the powers of government.¹¹⁴

Within six weeks the duke was followed to the grave by his uncle and former competitor, cardinal Beaufort. That prelate, since his retirement from court, had resided in his diocese, and applied himself to the exercise of his func-

Death of
Beaufort.
April 11.

had not been suggested to him by any person, either layman or clergyman: but that it originated from religious considerations, principally because God seemed to have taken the cause into his own hands, having during the late year “touched and stricken certain of “those who had been disloyal to him:” *supremus judex nonnullas personas nobis infideles tetigit et percussit.* Rym. xi. 178. Who were the persons whom God had stricken? Of course Gloucester was one: and the expression is a proof that he died a natural death; for this religious prince would never have used it, if the duke had been murdered. But who were the others?

¹¹² Rot. Parl. v. 135.

¹¹³ Rym. xi. 158.

¹¹⁴ Whethamstede, 367, 368.

CHAP. II. tions. That he expired in the agonies of despair, is a fiction, which we owe to the imagination of Shakespeare: from an eye-witness we learn that during a lingering illness, he devoted most of his time to religious exercies.¹¹⁵ According to the provisions of his will, his wealth was chiefly distributed in charitable donations: no less a sum than four thousand pounds was set aside for the relief of the indigent prisoners in the capital: and the hospital of St. Cross, in the vicinity of Winchester, still exists a durable monument of his munificence.¹¹⁶

The death of the duke and the cardinal re-

¹¹⁵ Hall tells us that, according to his chaplain, John Baker, he lamented on his death-bed that money could not purchase life: and that death should cut him off when he hoped, now his nephew Gloucester was gone, to procure the papal tiara. Hall, p. 152. It is not, however, probable that such an idea could be entertained by a man eighty years of age, and labouring under a mortal disease. Three weeks after the death of the duke, the cardinal ordered himself to be carried into the great hall of his palace of Wolvesey, where the clergy of the city and the monks of the cathedral were assembled. There he sate or lay, while a dirge was sung, the funeral ceremony performed, and his will publicly read. The next morning they assembled again: a mass of requiem was celebrated, and his will was again read with the addition of several codicils. He then took leave of all, and was carried back to his chamber. What was the object of this singular ceremony, I know not: but it was much admired by the writer who was present; and sufficiently disproves the story of his having died in despair. Cont. Hist. Croyl. 582.

¹¹⁶ His executor offered the king a present of 200*l.* Henry refused it, saying: "He was always a most kind uncle to me, while he "lived. God reward him. Fulfil his intentions. I will not take "his money." It was bestowed on the two colleges founded by the king at Eton and in Cambridge. Blackm. 294.

moved the two firmest supports of the house of Lancaster, and awakened the ambition of Richard duke of York, who by the paternal line was sprung from Edward Langley, the youngest son of Edward III., and by the maternal from Lionel the third son of the same monarch. But if he now began to turn his eyes towards the throne, he had the prudence to conceal his intentions, till the incapacity of Henry, or the imprudence of his ministers, should offer him an opportunity of seizing the splendid prize. He had been appointed regent of France during five years: but the duke of Somerset, who sought to succeed to the influence of his relatives, the late cardinal and the duke of Gloucester, expressed a wish to possess that command: and York was reluctantly induced to exchange it for the government of Ireland. But the affront sank deep into his breast: he began to consider Somerset as a rival; and, to prepare himself for the approaching contest, sought to win by affability and munificence the affections of the Irish.

If Henry felicitated himself on the acquisition of so accomplished and beautiful a wife, his dreams of happiness were disturbed by the murmurs of the people. It was said that his union with Margaret had been purchased at too great a price: that no minister could be authorised to give away the inheritance of the crown; and that the cession of Anjou and Maine, the keys of Normandy, would inevitably draw after it the

CHAP.
II.
Richard
duke of
York.

Cession
of Anjou
and
Maine.

CHAP.
II.
~~~~~

loss of all the conquests made by the king's father. At first these complaints were despised: insensibly they grew louder and more frequent: and Suffolk for his own protection demanded to be confronted with his accusers in presence of

May 25. the king and the council. His request was granted; the pleadings of each party were heard: and the favourite, as was to be expected, triumphed in the judgment of Henry. A proclamation was published, declaring Suffolk to have acted the part of a true and loyal servant, and imposing silence on his accusers under the penalty of losing the offices which they held under the crown.<sup>117</sup> Still, however, obstacles were opposed to the cession of Maine by the persons holding grants of land in that country: and Charles, weary of the tergiversation of the English government, resolved to cut the knot with the sword, and invested the capital of the province with an army. Henry was in no condition to recommence the war: and the bishop of Chichester hastened to the scene of hostilities; surrendered the whole province with the exception of Fresnoi; and obtained in return a truce to last for two years, and an assurance that the grantees of the English crown should receive from France a sum of money equal to ten years' value of the lands which they had lost. At the same time a protestation was made, that Henry

1448.

March 11. and obtained in return a truce to last for two years, and an assurance that the grantees of the English crown should receive from France a sum of money equal to ten years' value of the lands which they had lost. At the same time a protestation was made, that Henry

<sup>117</sup> Ry. xi. 173.

did not resign his right to the sovereignty of the province, but only its actual possession, on condition that the revenue might be enjoyed by Réné and Charles of Anjou, the father and uncle of his queen.<sup>118</sup>

CHAP.  
II.

Maine was soon filled with French troops, and the duke of Somerset, alarmed at their approach, represented by his envoys to the king in parliament, that almost every fortress under his command had been suffered to fall into ruins : that the three estates of Normandy had, under the plea of poverty, refused any aid ; and that, unless speedy and plentiful assistance were furnished from England, the province would in all probability be lost.<sup>119</sup> Charles, however, did not allow his adversaries time to furnish such assistance.

The loss of  
Rouen.

It chanced that the soldiers, who had withdrawn from the ceded territory, finding themselves without quarters and without subsistence, surprised and pillaged Fougeres, a town in Bretagne. Somerset, aware of the consequences, hastened to disavow the act ; and Charles, with equal promptitude, demanded instant and satisfactory reparation. As, however, such reparation would have deprived him of a decent pretext for war before the end of the armistice, he was careful to estimate the damages at one million six hundred thousand crowns, a sum which he knew could not be

1449.  
Jan.

<sup>118</sup> Rym. 203—206.

<sup>119</sup> Rot. Parl. 147, 148.

CHAP. II.  
May 16. raised. While the English envoys were offering excuses and remonstrances, Pont de l'Arche, a fortress within twelve miles of Rouen, was surprised by a small band of adventurers : July 29. shortly afterwards Verneuil was gained in the same manner ; and the French officers eagerly displayed their loyalty by the most hazardous, and often successful, enterprises. Soon the main army arrived, under the celebrated count de Dunois, commonly called the bastard of Orleans ; and within two months one half of Normandy was in his possession. The duke of Somerset, surrounded with disaffection and treason, unable to face the enemy in the field, and forbidden to hope for assistance from England, was compelled to shut himself up in the capital, and to behold from the walls of the castle the fall of the fortresses around him. Encouraged by his correspondents within the city, Dunois approached with his army : at the end of three days he decamped : was recalled by Oct. 16. his friends ; and had the satisfaction to see the walls scaled by his men between two towers, which had been intrusted to the care of the citizens: Rouen would that day have been taken, had not Talbot hastened with his banner to the spot, hurled the enemy into the ditch, and put the guards to the sword. But a garrison of twelve hundred men could not protect an extensive and populous city against a powerful army without, and a still more dangerous

enemy within. The duke with a guard of sixty men was surrounded in the street by more than eight hundred armed citizens; who extorted his assent to their proposal of treating with Charles. It was agreed between the archbishop and the king, that Rouen should open its gates, that the English should retire with all their effects, and that such as should prefer it might remain unmolested. The duke, however, refused these terms; and was besieged by the citizens and the French troops in the citadel. After two fruitless attempts to obtain the conditions which had been rejected, he consented to pay fifty-six thousand francs; to surrender most of the fortresses in the district of Caux for his ransom and that of his companions; and to deliver Talbot and several other knights as hostages for the faithful performance of his engagements.<sup>120</sup>

At length, the English ministry made a feeble attempt to succour the duke, who had fixed his head quarters at Caen: and Sir Thomas Kyriel, having landed with three thousand men, and drawn about an equal number from the neighbouring garrisons, marched forward to join that commander. But near Fourmigny he was intercepted by the earl of Clermont; and after a contest of three hours his men were alarmed by the arrival of a new army under the constable of

CHAP.  
II.  
Oct. 18.

Nov. 4.

Of all Nor-  
mandy.

1450.  
April 18.

<sup>120</sup> Monstrel. iii. 10—21. Hall, 163, 164. Will. Wyrcest. 465.

CHAP. France. Some saved themselves by flight : the rest, after a bloody resistance, were either slain or made prisoners. As this was the first victory which, for many years, had been gained over the English in the open field, the account was industriously circulated throughout France, and was every where received with the loudest acclamations of joy. Avranches, Bayeux, Valanges, immediately opened their gates : the duke was besieged in Caen : the town, after several breaches had been made, surrendered ; and a capitulation was concluded for the citadel, unless it were relieved within a certain period. Cherburgh alone remained to the English : it was taken after a short siege : and within the space of a year and six days, Normandy, with its seven bishopricks, and one hundred fortresses, was entirely recovered by the French monarch.<sup>121</sup>

II.

June 5. June 5.

July 1. July 1.

Aug. 12. Aug. 12.

And of  
Guienne.

Charles, however, was not satisfied with the conquest of Normandy : the moment Cherburgh surrendered, his army began its march towards Guienne. The inhabitants were by principle attached to the descendant of their ancient dukes : but the absence of succour, and the pressure of immediate danger, induced the most opulent to submit, as the only means of preserving their honours and property. Not a man was sent from England for the protection

---

<sup>121</sup> Monstrel. iii. 21—32. Hall, 165, 166. Will. Wyrcest. 469.

of the dutchy: not a battle was fought to expel the invaders: not a governor defended his charge against the enemy. Uniformly each fortress, as soon as a respectable force made its appearance, was surrendered. Before Christmas all the territory on the banks of the Dordogne had fallen into the possession of Charles: by the following August the French banner waved in triumph, from the mouth of the Garonne to the very borders of Spain. When nothing but Calais remained to England, Charles offered to treat of peace. The proposal was rejected with an idle threat, that Henry would never sheath his sword, till he should have reconquered all that had been lost.<sup>122</sup>

1451.

The public mind had been sufficiently exasperated by the cession of Maine and Anjou: but when that cession was followed by the invasion of Normandy; when each messenger brought fresh accounts of the rapid progress of the enemy; every tongue was employed in bewailing the fallen glory of England, and every place resounded with cries of vengeance on the head of the minister. He was described as the queen's minion, who, to please a foreign mistress, did not hesitate to betray his sovereign, and to sacrifice the inheritance of the crown. To him were attributed the release of the duke of Orleans, the death of the duke of

The pub-  
lic discon-  
tent.

<sup>122</sup> Monstrel. iii. 32—38. Hall, 161, 162.

CHAP. II. Gloucester, the poverty of the treasury, and all the calamities that had befallen the English arms on the continent. In this state of public opinion a parliament was called to provide for the defence of Normandy: but it had hardly assembled when the news of the loss of Rouen arrived to inflame the discontents of the people, and to multiply the embarrassments of the government. Six weeks were spent in violent but useless altercation: and nothing more was concluded before the holidays than to send sir Thomas Kyriel with a small force to the aid of the duke of Somerset. But during the recess two events occurred which foreboded the ruin of Suffolk. One evening William Tailbois was discovered lurking with several armed men near the door of the council chamber. It was in vain that the favourite took him under his protection. He was committed to the Tower at the requisition of the lord Cromwell, the most active among the enemies of the minister; was tried on a charge of plotting the death of that nobleman, and condemned to pay him damages to the amount of three thousand pounds.<sup>123</sup> Soon afterwards the bishop of Chichester, keeper of the privy seal, proceeded to Portsmouth to pay the soldiers and sailors engaged for the expedition: but it was no sooner known that he was the man, who had delivered Maine to the

1450.  
Jan. 9.

<sup>123</sup> Will. Wyrcest. 466, 467.

CHAP.  
II.Charges  
against  
Suffolk.

Jan. 22.

French king, than the populace rose, and the prelate lost his life in the tumult.<sup>124</sup> Whether it was that he sought to divert their indignation from himself, or that the story was invented by the opponents of Suffolk, he is said to have declared before his death, that the favourite was a traitor, who had sold Maine to the enemy, and had boasted of having as much influence in the French as in the English council. It was thought necessary that the duke (he had lately been raised to that dignity) should notice this report: and, as soon as the parliament assembled after the recess, rising in his place, he besought the king to recollect that his father had died in the service of his country at Harfleur, his elder brother had fallen in the battle of Azincourt, his second and third brothers had perished at Jargeau, and his youngest brother had expired a hostage in France: that he himself had been a knight of the garter thirty years, had spent thirty-four years in arms, and during half of that time had never visited his native country: that he had been fifteen years sworn of the king's council: that he was born in England: that his inheritance, and the inheritance of his children and posterity lay in this country. Was it then possible, he asked, that for any promises of an enemy he could become a traitor? “Whereupon,” he added, “I be-

<sup>124</sup> Will. Wyrcest. 467.

CHAP. II. " seech your highness in the most humble wise  
 " I can bethink, that if any man will charge me  
 " with the report aforesaid, or any other thing  
 " against your royal person and land, he may  
 " come forth, and say to me in these matters  
 " what he wills; and that in your presence, my  
 " sovereign lord, I may be heard in my excusa-  
 " tions and defences reasonable, the which I  
 " trust shall be so open and so plain, that your  
 " highness and your land shall be content of  
 " me: for God knoweth I am, and shall be, and  
 " never was other but true to you, sovereign  
 " lord, and to your land." At his request the  
 speech was entered on the rolls.<sup>125</sup>

He is sent  
to the  
Tower.

Jan. 26.

But by this time his enemies in the lower house had formed themselves into a powerful party, which was entirely, though secretly, guided by the councils of the lord Cromwell.<sup>126</sup> Four days after the duke had so solemnly declared his innocence, a deputation from the commons requested, that since, according to his own confession, he lay under the suspicion of treason, he might be immediately committed to the Tower. But the lords, having consulted the judges, replied that they had no power to order any peer into confinement, unless some specific charge were brought against him. Two days later the speaker returned, and accused him of

<sup>125</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 176.

<sup>126</sup> Domino Cromwell secrete laborante. Will. Wyreest. 467.

having furnished the castle of Wallingford with stores and provisions for the purpose of aiding the king of France, who, he pretended, was then making preparations to invade the country. On this incredible and ridiculous charge he was arrested, and confined in the Tower. The archbishop of Canterbury immediately resigned the office of chancellor, which was given to the cardinal archbishop of York.<sup>127</sup>

Is impeached by the king.

Ten days were employed in framing the bill of impeachment, which, when it was finished, left the delinquency of the prisoner more problematical than before. Most, indeed, of our ancient writers, borne along by the torrent of popular prejudice, have pronounced him guilty: but the improbability or insufficiency of the eight articles of treason alleged against him, will establish his innocence in the mind of the impartial reader. The first, and therefore we may suppose the most important charge, was, that he had plotted to dethrone the king, and place the crown on the head of his son, whom for that purpose he intended to marry to the only daughter of the late duke of Somerset, that he might be allied to the royal family; and that for this purpose he had solicited the aid of the French king. Next followed the usual charges of his having liberated the duke of Orleans against the opinion of the council: and surrendered Maine

Feb. 7.

<sup>127</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 172. 176, 177.

CHAP. and Anjou without consulting his colleagues :  
 II. and the weakness of these accusations was bolstered up with vague assertions, that he had betrayed the king's secrets, and conveyed intelligence to the king's enemies. Sensible, however, of their inability to prove these eight articles,  
 March 7. the commons a month afterwards sent to the lords a new impeachment, in which the duke was charged with misprision of treason under sixteen heads, by improvident waste of the public money ; by diverting the supplies from the purposes for which they had been originally voted ; by advising the king to impoverish himself by unnecessary grants ; by bestowing offices under the crown on suspicious or disloyal persons ; and by screening from the pursuit of justice a notorious outlaw, named William Tailbois. The duke was now removed from his prison to a tower in the garden of the palace, that he might be nearer the parliament.<sup>123</sup>

His de-  
fence.

March 13.

On the day appointed for his answer, he was introduced into the house of lords, and falling on his knees before the king, solemnly declared his innocence. To the first article he replied that it was ridiculous and impossible ; and appealed to several of the peers present, who knew that he had intended to marry his son to a daughter

<sup>123</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 174—182. Will. Wyrcest. 468. In neither of these impeachments is there any allusion to the death of the duke of Gloucester, a pretty plain proof that there was no evidence of his having been murdered.

of the earl of Warwick. For the cession of CHAP.  
Anjou and Maine, if it were a crime, he was not II.  
more responsible than the other lords of the council, or the other peers of the parliament : since the first had authorized, the second had approved the measure. The remaining charges, he contended, were frivolous and vexatious, resting on no other proof than the reports raised by his enemies, or on acts of the council, emanating from many of his judges equally with himself. The second impeachment he did not notice.<sup>129</sup>

But whatever might be the guilt or innocence of Suffolk, it was evident that his enemies thirsted for his blood : nor would the commons grant any supply till their cry for vengeance had been appeased. It became therefore the policy of the court to devise the means of satisfying them without endangering his life. He was again called before the king and lords ; and the chancellor, observing that he had not claimed the privilege of the peerage, asked if he had any thing more to say in his defence. It was his hope, he replied, that he had sufficiently established his innocence : he had shewn that the charges against him were false, and some of them impossible : he had denied the facts, the times, the places, and the conversations : he repeated that he was as ignorant of them as “ the

He is banished.

March 17.

<sup>129</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 182.

CHAP. II. “child still in the mother’s womb ;” and therefore threw himself without reserve on the will of his sovereign. The chancellor immediately resumed : “Sir, since you do not put yourself “on your peerage for trial, the king will not hold “you either guilty or innocent of the treasons, “with which you have been charged : but with “respect to the second impeachment, not as a “judge advised by the lords, but as one to “whose controul you have voluntarily sub-“mitted, he commands you to quit this land “before the first of May, and forbids you ever “to set your foot during the five next years on “his dominions either in this kingdom or be-“yond the sea.” The lords immediately pro- tested by the mouth of the constable, the viscount Beaumont, that this was the act of the king alone, and should form no precedent to bar them or their heirs of the privilege of the peerage. The parliament was soon after prorogued, to meet again in a month’s time in the city of Leices- ter.<sup>130</sup>

Leaves the kingdom.

During these proceedings the public mind had been kept in a continual ferment : and, as soon as the king’s decision was published, the most

<sup>130</sup> Ibid. 182, 183. If the king ordered this judgment to be pronounced of his own authority, it was certainly illegal : but it appears to have been in consequence of a compromise between the two parties. Wrycester says it was with the consent of parliament (p. 468) : and the continuator of the history of Croyland hints, that Suffolk’s enemies intended to make away with him before he could leave the realm. *Insidias ei ponentes ad tempus*, p. 525.

incredible reports were circulated, inflammatory libels were affixed to the doors of the churches, and the life of the duke was openly threatened.<sup>131</sup>

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~

March 18.

To intercept him on his discharge from confinement two thousand persons assembled in St. Giles's : but though they surprised his servants, the object of their hatred fortunately escaped, and proceeded to his estates in the county of Suffolk.¹³² On the day fixed for his departure, he assembled the knights and esquires of the neighbourhood, and in their presence swore on the sacrament that he was innocent of the crimes with which he had been charged by his enemies.¹³³ At the same time he wrote to his son a most eloquent and affectionate letter, laying down rules for his conduct, and inculcating in the most forcible terms the duty of piety towards God, loyalty to the king, and obedience to his mother. Whoever has read this affecting composition, will find it difficult to persuade himself that the writer could have been either a false subject or a bad man.¹³⁴ He sailed from Ipswich with two small vessels ; and sent a pinnace before him to inquire, whether he might be permitted to land in the harbour of Calais. But the pinnace was captured by a squadron of men of war : and immediately the Nicholas of the Tower, one of the largest ships in the navy, bore

April 30.

April. 30.

¹³¹ Rym. xi. 268.

¹³² Will. Wyrcest. 468.

¹³³ Will. Wyrcest. 469.

¹³⁴ It is published among Fenn's original Letters, i. 33.

CHAP.

II.

And is
murdered
at sea.

May 2.

down on the duke's vessels. He was ordered on board, and received on deck by the captain with the ominous salutation of "Welcome, "traitor." It is probable that a messenger was sent on shore to announce his capture, and require instructions: for the duke remained two nights in the Nicholas, during which he spent much of his time in conversation with his confessor, wrote a long letter to the king, and underwent a mock trial before the sailors, by whom he was condemned to suffer death. On the second morning a small boat came alongside, in which were a block, a rusty sword, and an executioner: the duke was lowered into it: and the man, telling him that he should die like a knight, at the sixth stroke smote off his head. His remains were placed on the sands near Dover, and watched by the sheriff of Kent, till the king ordered them to be delivered to his widow, by whom they were interred in the collegiate church of Wingfield in Suffolk.¹³⁵

From the preceding narrative it is evident that there existed a party, which had sworn the destruction of this unfortunate nobleman. Not deterred by the failure of the prosecution in parliament, nor by the escape of their victim from St. Giles's, they even dispatched an armed force to assassinate him at sea. But of the leaders of

¹³⁵ Will. Wyrcest. 469. 477. Croyl. cont. 525. Two letters, apud Fenn, i. 38—45. It may be observed that there are many mistakes in the remarks of the editor on these letters.

this party we know no more than that they were persons of the first consideration in the state : and of their immediate motives we are entirely ignorant. By some writers the murder has been attributed to disappointed ambition, which could not brook the ascendancy of the favourite in the councils of his sovereign: by others to the policy of the duke of York, who deemed it necessary to remove so faithful a minister, before he should openly take any measures to place himself on the throne. The last hypothesis has been thought to derive confirmation from the fact, that some of the noblemen, who afterwards espoused his interests, came to the parliament at Leicester, accompanied by hundreds of armed men.¹³⁶

The news of this tragical event plunged the king and queen into the deepest distress : in a few days they were awakened from their sorrow by the danger which threatened themselves. Whether the men who had taken the life of Suffolk had any part in kindling the flame which now burst forth, or whether it sprung spontaneously from the irritation of the public mind, it is difficult to determine. Intelligence had just arrived of the defeat of sir Thomas Kyriel; the commons in several counties threatened to rise

Insurrec-
tion.

¹³⁶ " Upon the iiiith day of this monthe the erle of Deveneschire
" come hydre wt. iiic. men well byseen, and upon the morrow after
" my lord of Warrewyke wt. iiiic. and moo. Leycestr the vi. day of
" May." Fenn's Letters, i. 44. 46.

CHAP.
II.

and reform the government; and the people of Kent were goaded to madness by repeated rumours of the signal vengeance which Henry had determined to inflict on them, for having furnished the ships which intercepted his friend.

May 28. It was a crisis most favourable to the views of artful and designing men: and an Irish adventurer, whose real name was John Cade, but who had assumed that of Mortimer, cousin to the duke of York, seized the moment to unfurl the

June 17. standard of insurrection. At the head of twenty thousand men he marched to Blackheath. Henry instantly dissolved the parliament, and summoning his forces advanced to London.¹³⁷ Many messages passed between the king, and the feigned Mortimer, who delivered the wishes of his followers in two papers, entitled “the com-

“plaints of the commons of Kent,” and “the “requests by the captain of the great assembly “in Kent.” The complaints stated that the king proposed to punish the men of Kent for a murder of which they were not guilty: that he gave away the revenues of the crown, and took for his own maintenance the goods of the people: that he excluded from his council the lords of his own blood, to make place for men of low rank, who oppressed his subjects: that the sheriffs, under-sheriffs, and collectors of taxes, were guilty of intolerable extortions: that in

Com-
plaints
and de-
mands of
the insur-
gents.

¹³⁷ Will. Wyrcest. 469, 470.

the election of knights of the shire, the free choice of the people were superseded by the influence of the lords: and that numerous delays and impediments had been introduced to prevent the speedy administration of justice. Their “requests” demanded, that the relatives of the duke of Suffolk should be banished from the court, and the dukes of York, Exeter, Buckingham, and Norfolk, with the earls and barons, be employed about the king’s person: that the traitors should be punished, who contrived the death of the duke of Gloucester, of their holy father the cardinal, of the duke of Exeter, and of the duke of Warwick, and who occasioned the loss of Normandy, Guienne, Anjou, and Maine: and that all extortions should be abolished, and the great extortioners, Sleg, Cromer, Lisle, and Robert Est, be brought to justice.¹³⁸

Henry had levied between fifteen and twenty thousand men, with whom he marched to suppress the insurgents: but Cade withdrew before the king’s arrival, and was pursued by a detachment of royalists under sir Humphrey Stafford. At Sevenoaks he turned on his pursuers, put them to flight, killed their commander, and arrayed himself in the knight’s armour. When the news was brought to Blackheath, the royalists began to waver: the requests of the Kentish men they now thought reasonable: and it was asked

Battle at
Sevenoaks,
June 23.

June 24.

¹³⁸ See both these instruments in Stow, 388—390.

CHAP. why they should fight against their own coun-
 II. trymen, who had taken up arms in defence of the
 national liberties. At the persuasion of the lords,
 who distrusted, or pretended to distrust, the fidelity
 of their followers, Henry sent to the Tower
 his chamberlain the lord Say, one of the most
 obnoxious ministers, disbanded his forces, and
 retired to the castle of Kenilworth. Lord Scales,
 with a thousand men undertook the defence of
 the Tower ; Cade resumed his former position
 on Blackheath, and two days later took posses-
 sion of Southwark.¹³⁹

June 29.

July 1.

Cade en-
ters Lon-
don.

July 3.

July 4.

The mayor had summoned a common council,
 in which after a long debate it was resolved to
 offer no resistance : and in the afternoon Cade
 entered in martial array, cutting with his sword
 the ropes of the drawbridge as he passed. He
 preserved the strictest discipline among his fol-
 lowers, and in the evening, to prevent disorder,
 led them back into the Borough. He acted in
 the same manner the next day : but compelled
 the mayor and judges to sit in the Guildhall, and
 having by some means which are not mentioned,
 got possession of lord Say, arraigned him before
 them. Bills of indictment were immediately
 found against the prisoner, the dutchess of Suf-
 folk, the bishop of Salisbury, Thomas Daniel,
 and several others, who in the parliament at
 Leicester, had been pointed out as the accom-

¹³⁹ Will. Wyrcest. 470. Fab. 449, 450.

plices of the late minister. Fortunately the rest were absent; lord Say pleaded the privilege of the peerage, but was hurried to the standard in Cheapside, and immediately beheaded. His son-in-law Cromer, sheriff of Kent, was soon afterwards discovered, and underwent the same fate.¹⁴⁰

CHAP.
II.
~~

On the third day a few houses were pillaged: and the citizens fearing the same violence on the next morning, determined with the assistance of the lord Scales to defend the bridge, and exclude the insurgents. Cade received intelligence of their design: and a bloody conflict ensued during the night: sometimes the citizens, sometimes the men of Kent prevailed: but at the end of six hours, the royalists were in possession of the bridge; and a short truce was taken by mutual consent. The archbishops of Canterbury and York, who were in the Tower, deemed this a favourable moment to divide the insurgents: and the bishop of Winchester crossing the river carried with him pardons under the great seal for all, who should immediately return to their own homes.¹⁴¹

July 5.

July 6.

¹⁴⁰ Will. Wyrcest. 471. Fab. 451. But the bishop of Salisbury had suffered already. He had been pointed out to public resentment by the commons at Leicester, and on the 29th of June was seized by his own tenants at Eddington, just as he had finished mass, was dragged out of the church in his vestments, and carried to an eminence, where one of them clove his skull with a bill. Fab. 448. 453. Stow, 392.

¹⁴¹ Will. Wyrcest. 470. Fenn's Letters, 60. Fab. 452, 453.

CHAP.

II.

July 8.

The offer, after some demur, was gratefully accepted, and the army immediately dispersed. Cade, however, two days later repenting of his credulity, again unfurled his banner, and found men prepared to rejoin it. But their number was too small to attack the city ; they retired from Southwark through Dartford to Rochester, and there quarrelled among themselves respecting the partition of their plunder.

July 9.

The captain in despair mounted his horse, and fled towards Lewes in Sussex. He was followed by an esquire, called Alexander Iden, who discovered him in a garden, and slew him after an obstinate defence. Iden received from the king a thousand marks, the reward which had been offered by proclamation.¹⁴² Several of Cade's associates were taken and executed ; of whom some, if we may believe a subsequent act of attainder against the duke of York, confessed on the scaffold, that it had been their intention to place that prince on the throne.¹⁴³

Return of
the duke
of York.

During his absence the interests of the duke had been intrusted to the care of his friends : now it was deemed time that he should appear on the scene in person. Leaving his govern-

¹⁴² That Cade accepted the pardon, but afterwards repented of it, is stated in the proclamation against him, dated July 10 (Apud Stow, p. 391). Hence in his attainder no mention is made of any act of treason committed by him before the 8th of July (Rot. Parl. v. 224). Iden's reward is noticed in Rym. xi. 275.

¹⁴³ Rot. Parl. v. 346.

ment of Ireland without permission, he landed in England ; and to the terror of the court hastened towards London with a retinue of four thousand men. On his road through Northamptonshire he sent for William Tresham, the speaker of the late house of commons, a partisan who had distinguished himself by his zeal in the prosecution of Suffolk : but Tresham had hardly left his own home, when he was intercepted and murdered by a party of armed men belonging to the lord Grey of Ruthyn, probably in revenge of the part which he had acted, in procuring the death of the late minister. York pursued his journey, was introduced to Henry, behaved with insolence in his presence, extorted a promise that he would summon a parliament, and in the interval before its meeting retired to his castle of Fotheringay.¹⁴⁴ He was scarcely gone, when the duke of Somerset returned from France. The king and queen hailed his arrival as a blessing. He was the nearest of kin to Henry,¹⁴⁵ and it was hoped that his fidelity and services would prove a counterpoise to the ambition of Richard. But unfortunately he came from the loss of

CHAP.

II.

Sept. 1.

Sept. 22.

Sept. 30.

Oct.

¹⁴⁴ "Unto youre presence, and there bette down the speres and
" walles in your chamber," &c. *Ibid.*

¹⁴⁵. John of Ghent, duke of Lancaster.

John Beaufort, earl of Somerset.

| | | |
|--|--|------------------------------|
| Henry,
earl of Somerset,
died young. | John,
duke of Somerset,
died 1444. | Edmund,
duke of Somerset. |
|--|--|------------------------------|

CHAP.

II.

 Disputes
in parlia-
ment.

Nov. 6.

Normandy, and in the opinion of the people was already numbered among those, who were supposed to have sold to the enemy the inheritance of the crown.¹⁴⁶

The session of parliament was unquiet and stormy. The rival leaders boldly opposed each other: and though the life of Somerset was threatened, though his treasures were pillaged by the populace, his opponents could not obtain any decided advantage. Young, one of the members for Bristol, moved that as Henry was without children, the duke of York should be declared heir apparent: but the motion met with very feeble support, and the mover was afterwards committed to the Tower.¹⁴⁷ A bill was carried through the lower house to attaint the memory of the duke of Suffolk, and another to remove from the court the duke of Somerset, the dutchess of Suffolk, and most of the king's friends: but Henry refused his assent to the first,¹⁴⁸ and replied to the other, that he could

¹⁴⁶ Will. Wyrcest. 473. Rot. Parl. v. 211.

¹⁴⁷ Will. Wyrcest. 475. ¹⁴⁸ In this bill was adopted the language of the Kentish insurgents: that Suffolk had been the cause of the arrest and death of the duke of Gloucester: and of "abridging the days of other princes of the blood." Rot. Parl. v. 226. Yet while he was alive, they never ventured to produce these charges: an omission, which, considering all the circumstances, is a proof of Suffolk's innocence. The other princes mentioned in Cade's memorial were, the duke of Warwick, who was descended from Edmund Langley duke of York, and died 11th June, 1445; cardinal Beaufort, who died April 11th, 1447; and Holand duke

not dispense with the services of the lords, and a few others who had for years been near his person, but would order the rest to absent themselves for twelve months, during which their conduct might be investigated, if any charge could be brought against them.¹⁴⁹ At the same time the dutchess of Suffolk, and the persons indicted of treason at the Guildhall during the insurrection, demanded to be brought to trial, and were instantly acquitted.¹⁵⁰

During the parliament the duke of York held frequent consultations with his friends ; the result of which was a determination to appeal to the sword on the first favourable occasion.¹⁵¹ For several months the nation was agitated by quarrels between the adherents of the two parties, by acts of violence and bloodshed, and by fruitless attempts to effect a reconciliation.¹⁵²

York
raises
forces, and
submits.

of Exeter, who had married the grand-daughter of the duke of Gloucester, and died the 5th of August, 1447.

¹⁴⁹ Rot. Parl. v. 216. ¹⁵⁰ The dutchess was tried before the peers, according to an act passed 1442 (Rot. Parl. v. 56) : the rest before the judges. Wil. Wyrcest. 475. The murderers of Tresham were outlawed. Rot. Parl. 211.

¹⁵¹ His chief friends were the duke of Norfolk, the three heads of the Nevil family, Richard earl of Salisbury, Richard earl of Warwick, and William lord Falconberg, the earl of Devon, and the lords Cromwell, Bergavenny, Latimer, and Cobham.

¹⁵² I have omitted in the text the three principal events of the year, as in our ignorance of their causes it is difficult to connect them together. 1. In the spring the earl of Devon besieged the castle of Taunton, held by the lord Bonville, a royalist. The duke of York joined the earl, and Bonville surrendered. Wyrcest. 475. 2. In August, Thomas Nevil, son of the earl of Salisbury, married a niece

CHAP.

II.

~~~

1452.

Jan. 9.

Feb. 16.

At length the duke repaired to his castle at Ludlow; and, while he raised the tenants of the house of Mortimer in the marches of Wales, published a proclamation containing strong professions of loyalty, and offered to swear fealty to Henry on the sacrament before the bishop of Hereford, and the earl of Shrewsbury. The king at the head of an army immediately marched against him: but York, avoiding the direction of the royalists, advanced to London by a different road, and finding the gates shut against him, proceeded as far as Dartford, in the hope of alluring to his standard the men of Kent. Henry followed him, and from Blackheath sent the bishops of Winchester and Ely to demand an explanation of his conduct. The duke's answer began with the usual protestation of his loyalty; complained that both before his departure to Ireland, and since his return to England, attempts had been made to arrest him for treason; and concluded with asserting that he was come to vindicate his innocence, and set

---

of lord Cromwell. In returning from the marriage, Percy lord Egremont, quarrelled with the earl of Salisbury near York. It was, says the writer, the commencement of the greatest calamities to England. *Id. p. 476.* 3. A great council was held at Coventry. Several men were killed in an affray between the servants of Somerset and the armed townsmen. It was proposed to arrest the duke of York. The duke of Buckingham, a staunch loyalist, prevented it. It was agreed that all differences should be left to the decision of the peers. *Id. 476.* Fenn's Letters, i. 26. The editor appears to me to have affixed to this letter a wrong date.

the question at rest for ever. The king in reply reminded him, that since he had unlawfully slain the bishop of Chichester,<sup>153</sup> his adherents had openly boasted of his pretended claim to the succession, whence it was not surprising if the advisers of the crown should occasionally adopt measures of precaution: but added, that to set his mind at ease on that subject, he still held him to be a true and faithful subject, and his own well-beloved cousin. York now demanded that all persons “noised or indicted of “treason” should be apprehended and imprisoned in the Tower, till they could be brought to trial; and the king replied that a new council should be appointed, in which he should be included, and that all matters in debate should be decided by the majority of that council.<sup>154</sup> To satisfy him, however, he ordered the duke of Somerset into custody: on which York disbanded his army, and submitted to visit Henry in his tent unarmed and bare-headed. There the two rivals met: the charge of treason was retorted from one to the other: and the duke, as he left the king, was immediately arrested. Had the advice of Somerset been followed, he would have been brought to his trial, or terrified into a confession, and executed. But Henry

<sup>153</sup> The murder of the Bishop at Portsmouth was attributed to the emissaries of the duke.

<sup>154</sup> These instruments have been preserved by Stow, 393—395. The last is also in Fenn, i. 65.

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~ recoiled from the idea of shedding the blood of a cousin : the report, that the earl of March was advancing with an army to liberate his father, intimidated the council, and an offer of his liberty was made to the duke on condition that he would again swear fealty to the king. He took the oath on the sacrament in St. Paul's before the lords and a numerous audience, and was permitted to retire to his castle of Wigmore.<sup>155</sup>

An unsuc-
cessful at-
tempt to
recover
Guienne.

Oct. 17.

At this moment, when Henry was relieved from all apprehension of a contest for the throne, arrived a deputation from the inhabitants of Guienne, who, impatient under the yoke of their new masters, offered to renew their allegiance, and solicited the aid of an English army. The invitation was accepted with eagerness, and the command given to Talbot, the veteran Earl of Shrewsbury, who had reached his eightieth year. With four thousand men he sailed to Guienne ; his son Lord Lisle brought him a reinforcement of an equal number : and before winter, Bourdeaux, with the whole of the Bordelais, and Chatillon in Perigord, had submitted. The next spring he opened the campaign with the capture of the town of Fronsac : but there the tide of victory turned : the French marshals Loheac and Jalagnes ad-

¹⁵⁵ See the oath in Stow, 395. Whethamstede, 349, and Rot. Parl. v. 346.

CHAP.
II.1453.
July 20.

vanced with twenty-two thousand men: and the count of Penthievre invested the important fortress of Chatillon. Talbot hastened to its relief: early in the morning he surprised and defeated a numerous body of the enemy: but the fugitives gave the alarm, and the French retired into an intrenched camp lined with three hundred pieces of cannon.¹⁵⁶ Talbot, yielding to the ardour of his followers, ordered an assault: and his opponents were seen to waver, when the count of Penthievre, arriving with a new body of men, determined the fate of the battle. The English commander, who had his horse killed under him, and his leg broken, was slain, as he lay on the field, with a bayonet: his son, though repeatedly urged to retire, fell in attempting to rescue his father; and the army, after the death of its leader, dispersed in every direction. A thousand men, who had fought their way into the fortress, were made prisoners.

From Chatillon Charles pursued his victorious career, till he had reached the gates of Bourdeaux. That city was obstinately defended by six thousand armed citizens, and four thousand English: but famine compelled them to surrender after a siege of seven weeks, on condition that the English should retire with all their pro-

Oct. 19.

¹⁵⁶ *Æneas Sylv.* oper. p. 441. He says these bombards had been brought on carriages, and discharged three hundred stones into the midst of the English.

CHAP.
II.
~~~Birth of  
a prince.  
March 6.

Oct. 13.

perty, and the natives with a few exceptions should be received under the protection of the conqueror. From that moment Guienne was incorporated with the dominions of the French monarch.<sup>157</sup>

While the nation was intoxicated with the joy caused by the first successes of Talbot, Henry summoned a parliament, which, besides liberal supplies of money, voted an army of twenty thousand archers to be raised and paid at the expense of the several counties.<sup>158</sup> It had been intended that the king should put himself at the head of this force: but the design was at first postponed, and ultimately abandoned on account of the declining state of his health. If that circumstance raised, another occurred to lower, the hopes of the Yorkists. In autumn the queen was delivered of a son, whom she called Edward. It was in vain that the king's enemies attempted to throw doubts on the legitimacy of the young prince. Their suspicions were silenced by the concurrent voice of the

<sup>157</sup> *Monstrel.* iii. 41—59. *Hall*, 165, 166. *Æneas Sylv.* *ibid.*

<sup>158</sup> *Rot. Parl.* 230—233. On what principle the different proportions were fixed, is not mentioned: but if on that of population, it will follow that Norfolk contained more inhabitants than any other county. It was to raise 1012 men: the next in number were Lincoln 910, York 713, Kent 575, and Wilts 478. The cities and towns, which were counties at the same time, were rated as follows: London 1137, York 152, Norwich 121, Bristol 86, Coventry 76, Newcastle 53, Hull 50, Southampton and Lincoln 44, and Nottingham 30. *Ibid.*

nation : and the prospect of an undisputed succession was hailed with joy by the friends of tranquillity.<sup>159</sup>

CHAP.

II.


 Henry's  
incapacity.

Unfortunately, however, Henry by this time had sunk into a state of mental, as well as bodily incapacity.<sup>160</sup> His melancholy situation, which could not be concealed, rendered it necessary to prorogue the parliament : and recalled the duke of York into the cabinet. He soon gained the ascendancy over his rival, and Somerset was committed to the tower.<sup>161</sup> When the parliament re-assembled, he opened the session in the king's name, with the title of his lieutenant. The commons had already shewn themselves stedfastly attached to the royal cause : but the duke had contrived to throw into prison their speaker, Thomas Thorp, one of the barons of the exchequer. In an action for trespass (whether it were real or feigned is unknown) he had obtained a verdict in his own favour with damages to the amount one thousand pounds : and Thorp had been committed to the Fleet, till he should give security for that sum, and pay a proportional fine to the crown. It was in vain that the commons petitioned for the

 Nov. 25.  
1454.  
Feb. 14.

Feb. 16.

<sup>159</sup> Fab. 456.

<sup>160</sup> Apud Claryngtione subito occidit in gravem infirmitatem capitis, ita quod extractus a mente videbatur. Wyrcest. 477. Ut sensu pro tempore careret et memoria . . . . nec valeret pedibus pergere, nec sursum erigere verticem, nec de loco in quo sedebat, bene se movere. Whetham. 349.

<sup>161</sup> Rym. xi. 362. Rot. Parl. v.

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~

Feb. 28.

March 9.

March 14.

release of their speaker ; the lords refused their assent: and a new speaker was chosen.¹⁶² From the confused order and imperfect nature of the notices entered on the rolls, it is difficult to collect the proceedings of this session of parliament. It appears that many of the lords had absented themselves, and were compelled to attend by heavy fines.¹⁶³ The Lord Cromwell obtained an act to bind the duke of Exeter to keep the peace under a severe penalty :¹⁶⁴ and the earl of Devonshire, another of the Yorkists, having been charged with treason, was tried and acquitted by his peers. The duke, conceiving that the accusation was aimed at himself, arose and said : “ As far as this indictment toucheth me, “ I say that it is false and untrue : and that I “ am, all the days of my life have been, and to “ the end thereof shall be, true and humble “ liegeman to the king, my most dread sove-

¹⁶² Rot. Parl. v. 238—240. The lords consulted the judges, who declined giving their opinion, “ for the court of parliament is so high “ and so mighty in his nature, that it may make law, and that, that “ is law, it may make no law : and the determination and know- “ ledge of that privilege belongeth to the lords of parliament and not “ to the justices.” Ibid.

¹⁶³ Ibid. 248. The duke of Somerset and lord Cobham were exempted, because they were in prison. Cobham was a partisan of York's.

¹⁶⁴ Ibid. 264. From Fenn's letters it appears that the duke of York, in one part of this year, had the duke of Exeter in his own custody : and that he was afterwards at large, and had come secretly to London. “ God,” adds the writer, “ send him good council hereaf- “ ter.” Fenn, i. 72, 76. He was afterwards confined at Pontefract Rym, xi. 365.

“ reign lord, and never privily nor apertly
 “ thought nor meant the contrary, whereof I
 “ call unto witness God, and all the saints of
 “ heaven.” The lords of course replied, that
 they gave full belief to so solemn a protesta-
 tion.¹⁶⁵

CHAP.
II.

A committee of peers was now chosen to visit the king : and as soon as they had reported that he was incapable of transacting business, an act was passed appointing the duke protector with a yearly salary of two thousand marks. The Lancastrians, however, had sufficient influence to preserve the king's rights inviolate. It was declared, agreeably to former precedents, that the title of protector imported no authority : that it merely gave the precedence in the council ; and the command of the army in time of invasion or rebellion : that it was revocable at the will of the king : that it should not prejudice the rights of his son, who had already been created prince of Wales and earl of Chester ; and that, if Henry's incapacity were permanent, the protectorate should devolve on the prince, as soon as he came of age.¹⁶⁶

York is
made pro-
tector.

March 27.

The custody of the sea was intrusted for seven years to five noblemen selected from the two parties, the earls of Salisbury, Shrewsbury, Worcester, Wiltshire, and the lord Stourton,¹⁶⁷ but the government of

¹⁶⁵ Rot. Parl. v. 249, 250.¹⁶⁶ Ibid. 242—244.¹⁶⁷ Ibid. 244—246. Of the manner in which provision was usually made for the safeguard of the sea, we have an instance on the rolls

CHAP.
II.
~~~~~The king  
recovers.1455.  
Feb. 5.

March 4.

Calais, a most important asylum in case of misfortune, was taken from Somerset, and bestowed on the duke of York for the same period.<sup>168</sup>

The king's malady was not permanent. About Christmas he recovered his health, and with it the use of his reason.<sup>169</sup> Though he received the duke of York with his usual kindness, he put an end to the protectorate, and liberated the duke of Somerset from the Tower. At first that nobleman gave bail for his appearance at Westminster, to answer the charges laid against him : but on his appeal to the council that he had been committed without any lawful cause, the

for the year 1443. The fleet consisted of 8 large ships with fore-stages, each carrying 150 men ; 8 barges, carrying 80 ; 8 balyngers, 40 ; 4 pinnaces, 25. Each of the large ships had a captain who was a knight, besides a master. The barges and balyngers had also masters. The expense of provisions for each man was estimated at two pence a day, his pay at two shillings the month. The masters had in addition a reward of 3s. 4d. per month. The ships were to be on the sea from Candlemas to Martinmas : and in case they made any captures, the value was to be divided into two halves, of which one belonged to the masters, quarter-masters, shipmen and soldiers ; the other was to be subdivided into three equal parts, of which two were to be given to the owners of the ships, barges, balyngers, and pinnaces, and one to the captains, by whom it was to be apportioned into eight shares, two for the commander-in-chief, and one for each of the others. *Ibid.* 59, 60.

<sup>168</sup> *Rot. Parl.* v. 254—256

<sup>169</sup> Fenn's letters, i. 80. “ And on the Monday afternoon the queen came to him, and brought my lord prince with her, and there he asked what the prince's name was, and the queen told him Edward, and then he held up his hands and thanked God thereof. And he said he never knew till that time, nor wist not what was said to him, nor wist not where he had been, whilst he hath been sick till now.” *Ibid.*

recognizances were discharged. Henry laboured most earnestly to reconcile the two dukes. As the government of Calais, which had been taken from Somerset and given to York, was likely to prove a new source of dissension, the king assumed it himself: and prevailed on both to submit, under the penalty of twenty thousand marks, their other differences to the decision of eight arbitrators, who should present their award before the twentieth of June.<sup>170</sup>

York, however, had no intention to await that award: but took the first opportunity to retire from court, invited his friends to meet him in the marches of Wales, and soon saw himself at the head of three thousand men, with the duke of Norfolk, and the earls of Salisbury and Warwick. At the news Henry left London, and early the next morning, as he entered St. Alban's, was surprised to behold the banners of the Yorkists advancing towards the town. To the duke of Buckingham, who inquired the reason of this hostile array, they replied with professions of loyalty, but demanded that the duke of Somerset and his chief associates should be instantly surrendered as prisoners. Henry refused with firmness, declaring that, “sooner than abandon

Battle of  
St. Al-  
ban's.  
May 22.

<sup>170</sup> Rym. 361—364. The arbitrators were the archbishop of Canterbury, the bishop of Ely, the duke of Buckingham, the earls of Wiltshire and Worcester, the Viscount Beaumont, and the lords Cromwell and Stourton. Ibid. The duke of Exeter was also liberated from his confinement in the castle of Pontefract. Rym. xi. 365.

CHAP.  
II.

“ any of the lords who were faithful to him, he was ready that day in their quarrel to live and die.”<sup>171</sup> York assaulted the barriers, which were obstinately defended by the lord Clifford: but Warwick penetrated through the gardens into the street: a sharp rencontre ensued: and as soon as the barriers were forced, the royalists fled. Henry had taken refuge in the house of a tanner; where the duke immediately visited him. He bent his knee with apparent humility, bade the king rejoice that the traitor (meaning Somerset) had met with his desert, and taking him by the hand, led him first to the shrine of St. Alban, and then to his apartment in the abbey. The battle seems to have been won by the archers. Henry was wounded in the neck, the duke of Buckingham and lord Sudley in the face, the earl of Stafford in the arm, all of them with arrows. The duke of Somerset, the earl of Northumberland, and the lord Clifford were slain; and as soon as they fell, their men threw down their arms and fled.<sup>172</sup> Some writers tell us that the number of the killed amounted to many thousands: a letter written three days after the battle reduces it to six score.<sup>173</sup>

The unfortunate king in the hands, and at the

<sup>171</sup> Whetham, 352. Stow, 398.

<sup>172</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 347.

<sup>173</sup> Hall has 8000 (p. 168), Stow 5000 (p. 400), but Crane in his letter to his cousin John Paston, dated Whitsunday, had at first written ten score, which he afterwards corrected to six. Fenn's Letters, i. p. 100.

CHAP.  
II.The king  
is in the  
hands of  
the York-  
ists.

July 9.

July 18.

mercy, of his enemies, was compelled to lend the sanction of his authority to the very acts by which he had been deprived of his liberty. When the parliament assembled, he was told that York and his adherents had in all their proceedings been actuated by sentiments of the purest loyalty: that their only object had been to explain to him the disgraceful practices of his ministers, and to assist him with their advice in redressing the grievances of the nation: that previously to the battle they had announced their motives and views in letters, which had been withheld from his notice by the arts of the late duke of Somerset, of Thorp; formerly speaker of the house of commons,<sup>174</sup> and of William Joseph, the confidant of these traitors; that at last they determined to lay their complaints before him in person, but, as they entered the town of St. Alban's for that purpose, were opposed by Somerset, who, in the affray which followed, paid with his life the penalty of his treason. The king, affecting to give credit to this incredible tale, acquitted York, Warwick, and Salisbury, of all disloyal practices, pronounced them good and faithful subjects, and granted them a full pardon for all offences committed before the first day of the session. The peers renewed their oath of fealty, the spiritual lords laying their right hands on their breasts, the temporal placing their hands

<sup>174</sup> Thorp was in the battle, but escaped. Stow, 400.

CHAP. between those of the king. On the last day  
 II. of July the parliament was prorogued to the  
 July 30. twelfth of November.<sup>175</sup>

York is  
 protector  
 a second  
 time.

Nov. 12.

Nov. 13.

Nov. 15.

About the end of October it was rumoured that Henry had relapsed into his former disorder: and the session was opened by the duke of York as his lieutenant. The next day the commons requested the lords to petition the king, that, if he were unable to attend to the public business himself, a protector might be immediately appointed. Two days later they renewed their request, adding, that till it was granted they should suspend the consideration of every other subject. As soon as they left the house, the lords conjured the duke of York to undertake the charge; but he, with affected humility, alleged his own incapacity, and solicited them to select from their body a peer more

<sup>175</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 275—283. The Yorkists appear to have quarrelled among themselves. On the day on which they swore fealty “there was language between my lords of Warwick and Cromwell “afore the king, in so much as the lord Cromwell would have ex-“cused himself of all the stirring or moving of the mal journey “(the battle) of St. Alban’s, of the which excuse making my lord “of Warwick had knowledge, and in haste was with the king, and “swore by his oath that the lord Cromwell said not truth, but that “he was beginner of all that journey at St. Alban’s: and so between “my said two lords of Warwick and Cromwell there is at this day “great grudging, in so much as the earl of Shrewsbury hath lodged “him at the hospital of St. James beside the mews, by the lord “Cromwell’s desire, for his safeguard.” Fenn’s Let. i. 110. In this session was passed an act declaring the duke of Gloucester to have been till his death a loyal subject. Whethamis. 365. Rot. Parl. v. 335.

worthy of the honour, and more equal to the burden. They in return renewed their prayer with many compliments to his abilities and wisdom: and, after this farce had been acted for a considerable time, he condescended to accept the protectorate on condition that it should not be, as before, revocable “at the will of the “king, but by the king in parliament, with the “advice and assent of the lords spiritual and “temporal.”<sup>176</sup> Still the powers of government were vested, not in him, but in the members of the council: but this provision was intended merely to blind the eyes of the nation; for he had previously secured a majority in the council, and the office of chancellor, and the government of Calais, were bestowed on his associates, the earls of Salisbury and Warwick.<sup>177</sup>

After these arrangements the protector might think himself secure, and might expect at a convenient time to exchange his present for a still higher title. But the meek and inoffensive character of Henry had preserved him friends, who were unwilling that he should be stripped of his authority; and the lofty spirit of the queen sought every opportunity to oppose the rival

Henry re-  
covers  
again.

<sup>176</sup> In the act confirming this appointment, as well as that which confirmed the former, a clause was introduced transferring it to the prince of Wales, as soon as he should come to the years of discretion. *Ibid.* 288.

<sup>177</sup> *Rot. Parl.* v. 283—290. 441. Young, who had been imprisoned for his bold motion in favour of the duke of York, presented a petition for damages on account of his imprisonment. *Ibid.* 337.

CHAP.

II.

1456:  
Jan. 14.

Feb. 25.

pretensions of the Yorkists. When the parliament met after the holidays, Henry had recovered his health. To strengthen his party York had called sir Thomas Stanley and sir Richard West to the house of peers: but the current ran in the king's favour; Henry proceeded in person to the parliament, and the protector's commission was formally revoked.<sup>178</sup>

With apparent willingness York descended from his high station: the earl of Salisbury resigned the great seal; and the offices of government were again filled by the king's friends. Two years passed without any important occurrence: but they were years of distrust and alarm: the relatives of the lords slain at St. Alban's loudly demanded vengeance; and their adversaries surrounded themselves with bands of armed and trusty retainers. Henry called a great council at Coventry, and by the mouth of his chancellor repeatedly communicated his complaints and intentions to the duke of York. At length the duke of Buckingham, as speaker of the house, rehearsed all the real or supposed offences with which that prince had been charged: and at the conclusion the peers falling on their knees besought the king to declare that he would never more "shew grace" to the duke or any other person, who should oppose the rights of the crown, or disturb the peace of the

realm. Henry assented: and York repeated his oath of fealty, and gave a copy of it under his own signature to the king. The same was exacted from the earl of Warwick. In conclusion all the lords bound themselves, never for the future to seek redress by force, but to remit their quarrels to the justice of their sovereign.<sup>179</sup>

In consequence of this resolution, Henry, who had long acted as the only impartial man in his dominions, laboured to mitigate the resentments of the two parties: and at last had reason to hope that his endeavours would be crowned with complete success. By common agreement they repaired with their retainers to London: <sup>180</sup> the loyalists were lodged without, the Yorkists within, the walls: and the mayor at the head of five thousand armed citizens undertook to preserve the peace. The duke assembled his partisans every morning at the Black Friars: their resolves were communicated by the primate and other prelates to the loyalists, who met at the White Friars every afternoon: and the proceedings of the day were in the evening laid before the king, who with several of the judges resided

Reconcili-  
ation of  
the two  
parties.

1458.  
Jan. 26.

<sup>179</sup> Such is the account on the rolls, v. 347. Our chroniclers tell us that York, Salisbury, and Warwick had arrived near Coventry, when they received advice of a conspiracy against their lives, and immediately fled, York to Wigmore, Salisbury to Middleham, and Warwick to Calais. Fab. 462. Stow, 402.

<sup>180</sup> The duke of York had only 140 horse, the new duke of Somerset 200, the earl of Salisbury 400, besides four score knights and esquires. Fenn's Letters, i. 151.

CHAP

II.

March 24.

at Berkhamstead. At length, as umpire between them, he pronounced his award: that within the two following years a chantry should be founded at the expense of the duke of York, and the earls of Salisbury and Warwick, for the souls of the three lords slain in battle at St. Alban's: that both those who were dead, and the lords who had been the cause of their death, should be reputed faithful subjects: that the duke of York should pay to the dowager dutchess of Somerset and her children the sum of five thousand, the earl of Warwick to the lord Clifford that of one thousand, marks: and that the earl of Salisbury should release to Percy lord Egremont, all the damages he had obtained against him for an assault, on condition that the said lord Egremont should enter into a sufficient recognizance to keep the peace for ten years.<sup>181</sup>

March 25. The next day Henry, attended by his whole court, walked in procession to St. Paul's. In token of their reconciliation the queen was conducted by the duke of York: and the lords of each party walked before them arm in arm as friends and brothers. To the beholders it was a spectacle which appeared to promise harmony and peace: but no external ceremony could extinguish the passions of ambition and revenge, which yet lay smouldering in their breasts.<sup>182</sup>

---

<sup>181</sup> It is given at length in Whethamstede, 411—428. See also Rot. Parl. v. 347. <sup>182</sup> Fab. 464. Holingshead, 647. Hall, 172.

CHAP.

II.

They  
quarrel  
again.

May 29.

July 31.

Nov. 9.

The king a short time before had taken the custody of the sea from the duke of Exeter, and given it to the earl of Warwick for a term of five years. His object probably was to attach that enterprising nobleman to the throne, or to remove him to a distance from his associates. In May intelligence was brought to Calais, that a strange fleet of twenty-eight sail had been met at sea ; and Warwick, with his characteristic intrepidity, hastened to intercept it with only five large and seven small vessels. The battle lasted from four in the morning till ten: and the English, though they had captured six sail, were compelled to retire with considerable loss into Calais.<sup>183</sup> The fleet, or at least the merchandise, belonged to the citizens of Lubeck, whose commerce had been hitherto conducted under the faith of treaties with England. On the complaint of the sufferers a commission was appointed to inquire into the causes of the engagement ; and Warwick was in consequence summoned to attend the council at Westminster.<sup>184</sup> One day, as he left the court, a quarrel arose between one of his livery, and one of the king's servants : the affray gradually became more alarming ; and the earl believed, or affected to believe, that his life was in danger. He hastened into the north

<sup>183</sup> John Jernyngham, who was in the battle, acknowledges the defeat : "Men says, there was not so great a battle upon the sea this forty winters: and forsooth we were well and truly beat." Fenn's Letters, i. 161. <sup>184</sup> Rym. xi. 415.

CHAP.

II.

Battle of  
Blore-  
heath.1459.  
May 10.

to consult his father the earl of Salisbury and the Duke of York; and having settled with them the plan of his future operations, returned to his command at Calais.<sup>185</sup>

The winter was passed in preparations for the subsequent contest. The three lords actively solicited the aid of their partisans: and Warwick in particular called under his banner the veterans, who had served in the late wars in Normandy and Guienne. The court distributed with profusion collars of white swans, the badge of the young prince, and by letters under the privy seal invited the king's friends to meet him in arms in the city of Leicester.<sup>186</sup> The dissension was no longer confined to the higher classes: it divided almost every family in the nation: it had penetrated into the convents of the monks, and the cottages of the poor. One party maintained that the duke of York was an injured prince, who with his associates was trampled under foot by the minions of the court, and was compelled to arm in order to preserve his own life: the other pronounced him a traitor, who under false pretences, sought to place himself on the throne, and who owed that life to the king's clemency which he had already forfeited to the laws.<sup>187</sup> The greater part of the summer passed without any important event. At last

<sup>185</sup> Hall, 172, 173.<sup>186</sup> Fenn, i. 175.<sup>187</sup> Cont. Croyl, i. 529. Whethams. 454.

the earl of Salisbury moved from his castle of Middleham to join the duke of York on the borders of Wales. The lord Audeley with ten thousand men interposed himself between them at Bloreheath near Drayton in Staffordshire. Salisbury, whose force was small, pretended to fly : the royalists pursued in confusion : and, as soon as one half of them had crossed a rapid torrent, the fugitives turned, fell on the pursuers in the glen, and obtained with ease a complete victory. Audeley with more than two thousand men remained on the field of battle : the lord Dudley with many knights and esquires were made prisoners. The earl led his troops without further molestation to Ludlow, where he found the duke of York, and was in a few days joined by his son from Calais with a large body of veterans under sir John Blount and sir Andrew Trollop.<sup>188</sup>

CHAP.  
II.

Sept. 23.

The king with an army of sixty thousand men lay at Worcester, and had sent the bishop of Salisbury to his opponents with offers of reconciliation and pardon, if they would submit within six days. They replied that they had no reliance on his promises : that his friends, depending on their own favour, transgressed his commands : and that the earl of Warwick had the last year nearly lost his life by their treachery. He advanced to Ludiford, within half a mile of their camp : when they sent him a second mes-

The Yorkists are dispersed.

Oct. 10.

<sup>188</sup> Hall, 173. Stow, 405. Whethams, 445. Rot. Parl. v. 384.

CHAP.  
II.  
~~~

Oct. 13.

Nov. 2.

sage, declaring that, if they had taken up arms, it was solely in their own defence : that though they could have revenged themselves on their enemies, they had refrained through respect to him : and that even now, when they had retired to the very borders of his kingdom, they had determined not to draw the sword against their sovereign, unless they should be compelled by necessity.¹⁸⁹ The Yorkists were intrenched behind several batteries of cannon, which played incessantly on the royal army. To keep up the spirits of his men, the duke had spread a report that Henry died the day before, and in the morning had ordered mass to be chanted for the repose of his soul. Trollop, the marshal of the insurgents, was in reality attached to his sovereign : hitherto his loyalty had been deceived by the fair speeches of his employers : but York's intention of seizing the throne was revealed to him that afternoon ; and in the dusk of the evening he departed with his veterans to offer their services to the king. Distrust and consternation instantly spread through the camp : and the confederate lords about midnight fled with precipitation into the heart of Wales. There they separated, York with one of his sons sailing to Ireland ; the rest accompanying Warwick into Devonshire, whence he made his way back to Calais.¹⁹⁰

¹⁸⁹ Wetham, 468. Stow, 406.

¹⁹⁰ Rot. Parl. v. 349. Wetham, 461. Hall, 174. Fab. 466.

CHAP.
II.~~~~~
Yorkists
attainted.
Nov. 20

This bloodless victory was most gratifying to the merciful disposition of Henry, who the next morning granted an amnesty to the insurgents abandoned by their leaders, and convoked a parliament to meet at Coventry. Its principal employment was to pass an act of attainder against the duke and dutchess of York, and their children the earls of March and Rutland, against the earl and countess of Salisbury, and their son the earl of Warwick, the lord Clinton, and a few other knights and esquires.¹⁹¹ It was with pain that Henry acquiesced in this act of severity. When it was read before him preparatory to the dissolution, he insisted on the addition of a clause enabling him to dispense with the attainder, whenever he thought proper; and entirely refused his assent to that part of it which confiscated the property of the lord Powis and two others, who had thrown themselves on his mercy the morning after the flight of their leaders.¹⁹²

In this desperate situation the hopes and fortunes of the Yorkists rested on the abilities and popularity of the earl of Warwick, who by a most fatal error had been permitted to retain the command of the fleet with the government of Calais. He was now superseded in both, in the former by the duke of Exeter, in the latter by the duke of Somerset. But when Somerset prepared to enter the harbour, he was driven back

¹⁹¹ Rot. Parl. v. 345—351.¹⁹² Ibid. 350. Whetham. 473.

CHAP. by the fire from the batteries ; and as soon as
 II. he had landed at Guisnes, his ships were carried
 ~~ off by his own mariners to their favourite com-
 mander at Calais. They were a most valuable
 acquisition to Warwick, who while Somerset
 and his veterans were uselessly detained in
 Guisnes, surprised two successive armaments
 fitted out by the royalists in the ports of Kent.
 He sailed even to Dublin to concert measures
 with the duke of York ; and in his return was
 1460. met by the duke of Exeter : but that commander,
 Jan. 1. alarmed by symptoms of disaffection in his fleet,
 turned into Dartmouth, and Warwick rejoined
 his friends in Calais.¹⁹³

They raise
an army.

The result of the conference at Dublin was
 soon disclosed. Emissaries were sent to all the
 friends of the party to hold themselves in readi-
 ness for action : and reports were spread that
 Henry had not given his assent to the act of at-
 tainder : that he was still convinced of the inno-
 cence of the exiles ; and that instead of being
 free, he was a reluctant captive in the hands of
 a faction. At the same time was circulated an
 appeal to the nation by the duke of York, enu-
 merating all the grievances under which the

¹⁹³ Wyrcest. 478, 479. Whethamstede, 476. In one of these
 expeditions the lord Rivers was surprised in bed. "He was
 "brought to Calais and before the lords with eight score torches,
 "and there my lord of Salisbury rated him, calling him: Knave's
 "son, that he should be so rude as to call him and those other
 "lords traitors: for they should be found the king's true liege men,
 "when he should be found a traitor." Fenn's Letters, i. 187.

people were said to labour ; accusing the earls of Shrewsbury and Wiltshire and the lord Beaumont of guiding the king contrary to his own interests ; complaining of the act of attaïnder against himself and his friends ; asserting that letters had been sent to the French king to besiege Calais, and to the natives of Ireland to expel the English ; and declaring that the fugitive lords were faithful subjects, and intended to prove their innocence before their sovereign.¹⁹⁴

This manifesto was followed by the arrival of Warwick, who with fifteen hundred men landed in Kent, a county much attached to the house of York. He was joined by the lord Cobham with four hundred followers, by the archbishop of Canterbury, who owed his dignity to the favour of the duke during the protectorate, and by most of the neighbouring gentlemen. As he advanced his army swelled to the amount of twenty-five, some say of forty, thousand men : London opened its gates ; and the earl going to the convocation, asserted his loyalty upon oath ; and prevailed on five of the bishops to accompany him, for the purpose of introducing him to his sovereign. Henry had collected his army at Coventry, and advanced to Northampton, where he intrenched himself. The royalists seemed confident of the victory ; but were betrayed by the lord Grey of Ruthyn, who instead of defending his post, in-

June 29:

July 2.

And make
the king
prisoner.

¹⁹⁴ Stow, 407, 408.

CHAP.

II.

July 10.

introduced the Yorkists into the heart of the camp. Though the combat lasted but a short time, the duke of Buckingham, the earl of Shrewsbury, the viscount Beaumont, the lord Egremont, with three hundred knights and gentlemen were slain.¹⁹⁵ For it had long been and still was the policy of Warwick to direct his followers to spare the people, but to refuse quarter to the nobility. Henry retired to his tent, where he received from the victors every demonstration of respect : his queen and her son fled towards Chester, and though they were rifled by their own servants, escaped into Wales, and thence after many adventures sailed to one of the Scottish ports.¹⁹⁶

The duke
avows his
claim to
the crown.

The captive monarch was conducted to London. But though he entered the capital in great pomp, the earl of Warwick riding bareheaded and carrying the sword before him, he was compelled to give the sanction of his authority to such measures as the victors proposed : to issue writs in approbation of the loyalty of those who had borne arms against him ; and to call a parliament for the pretended purpose of healing the dissensions between the two parties. It had scarcely repealed all the acts passed by the last parliament at Coventry,¹⁹⁷ when the duke of York en-

¹⁹⁵ Wrycest. 481. Wethams. 479—481.

¹⁹⁶ Wrycest. 481, 482:

¹⁹⁷ Rot. Parl. v. 374. The reasons given are, that it was not duly summoned, and that many of the members were returned, some without due and free election, and some without any election at all.

bid. How far this was true, in the present instance, we know not :

tered the city with a retinue of five hundred horsemen, and riding to Westminster, passed through the hall into the house, and stood for a short time with his hand on the throne. To the spectators he appeared to wait for an invitation to place himself on it. But every voice was silent. He turned and surveyed the assembly, when the primate ventured to ask him if he would visit the king, who was in the queen's apartment. "I know no one in this realm," he replied, "who ought not rather to visit me :" and leaving the house, appropriated to himself that part of the palace which had been usually reserved for the accommodation of the monarch.¹⁹⁸

This was the first time that the duke had publicly advanced his claim: but though he was really in possession of the royal authority, the people were not prepared to deprive Henry of the crown. The meek and inoffensive character of the king strongly interested the feelings of men in his favour. His family had been seated on the throne for three generations: he had filled it himself thirty-nine years: most of his opponents owed their honours, many of them

it should, however, be observed that the sheriffs prayed for a bill of indemnity, not because they had made false returns, as some writers have imagined, but for having held the elections in obedience to the writ after the year of their shrievalty was expired, contrary to the statute of the 23d of the king. *Ibid.* 367.

¹⁹⁸ Whethams. 483. Wyrcest. 483.

CHAP.
II.
~~~

their estates, to his bounty. York himself, on succeeding to the inheritance of the earl of March from whom he claimed, had sworn fealty and done homage to Henry: when he accepted the government of Normandy, when he was appointed lieutenant in Ireland, when he was raised to the protectorate during the king's incapacity, he had, under his own seal and on the rolls of parliament, acknowledged him for his sovereign; and of late he had repeatedly sworn, on the sacrament, that he would be faithful to him, would maintain him on the throne, and would even augment, if it were possible, his royal dignity. On these accounts many of his adherents would never be persuaded that he intended to dethrone Henry: and when he made the attempt, he found his hopes unexpectedly checked by their apathy, and the murmurs of the people.<sup>199</sup>

It is  
brought  
forward by  
his coun-  
sel.

Oct. 16.

On the ninth day of the session the duke of York by his counsel delivered to the bishop of Exeter, the new chancellor, a statement of his claim to the crown, and requested that he might have a speedy answer. The lords resolved that since every man who sued in that court, whether he were high or low, had a right to be heard, the duke's petition should be read, but that no answer should be returned without the previous com-

<sup>199</sup> Et illo die pauci dominorum sibi favebant, sed solummodo absentabant. Wyrcest. 484. Cœpit protinus status omnis et gradus, ætas et sexus, ordo et conditio contra eum murmuranter agere. Whe-  
tham. 485.

mand of the king. In this writing, having first derived his descent from Henry III., by Lionel third son to Edward III., he observed, that on the resignation of Richard II., Henry earl of Derby, the son of John of Ghent, the younger brother of the said Lionel, against all manner of right entered on the crowns of England and France and the lordship of Ireland, which by law belonged to Roger Mortimer earl of March, great grandson to the said sir Lionel; whence he concluded that of right, law, and custom, the said crown and lordship now belonged to himself, as the lineal representative of Roger Mortimer, in preference to any one who could claim only as the descendant of Henry earl of Derby.<sup>200</sup>

The next day Richard demanded an immediate answer, and the lords resolved to wait on the king, and receive his commands. Henry, when the subject was first opened to him, replied: "My father was king: his father was also king: I have worn the crown forty years from my cradle: you have all sworn fealty to me as your sovereign, and your fathers have done the like to my fathers. How then can my right be disputed?"<sup>201</sup> In conclusion he recommended his interests to their loyalty, and commanded them to "to search for to find, in as much as in them was, all such things as might be objected and laid against the claim and

Oct. 17.

<sup>200</sup> Wetham, 375.

<sup>201</sup> Blackm. 305.

CHAP.  
II.  
Oct. 18.

“ title of the said duke.” The lords the next day sent for the judges, and ordered them to defend to the best of their power the king’s claims. They, however, demanded to be excused. By their office they were not to be of counsel between party and party, but to judge according to law of such matters as came before them: but the present question was above the law: it appertained not to them: it could be decided only by the lords of the king’s blood, and the high court of parliament. An order was then made for the attendance of the king’s serjeants and attornies: they also presented their excuses, which, however, were not admitted,

Oct. 20.

Oct. 22.

Objections  
to the  
duke’s  
title.

After several debates, in which each lord gave his opinion with apparent freedom, the following objections were sent to the duke: 1°. That both he and the lords had sworn fealty to Henry, and of course he by his oath was prevented from urging, they by theirs from admitting, his claim: 2°. That many acts, passed in divers parliaments of the king’s progenitors, might be opposed to the pretensions of the house of Clarence, which acts “ been of authority to defeat any “manner of title:” 3°. That several entails had been made of the crown to the heirs male, whereas he claimed by descent from females: 4°. That he did not bear the arms of Lionel the third, but of Edmund the fifth son of Edward III.

and, 5<sup>o</sup>. That Henry IV. had declared that he entered on the throne as the true heir of Henry III. To the three first objections the duke's counsel replied : that as priority of descent was evidently in his favour, it followed that the right to the crown was his : which right could not be defeated by oaths or acts of parliament, or entails. Indeed the only entail made to the exclusion of females was that of the seventh year of Henry IV. and would never have been thought of, had that prince claimed under the customary law of descents : that the reason why he had not hitherto taken the arms of Lionel was the same as had prevented him from claiming the crown, the danger to which such a proceeding would have exposed him : and lastly, that if Henry IV. pronounced himself the rightful heir of Henry III., he asserted what he knew to be untrue. As, however, the principal reliance of his adversaries was on the oaths which he had taken, and which it was contended were to be considered as a surrender of his right by his own act, he contended that no oath contrary to truth and justice is binding : that the virtue of an oath is to confirm truth and not to impugn it : and that as the obligation of oaths is a subject for the determination of the spiritual tribunals, he was willing to answer in any such court all manner of men, who had any thing to propose against him.

At length the lords resolved that the title of the duke of York could not be defeated : yet

A compro-  
mise.  
Oct. 24.

CHAP.  
II.  
they refused to proceed to the next step of dethroning the king. To "save their oaths " and clear their consciences," they proposed a compromise: that Henry should possess the crown for the term of his natural life, and that the duke and his heirs should succeed to it after Henry's death. To this both parties agreed. The duke and his two sons the earls of March and Rutland, swore not to molest the king, but to maintain him on the throne; and Henry gave the royal assent to the bill declaring the duke heir apparent, allotting certain estates to him and his sons on that account, and pronouncing any attempt against his person a crime of high treason. On the conclusion of this important affair the king with the crown on his head, and attended by the duke as heir apparent, rode in state to make his thanksgiving at St. Paul's.<sup>202</sup>

Battle of  
Wakefield.

But though the unfortunate monarch had consented to surrender the interests of his son, they were still upheld by the queen, and the

---

<sup>202</sup> Rot. Parl. 375—383. From the history of this controversy, as it is entered on the rolls, it is plain that both the feelings and the opinions of the lords were in favour of Henry. The original defect in his descent had been supplied by the consent of the nation, the undisturbed possession of the crown by his family during sixty years, and the numerous oaths of fealty taken by all men, even his very competitor. No considerations could induce them to dethrone him: all that could be extorted from them by the victorious party was a compromise, which secured the crown to him during his life: and then took it from his son, to whom they had never sworn fealty, and gave it to another branch of the royal family.

lords, who had always adhered to the house of Lancaster. The earl of Northumberland, the lords Clifford, Dacres, and Nevil, assembled an army at York: and the duke of Somerset, and the earl of Devon joined them with their tenants from those counties.. This union alarmed the victorious party: York and Salisbury hastened to anticipate their designs; and though Somerset surprised the vanguard of the Yorkists at Worksop, they reached before Christmas the strong castle of Sandal. Whether it were that the duke of York was compelled to send out strong parties to forage, or that his pride could not brook the taunts of his enemies, he fought them with inferior forces near Wakefield, and was either killed in the battle, or taken and beheaded on the spot. Two thousand of his men with most of their leaders remained on the field: and the earl of Salisbury was taken during the night, and decapitated the next day at Pontefract. But no one was more lamented than the young earl of Rutland, a boy in his twelfth year. He had fled with his tutor from the conflict, and was stopped on the bridge of Wakefield. When he was asked his name, unable to speak through terror, he fell on his knees; and his tutor thinking to save him, said that he was the son of the duke. “Then,” exclaimed Clifford, “as thy father slew mine, so will I slay thee, and all of thy kin,” and plunging his dagger into the breast of the young prince, bade the tutor go,

CHAP.  
II.

Dec. 2.

Dec. 21.

The duke  
is slain.  
Dec. 30.

CHAP.  
II.

~~~

Battle of
Mortimer's
cross.
1461.

Feb. 1.

Second
battle at
St. Al-
ban's.

and bear the news to the boy's mother. The queen on her arrival was presented with the head of her enemy, and ordered it to be encircled with the diadem of paper, and placed on the walls of York.²⁰³

From this moment the war assumed a new character: and the thirst for revenge gave to the combatants of each party a ferocity to which they had hitherto been strangers. Edward earl of March, and heir to the late duke of York, was at Gloucester when he received the melancholy intelligence of the fate of his father and brother: and having completed his levies hastened to interpose an army between the royalists and the capital. He was closely followed by an inferior force of Welch and Irish, under the king's uterine brother, Jasper earl of Pembroke: but, apprehensive of being surrounded, suddenly faced about and obtained the bloody victory of Mortimer's cross, near Wigmore. The royalists lost about four thousand men. Pembroke himself escaped: but his father Owen Tudor was taken, and with Throgmorton and seven other captains beheaded at Hereford, as a sacrifice to the manes of those, who had been executed after the battle of Wakefield.²⁰⁴

While Edward was thus occupied in the West, the queen with her victorious army advanced on

²⁰³ Rot. Parl. v. 466. Wyrcest. 484, 485. Whetham 489. Cont. Croyl. 530. Hall, 183.

²⁰⁴ Wyrcest. 486. Contin. Croyl. 550.

Feb. 7.

Feb. 18.

the road to London, and met with no opposition till she had reached the town of St. Alban's. It was held by the earl of Warwick, who had drawn up his troops on the low hills to the south. The royalists penetrated as far as the market cross, but were repulsed by a strong body of archers. They next forced their way by another street as far as Barnet heath, where after a long conflict, they put to flight the men of Kent. Night saved the Yorkists from utter destruction. They separated and fled in different directions, leaving the king in his tent under the care of the lord Montague his chamberlain. He was soon visited by Margaret and his son, and embraced them with transports of joy. There fell in this battle about two thousand men. The next day the lord Bonville and sir Thomas Kyriel were beheaded in retaliation for the executions at Hereford.²⁰⁵

Thus by another unexpected revolution Henry was restored to his friends, and placed at the head of a victorious army. Could he have conducted that army immediately to the capital,

The king
is free
again.

²⁰⁵ Wyrcest. 486. Wethamst. 497—501. Cont. Croylan. 550. It is often said that Bonville and Kyriel attended the king, and would have fled, but were persuaded to remain by Henry, who gave them his word that they should not suffer. These contemporary writers do not mention it, and Wyrcester expressly asserts that it was the lord Montague who was taken with Henry. However, in the act of attainder passed in the 1st of Edward IV., it is said they had received from him a promise of protection. Rot. Parl. v. 477.

CHAP. II. the citizens must have opened the gates : but his soldiers were principally borderers, accustomed to live by rapine ; and had been allured to the royal standard by the promise of plunder. No prohibitions or entreaties could prevail on them to march forward : they spread themselves around to pillage the country : and the necessity of protecting their property attached to the banners of the house of York the citizens of London and the inhabitants of the neighbouring counties. Henry announced by proclamation, that his assent to the late award had been extorted by violence, and issued orders for the immediate arrest of Edward, late earl of March, and son to the late duke of York.²⁰⁶ But Edward had now united his forces with those of the earl of Warwick : and their superiority of numbers induced the royalists to retire with expedition into the northern counties. They were not pursued. Edward had a more important object in view, and entered London with all the pomp of a victorious monarch. His youth (he was in his nineteenth year) his beauty and accomplishments, the unfortunate fate of his father and brother, the fame of his late success, and the ravages of the royalists, conspired to multiply the number of his adherents. To sound the disposition of the citizens, the lord Falconberg reviewed four thousand men in the

Edward
the new
duke of
York in
London.
Feb. 25.

²⁰⁶ Rot. Parl. v. 466.

fields, and the bishop of Exeter seized the opportunity to harangue the spectators on the unfounded claim, and the incapacity of Henry, the just title and the abilities of Edward. The acclamations which followed his speech were considered as a proof of the public feeling; and the next day it was resolved in a great council, that Henry, by joining the queen's forces, had violated the award, and forfeited the crown to Edward, the heir of Richard late Duke of York. As soon as this resolution was announced, the prince rode in procession to Westminster-hall, and mounting the throne, explained to the audience the rights of his family. He then entered the church, repeated his speech, and on both occasions was frequently interrupted with cries of "Long live king Edward." He was immediately proclaimed in the usual style by the heralds in different parts of the city.²⁰⁷

On that day expired the reign of Henry VI., a prince, whose personal character commanded the respect of his very enemies, and whose misfortunes still claim the sympathy of the reader. He was virtuous and religious; humane, forgiving, and benevolent; but nature had denied him that health of body and fortitude of mind, which could have enabled him to struggle through the peculiar difficulties of his situation.

CHAP.
II.
March 2.

March 4.

Powers of
the house
of lords.

²⁰⁷ Contin. Croyl. 550. Whetham. 511—514. Wyrcest. 488, 489.

CHAP. II. It would be unjust to ascribe those difficulties to his misconduct : they arose from causes over which he had no control, the original defect in his descent, the duration of his minority, the dissensions of his uncles, and the frequent recurrence of corporal debility, generally accompanied with the privation of reason. Some of these causes, however, gave birth to proceedings, most interesting to those who wish to investigate the principles of our ancient constitution. From them it appears that, though the king, in the case of temporary absence from the realm, might appoint a regent with delegated authority during his absence, yet he could not, without the concurrence of the three estates, provide for the government during the minority of his successor—that whenever the reigning monarch, either through extreme youth or mental disease, was incapable of performing the functions of royalty, the exercise of his authority devolved exclusively on the house of peers, who appointed the great officers of state and the members of the council, giving to them powers to transact the ordinary business of government, but resuming those powers, as often as they themselves were assembled either in parliament or in a great council ; and that the recognition of these doctrines was required from the first princes of the blood, the dukes of Bedford, Gloucester, and York, who at different times acknowledged that, during the king's minority

or incapacity, they were entitled to no more authority than any other peer, unless it were conferred upon them by the whole body.²⁰⁸ For the same reason, when the succession to the crown was disputed, the claims of each party were brought before the house of lords, as the only legitimate tribunal, which possessed the authority to pronounce on so important a question. The commons neither presumed, nor would have been suffered, to interfere. They might indeed represent the urgency of the case to the upper house, might ask to be made acquainted with its resolutions, and, if an act of parliament were necessary, might give their assent; but the nomination of the protector and the counsellors was made, and their powers were determined by the peers alone: and the functions of the two houses were accurately distinguished in the language of the statutes, which attribute the appointment to the king by the advice and assent of the lords, and with the assent only of the commons.²⁰⁹

The commons, however, during this reign were careful to maintain that importance in the state, which they had inherited from their predecessors. They continued to vote and appropriate the supplies; their concurrence was deemed necessary in the enactment of statutes; and they exercised the right of impeaching those

And of the
Commons.

²⁰⁸ See Rot. Parl. iv. 326. v. 242. 409—411.

²⁰⁹ Ibid.

CHAP.

II.

ministers who had forfeited the confidence of the nation. If they suffered their claims of liberty of speech, and freedom from arrest, to be invaded by the imprisonment of Thorp by the influence of the duke of York, and of Young by the order of the king, it should be remembered that these illegal acts were committed when the minds of men were heated by a contest for the crown, and therefore could form no precedents for more peaceable times. From Henry the commons obtained what had been refused or eluded by former sovereigns, a law for the personal security of all members of parliament, while they attended their duty :²¹⁰ and several statutes were enacted to regulate the manner of elections, to prevent false returns, and to fix the qualifications both of the candidates and the voters. The sheriff was ordered to proceed to the election in the first county court after the receipt of the king's writ, between the hours of nine and eleven in the morning; to admit no longer the votes of all who attended, but to examine them upon oath, and to exclude those who did not both reside in the county, and possess within it a free tenement of the yearly value of forty shillings after the reduction of all charges: to return no candidate who was not a knight, "or notable esquire, or "gentleman of birth, able to be a knight :" and

²¹⁰ Rot. Parl. iv. 453.

to write the names of the persons returned in an indenture under the seals of all the voters. It was also provided that the representatives of the cities and burghs, should be inhabitants of the same cities and burghs, that when the mayors or bailiffs made the return to the sheriff, he should give them his receipt, and that for every false return he should be liable to imprisonment, to a fine to the king, and to payment of damages to the injured candidate.²¹¹

The hereditary revenue of the crown had during several reigns been continually on the decrease: under Henry it was more rapidly diminished by the enormous expences incurred during the war in France, and by the numerous grants which were easily obtained from the benevolence of his disposition. In 1429 it was ascertained that the monies annually absorbed by the war exceeded the whole amount of the revenue by twenty thousand marks,²¹² and four

²¹¹ Rot. Parl. iv. 331. 350. 402. v. 7. 115.

²¹² Rym. x. 413. The receipts in the eleventh year of Henry amounted to about thirty-five thousand pounds; but this sum was reduced to less than one-fourth by fees, wages, and annuities, which had been granted by the crown to different individuals, and had been made payable out of these funds, before they were transferred to the royal treasury. But to the ordinary must be added the extraordinary revenue, which consisted of the customs on wool, and skins, and the tonnage and poundage, which, though not always, yet generally were granted by parliament. This, after the usual deductions had been made, amounted on an average of three years to about twenty-seven thousand pounds. The annual expences to be defrayed by these funds were classed under the heads of the

CHAP.
II.
—

years later the receipts fell short of the expences of government by the yearly sum of thirty-five thousand pounds : to which were to be added the outstanding debts of the crown, amounting to more than one hundred and forty-four thousand.²¹³ The only mode of relief which occurred to the financiers of the age was a general resumption of the grants made by the king since his accession : but, though such resumptions were repeatedly enacted, they were always rendered nugatory by the introduction of exceptions, at the demand of the king, or of the members, who sought to screen their friends from the operation of the act.²¹⁴ In the mean while the ordinary revenue of the crown dwindled to the paltry sum of five thousand pounds : and it became necessary to make parliamentary provision for the support of the royal household. This was effected on some occasions by authorizing the treasurer to devote to that purpose a certain sum out of the monies voted for different objects : at others by appropriating a certain portion of the revenue to the royal use, before any other claims upon it should be satisfied.²¹⁵

household about 13,700*l.*, of the government of Ireland, Aquitaine, and the marches of Scotland 10,900*l.*, of Calais 11,000*l.*, of the navy, prisoners, &c. 3,700*l.*, of fees and annuities payable at the exchequer 11,150*l.*, and other annuities at will 5,500*l.* Rot. Parl. iv. 433—438.

²¹³ Ibid. 436—438.

²¹⁴ Ibid. v. 183—199. 217—224. 300—320.

²¹⁵ Ibid. v. 7. 32. 174. 214. 346.

In defiance, however, of these precautions the king's debts continued to increase: and long before the termination of his reign they amounted to the sum of three hundred and seventy-two thousand pounds.²¹⁶

²¹⁶ Rot. Parl. v. 183. 217.

CHAP. III.

EDWARD IV.

CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emperor of Ger.</i> | <i>King of Scotland.</i> | <i>Kings of France.</i> | <i>Kings of Spain.</i> | <i>Popes.</i> |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|---|--|
| Frederic III. | James III. | Charles VII..1461
Louis XI. | Henry IV..1474
Isabella }
Ferdinand } | Pius II....1464.
Paul II....1471.
Sixtus IV. |

EDWARD IS CROWNED—MISFORTUNES OF THE LANCASTRIANS—HENRY VI. IS MADE PRISONER—EDWARD'S MARRIAGE—INSURRECTION—THE KING IMPRISONED BY THE NEVILS—HIS RELEASE—ANOTHER INSURRECTION—CLARENCE AND WARWICK LEAVE THE REALM—RETURN—EXPEL EDWARD—AND RESTORE HENRY—EDWARD RETURNS—HIS VICTORY AT BARNET—CAPTURE AND DEATH OF HENRY—BATTLE OF TEWKSBURY—WAR WITH FRANCE—PEACE—ATTAINDER OF CLARENCE—DEATH OF THE KING.

CHAP.
III.
~~~~~  
Battle of  
Towton.

THOUGH Edward had assumed the title of king, he was not ignorant that he held it by a very precarious tenure. The losses and advantages of the two parties were still nearly balanced: and if he was acknowledged by the southern, his rival could depend on the support of the northern, counties. The earl of Warwick, anxi-

ous to bring the question to an issue, marched from London at the head of a body of veterans : Edward in a few days followed with the main army : and by the time of his arrival at Pontefract, forty-nine thousand men had arrayed themselves under his banner. The preparations of the house of Lancaster were equally formidable. The duke of Somerset with sixty thousand infantry and cavalry lay in the neighbourhood of York : and the queen, who with her husband and son had consented to remain within the city, employed all her address, to confirm their loyalty, and animate their courage. Both armies advanced towards Ferrybridge. The passage had been gained by the lord Fitzwalter on the part of Edward : but that nobleman was surprised and slain by lord Clifford, who within a few hours met on the same spot with a similar fate from the lord Falconberg. The next day, between the villages of Towton and Saxton, was fought the battle, which fixed the crown on the brow of Edward. The engagement began at nine in the morning amidst a heavy fall of snow : the obstinacy of the combatants protracted it till three in the afternoon. At that hour the Lancastrians began to give way, at first leisurely and in good order, but finding their retreat interrupted by the river Cock, they abandoned themselves to despair, and while some plunged into the torrent, others offered themselves without resistance to the swords of the enemy.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~  
1461.
March 7.
March 12.

March 28.

March 29.

CHAP.
III.
~~~

Edward had forbidden his followers to give quarter, and one half of the Lancastrians perished. The earl of Northumberland and six barons fell in the battle: the earls of Devonshire and Wiltshire were taken in their flight, and beheaded. The dukes of Somerset and Exeter had the good fortune to reach York, and conducted Henry and his family to the borders. The victory was decisive: but it cost the nation a deluge of blood. Besides those who perished in the waters, a contemporary writer assures us that thirty-eight thousand men remained on the field:<sup>1</sup> nor can we reasonably accuse him of exaggeration, since Edward himself, in a confidential letter to his mother, while he conceals his own loss, informs her that the heralds, employed to number the dead bodies, returned the Lancastrians alone at twenty-eight thousand.<sup>2</sup>

Edward is  
crowned.

From this scene of carnage the conqueror rode towards York, which he entered the next morning. The escape of Henry disappointed his hopes: but during his stay in the city, he gave orders that several of his prisoners should be executed, and their heads substituted on the walls for those of his father and brother. From York he proceeded to Newcastle, receiving in his progress the homage of the inhabitants, and watching the motions of the fugitives. Henry, to purchase the aid of the Scots, had delivered to

<sup>1</sup> Cont. Hist. Croyl. 533.<sup>2</sup> Fenn's Letters, i. 217.

April 25.

them the town of Berwick, and, while they with a powerful army undertook the reduction of Carlisle, penetrated with a few faithful friends into the county of Durham. He narrowly escaped being taken by the superior number of his enemies: and Carlisle was relieved by the lord Montague, who slew six thousand of the besiegers. But Edward had already left the <sup>June 1.</sup> theatre of war, and hastened to London. He was crowned at Westminster with the usual <sup>June 29.</sup> solemnity; and created his younger brothers, George and Richard, who had returned from their asylum in Flanders, dukes of Clarence and Gloucester.<sup>3</sup>

When the parliament assembled, both houses were eager to display their attachment to their new sovereign. They first pronounced the reigns of the three last kings a tyrannical usurpation, and declared that Edward had been rightfully seized of the crown and the profits of the realm, from the fourth day of March last, in the same manner as they had been enjoyed by Richard II. on the feast of St. Matthew in the twenty-third year of his reign. With certain exceptions the grants of Henry IV., V., and VI., were revoked, but their judicial acts were ratified, and the titles of honour which they had conferred, were allowed.<sup>4</sup> Next followed a long

Bill of at-tainder.

<sup>3</sup> Hall, 86—89. Monstrel. iii. 84. Rym. xi. 476. Fenn, i. 230—235.

<sup>4</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 463—475. 489. But the titles were allowed only

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

and sweeping bill of attainder, which extended to almost every man who had distinguished himself in the cause of the house of Lancaster. Henry VI. his queen, their son Edward, the dukes of Somerset and Exeter, the earls of Northumberland, Devonshire, Wilts, and Pembroke, the viscount Beaumont, the lords Roos, Nevil, Rougement, Dacre, and Hungerford, with one hundred and thirty-eight knights, priests, and esquires, were adjudged to suffer all the penalties of treason, the loss of their honours, the forfeiture of their estates, and an ignominious death, if they had not already fallen in the field of battle.⁵ In defence of such unexampled severity was alleged the advantage of annihilating at once the power of the party: and to this motive was probably added another, the necessity of providing funds, from which Edward might satisfy the demands and expectations of those, to whose services he owed the present possession of the crown. Before he dissolved the parliament, he addressed the commons in the following terms: “James Strangways” (he was the speaker) “and ye that be come for the commons of this land, for the true hearts and tender considerations that ye have had to my right and title, I thank you as heartily as I can. Also for the tender and true hearts that

The king's
speech.

on condition, that the holders should receive from the king new grants of the annuities attached to them. *Ibid.*

⁵ *Rot. Parl. v. 476—486.*

“ ye have shewed unto me, in that ye have ten-
“ derly had, in remembrance the correction of
“ the horrible murder, and cruel death of my
“ lord my father, my brother Rutland, and my
“ cousin of Salisbury, and other, I thank you
“ right heartily, and I shall be unto you, with
“ the grace of almighty God, as good and gra-
“ cious sovereign lord, as ever was any of my no-
“ ble progenitors to their subjects and liegemen.
“ And for the faithful and loving hearts, and
“ also the great labours that ye have borne and
“ sustained towards me in the recovering of my
“ said right and title which I now possess, I
“ thank you with all my heart, and if I had any
“ better good to reward you withal than my
“ body, ye should have it, the which shall al-
“ ways be ready for your defence, never sparing
“ nor letting for no jeopardy, praying you all of
“ your hearty assistance and good countenance,
“ as I shall be unto you very, rightwise, and
“ loving liege lord.”⁶

The cause of the red rose now appeared des-
perate; but it was still supported by the courage
and industry of Margaret. The surrender of
Berwick had given her a claim to the protection
of the Scottish government: and the promise
of an English dukedom, with lands to the yearly

Exertions
of Queen
Margaret.

⁶ Ibid. 487. In this parliament it was enacted that no lord or
other should allow playing at dice or cards in his house or elsewhere,
if he could hinder it, except during the twelve days at Christmas.
Ibid. 488.

CHAP. value of two thousand marks, had secured to
 III. her the services of the powerful earl of Angus :
 ~~~~~ while Edward as a counterpoise purchased with  
 an annual pension the fealty of the earl of Ross,  
 lord of the isles, and sought to amuse Mary the  
 queen dowager of Scotland,<sup>7</sup> with a deceitful  
 offer of marriage.<sup>8</sup> To aid her cause Margaret  
 resolved to visit the continent, and invite all  
 true knights to avenge the wrongs of an injured  
 monarch. Sailing from Kirkcudbright she  
 1462. April 8. landed in Bretagne : and the duke made the  
 royal suppliant a present of twelve thousand  
 crowns. From Bretagne she repaired to the  
 French court at Chinon. Lewis XI. (his father  
 Charles was lately dead) seemed insensible to  
 the tears of beauty, and the claims of relation-  
 ship : but when she offered Calais as a security,  
 he lent her twenty thousand crowns, and per-  
 mitted Brezé, the seneschal of Normandy, to  
 follow her fortunes with two thousand men.  
 Oct. After an absence of five months she returned,  
 eluded the pursuit of the English fleet, and sum-  
 moned to her standard her Scottish allies on the  
 borders, and the friends of her family in Nor-  
 thumberland. Her hopes were cheered with a  
 temporary gleam of success. Three strong for-  
 tresses, Bamborough, Alnwick, and Dunstan-

<sup>7</sup> Her husband James II. had been accidentally killed in 1460 by the bursting of a cannon.

<sup>8</sup> Hume, Douglas, ii. 21. Rym. xi. 484—488. Wyrecest. 493.

burgh fell into her hands.<sup>9</sup> But when the earl of Warwick arrived with twenty thousand men, and intelligence was received of the advance of Edward with an equal number, the Lancastrians separated to garrison their conquests, and the queen with her French auxiliaries repaired to their ships. The winds and the waves now seemed to have conspired against her: part of her fleet with all her treasures was dashed against the rocks: five hundred foreigners, who intrenched themselves in Holy island, were killed or made prisoners by the lord Ogle: and Margaret and Brezé in a fishing boat carried the melancholy intelligence to their friends in Berwick. Edward proceeded no farther than Newcastle. He laboured under diseases caused by immoderate indulgence. But Warwick dividing the royal army into three bodies, besieged at the same time the three fortresses, which made a brave and obstinate resistance.<sup>10</sup> At length Bamborough and Dunstanburgh were surrendered on condition, that the duke of Somerset, sir Richard Percy, and some others, should take an oath of fealty to Edward and recover their estates and honours, and that the earl of Pembroke, the lord Roos, and the rest of the two garrisons should be conducted in safety to Scotland.<sup>11</sup> Alnwick still bade defiance

CHAP.  
III.

Nov. 3.

She is  
ship-  
wrecked.

Dec. 9.

Dec. 24.

1463.  
Jan. 5.<sup>9</sup> Wyrcest. 493, 494. Duclos, Hist. of Lew. XI. Monstrel. iii. 95,<sup>10</sup> Fab. 493. Fenn, i. 273—279. Stow, 416.<sup>11</sup> The reason of this difference was that the king had it not in his

CHAP. III. to the besiegers ; and an army of Lancastrians advanced apparently to its relief. Warwick drew up his forces to receive them : but the lord Hungerford, the son of Brezé, and a few knights, having cut their way to their friends in a sally from the walls, Margaret's army retired, and the garrison, deserted by its leaders, capitulated. Edward was satisfied with the conduct of Somerset and Percy on this occasion. He repealed their attainders with the consent of parliament, restored to them their lands, granted a pension to Somerset, and re-established Percy in the possession of Bamborough and Dunstanburgh. But Alnwick was given to sir John Ashley, to the great offence of sir Ralph Gray, a partisan of the Yorkists, who had formerly won it for Edward, and now expected to possess it again.<sup>12</sup>

Her adventure in a forest.

The spirit and activity of Margaret exposed her during this winter campaign to numerous privations and dangers. On one occasion as she was riding secretly with her son and the seneschal through a wild and mountainous district, they were surprised by a party of banditti, who despoiled them of their money, jewels, and every other article of value. It is probable that the queen concealed her quality, or such

---

power to restore the lands of the latter, because they had been given away to his friends. So I understand Wyrcester, 495.

<sup>12</sup> Wyrcest. 494—496. Rot. Parl. v. 511.

distinguished captives would have been more carefully guarded. The ruffians quarrelled about the partition of the booty: menaces were uttered, and swords drawn: when Margaret, watching her opportunity, grasped her son by the arm, and plunged into the thickest part of the wood. She had not proceeded far when another robber made his appearance. The queen, with the intrepidity of despair, advanced to meet him: and taking the young Edward by the hand, "Friend," said she, "I intrust to your loyalty 'the son of your king.'" This address awakened his generosity. He took them both under his protection, and conducted them to the quarters of the Lancastrians.<sup>13</sup> Henry for security had been conveyed to the castle of Hardlough in Merionethshire, commanded by David ap Jevan ap Eynion, who in defiance of repeated acts of attainder refused to submit to Edward:<sup>14</sup> the queen, accompanied by the duke of Exeter, Brezé, and two hundred exiles, sailed to Sluys in Flanders, and was received with real kindness by the count of Charolais, and with outward distinction by his father the duke of Burgundy. To her solicitations in favour of her husband, that prince refused to listen: but he gave her a supply of money for her present ex-

April.

<sup>13</sup> Monstrel. iii. 96.<sup>14</sup> Rot. Parl. v. 486. 512. Monstrelet says Henry was in Wales in one of the strongest fortresses in the island. I have therefore placed him at Hardlough. Monst. iii. 96.

CHAP.

III.



Battles of  
Hedgley  
moor and  
Hexham

1464.  
April 25.

penses, and forwarded her in safety as far as the dutchy of Bar in Lorrain, belonging to her father. There she fixed her residence, watching with anxiety the course of events, and consoling her sorrows with the hope of yet placing her husband or her son on the English throne.<sup>15</sup>

The Lancastrians, though by the conclusion of an armistice with France and another with Burgundy Edward had cut off the hope of foreign assistance,<sup>16</sup> resolved to try again the fortune of war. Henry was summoned to put himself at the head of a body of exiles and Scots ; Somerset, notwithstanding his submission, hastened from his own county, through Wales and Lancashire, to join his former friends : Percy assembled all the adherents of his family ; and the resentment of Gray prompted him to surprise the castle of Alnwick, and to hold it against Edward. But their designs were disconcerted by the promptitude of Nevil lord Montague, the warden of the east marches. He defeated and killed Percy at Hedgley moor, near Wooller,<sup>17</sup> and advanced with four thousand men to surprise Somerset in his camp on the banks of the Dilswater, near Hexham. That unfortunate nobleman, whose forces did not ex-

<sup>15</sup> Wyreest. 496, 497. It was said that the duke of Burgundy gave her 2000 crowns, 1000 to Brezé, and one hundred to each of her maids. Monstrel. iii. 96.

<sup>16</sup> Rym. x. 508.

<sup>17</sup> The others fled : Percy refused, “ and died like a man.” Come home fuit occise. Year-book, Term. Pasch. 4 Ed. IV. 19.

CHAP.  
III.  
May 15.

May 18.

July,

ceed five hundred men, endeavoured to save himself by flight : but was taken, beheaded the same day, and buried in the abbey. Three days later the lords Roos and Hungerford met with the same fate on the sandhill at Newcastle ; and many of their followers were successively executed in that town and at York.<sup>18</sup> Of those who escaped, the major part followed Gray to the castle of Bamborough, which was immediately besieged by the earl of Warwick. This impregnable fortress might have defied his efforts, had not a wall by accident fallen on the commander ; and the garrison, not expecting him to recover, hastened to surrender without requiring any stipulation in his favour. But Gray was carefully nursed by the cruelty of the victors, and reserved for the more disgraceful death of a traitor. He was conducted to the king at Doncaster, and received the following sentence from Tiptof earl of Worcester, and constable of England. “ Sir Ralph Gray, for “ thy treason the king had ordained that thou “ shouldst have thy spurs stricken off by the “ hard heels, by the hand of the master cook, “ who is here present. Moreover, he had or- “ dained here as thou mayest see, the kings of “ arms and heralds, and thine own proper coat “ of arms, which they should tear off thy body, “ that thou mightest be degraded as well of thy

<sup>18</sup> Wyrcest. 497, 498. Fab. 494. Fenn, i. 284.

CHAP. III. “ worship, noblesse, and arms, as of thy knight-hood. Also here is another coat of thine arms reversed, the which thou shouldest wear on thy body, going to thy death-wards, for that belongeth to thee after the law. Notwithstanding, the degrading thee of knighthood, and of thine arms, and thy noblesse, the king pardoneth for the sake of thy noble grandfather, who suffered trouble for the king’s most noble predecessors. Now, sir Ralph, this shall be thy penance. Thou shalt go on thy feet to the town’s end, and there thou shalt be laid down, and drawn to a scaffold made for thee, and thou shalt have thy head smitten off, thy body to be buried in the Friars, and thy head where the king’s pleasure shall be.” This sentence was immediately executed.<sup>19</sup>

Henry is made prisoner,

Henry, who had fled from Hexham before the arrival of Montague, was so closely pursued that three of his servants were taken clothed in gowns of blue velvet, and on them was found his cap of state, embroidered with two crowns of gold, and ornamented with pearls. He had however the good fortune to escape, and sought an asylum

<sup>19</sup> Wyrcest. 499. Stow, 418. In the year-book it is said that the degrading part of the sentence was actually carried into execution: *et le cause del cel punishment de luy en tel maner, fuit per cause de son perjury et doublenesse, que il avoit fait al roy Henry le size jadis roy, &c.—et auxy al roy Edward le quart, qui ore est. Term. Pasch. 4 Ed. IV. 20.*

1465.  
July.

among the natives of Lancashire and Westmoreland, a people sincerely devoted to his interests.<sup>20</sup> Their fidelity enabled him for more than a year to elude the vigilance and researches of the government: but he was at last betrayed by the perfidy of a monk of Abingdon; and taken by the servants of sir James Harrington, as he sate at dinner in Waddington hall in Yorkshire. At Islington the unfortunate king was met by the earl of Warwick, who ordered by proclamation that no one should shew him any respect, tied his feet to the stirrups as a prisoner, led him thrice round the pillory, and conducted him to the Tower. There he was treated with humanity, but kept in the most rigorous confinement for some years.<sup>21</sup>

After the flight from Hexham the Lancastrians abandoned the contest; and the conqueror had leisure to reward his partisans, and attend to the confirmation of his throne. Lord Montague was created earl of Northumberland, and Lord Herbert earl of Pembroke: another long list of attainders contributed to exhaust the resources of his opponents and to add to those of his own par-

Edward's  
treaties  
with fo-  
reign  
powers.

<sup>20</sup> He was during this time frequently concealed in the house of John Machell, at Crakenthorp in Westmoreland. Rym. xi. 575.

<sup>21</sup> Rym. xi. 548. Wyrcest. 504. Fab. 494. Monstrel. iii. 119. Harrington received for his services the lands belonging to Tunstal of Thurland castle to the amount of 100*l.* per annum: his associates, who were principally Tempests, and Talbots, had annuities out of Bolland and Tickel, till they could be provided with lands. Rot. Parl. v. 584.

CHAP.

III.

~~~

tisans: and an act of resumption was passed to enable the king to live on the income of the crown, but was clogged, as usual, with so many exceptions as to render it useless.²² From internal polity he turned his thoughts to his relations with foreign states. To the pope he had already notified his accession, and sent an abstract of the arguments on which he founded his claim. The answer of Pius II. was civil, but reserved: and while the pontiff congratulated the king on his elevation to the regal dignity, he cautiously abstained from any expression, which might be deemed an approbation of his title.²³

²² Rot. Parl. v. 511—548. In this parliament was made a law respecting dress, forbidding any man or woman under the estate of a lord to wear cloth of gold, or cloth wrought with gold, or furs of sables; any person under the estate of a knight to wear velvet, satin, or silk made like to velvet or satin, or furs of ermine; any yeoman to wear stuffing in his doublet but only the lining; or any one under the estate of a lord to wear gown, jacket or cloak, which did not reach to his thighs, or shoes with pikes above two inches in length. Rot. Parl. v. 504. “Ever since the year 1382,” says Stow, “the pikes of shoes and boots were of such length that they were fain to be tied up to their knees with chains of silver, or at the least with silk laces.” Stow, 429. Such interference with private expenditure was very common, and at the same time very useless. Its object, as we learn from the rolls, was to prevent the “impoverishment of the realm,” by the sums of money sent into “strange countries” in exchange for articles of luxury. Rot. Parl. ibid.

²³ Rym. xi. 489. This pontiff had always favoured Henry, though his legate, Francesco Copini, bishop of Terni, had favoured Richard duke of York, and his son Edward. He had even presumed to excommunicate their opponents: and the pontiff in consequence had deposed him, and sent him to a monastery to do penance for life.

With Scotland, which had so long offered an asylum to his enemies, Edward concluded a peace for fifteen, and afterwards prolonged it for fifty-five years. What measures the policy of Louis of France might have pursued, is uncertain: but that monarch was so harassed by the war of “the public good,” as it was called, that he had no leisure or temptation to intermeddle with the concerns of foreign states: and the two most powerful of the French princes, the dukes of Burgundy and Bretagne, had entered into alliances defensive and offensive with the king of England. Treaties almost similar were signed between him and the king's of Denmark and Poland in the north and east, and those of Castile and Arragon in the south, so that he might consider himself on terms of amity with almost all the great powers in Europe.²⁴

In these circumstances the king no longer hesitated to acknowledge in public a marriage, which he had some time before contracted in private. Ever since the battle of Towton he had resigned the management of affairs to the wisdom and activity of the Nevils; and had de-

His clan-
destine
marriage.

Raynald, vii. 68. 122, 123. It would appear, however, that he was afterwards liberated: for Edward appointed him his procurator in the court of Rome, granted him an annuity of 100*l.* gave him permission to distribute the royal livery to twelve of his friends, and authorized him and his two brothers to bear on the upper part of their coat of arms the white rose, the device of the house of York. All these grants were confirmed by parliament. Rym. xi. 479, 480.

²⁴ Rot. Parl. v. 622. Rym. xi. 525. 532. 536. 551. 557, &c.

CHAP.
III.1464.
April 30.

voted his own attention to the pursuit of pleasure. They had frequently urged him to marry into some royal or princely family, which might contribute to support him against his competitor: but the king felt no inclination to shackle himself with the chains of matrimony; and foreign princes were not anxious to offer their daughters to one, whose claim to the crown was disputed, and whose possession of it was still precarious. It chanced that Edward visited Jacquetta the dutchess of Bedford, and her husband Wydevile lord Rivers, at Grafton: where he saw their daughter Elizabeth, a woman of superior beauty and accomplishments, and the relict of sir John Gray, a Lancastrian, who had fallen at the second battle of St. Alban's. The lady Gray seized the opportunity to throw herself at the feet of her sovereign, and solicited him to reverse the attainder of her late husband in favour of her destitute children. The king pitied the suppliant: and that pity soon grew into love. To marry a woman so far beneath him, without the advice of his council, and at a moment when his throne tottered under him, was a dangerous experiment. But the virtue of Elizabeth was proof against the arts of her royal lover, and his passion scorned the cooler calculations of prudence. About the end of April 1464, when the friends of Henry were assembling their forces in Northumberland, he repaired to Stony Stratford, whence early on the morn-

ing of the first of May, he stole in great secrecy to Grafton. The marriage ceremony was performed by a priest in the presence of his clerk, of the dutches of Bedford, and of two female attendants. After an hour or two Edward returned to Stony Stratford, and, pretending lassitude from hunting, shut himself up in his chamber. Two days afterwards he invited himself to Grafton. To divert the attention of the courtiers, their time was wholly occupied with the pleasures of the chace, nor did the king and Elizabeth ever meet in private, till the dutchess had ascertained that the whole family had retired to rest. Thus he spent four days; and then returning to London, issued orders for his army to join him in Yorkshire. But before his arrival in the north the war had been ended by the two victories of Hedgley moor and Hexham: and after his return it became the principal subject of his solicitude, to open the matter to his counsellors, and to obtain their approbation.²⁵

CHAP.
III.
May 1.

May 3.

May 7.

May 10.

²⁵ By all our ancient historians, with the exception of the unknown author of the Fragment, published by Hearne at the end of Sprot, the marriage of Edward has been fixed on the 1st of May, 1464. That writer dates it in the preceding year (p. 293.): and it has been urged in favour of the earlier date, that Edward in 1464 was too much occupied with the war to think of marriage, and that the anonymous writer expressly refutes from his own knowledge those, who place it later. Carte, ii. 770. But it may be observed that, according to the dates in Rymer, the king did not summon his army till the ninth day after that on which the marriage is said to have taken place, and that the anonymous writer refutes, not those who place the marriage in a different year from himself, but

CHAP.
III.The queen
is acknow-
ledged and
crowned.
Sept. 29.

Dec.

For this purpose he summoned at Michaelmas a general council of the peers to meet in the abbey of Reading: and the duke of Clarence and the earl of Warwick, though they are supposed to have disapproved of the marriage, taking Elizabeth by the hand, introduced her to the rest of the lords, by whom, in the presence of the king, she was acknowledged and complimented as queen. Soon afterwards a second council was held at Westminster: and an income was settled on her of four thousand marks a year.²⁶ But, notwithstanding this outward shew of approbation, there are many who murmured in private, and could ill disguise their jealousy at the elevation to the throne of a woman, whose father a few years ago was no more than a simple knight. To excuse the king, his friends circulated reports, that his inexperience had been deceived by the arts of the dutchess and her daughter: that philtres and magic had been employed to extort his consent: and that he had since repented of his precipitancy, and struggled, but in vain, to dissolve the marriage.²⁷ But Edward himself, that he might silence those who objected the meanness of her birth, invited her maternal

those who say the king was to have married the dowager queen of Scotland, p. 293, 294. Indeed he is at variance with himself. For though he places the marriage in 1463, he says it was in the same year as the battle of Hexham (292), which certainly took place in 1464. For the particulars of the marriage see that writer, and Fabian, p. 494, 425.

²⁶ Wyrcest. 500, 501.²⁷ Fab. 495.

uncle, James of Luxemburgh, who with a retinue of one hundred knights and gentlemen attended her coronation.²⁸ On the feast of the ascension the king created thirty-eight knights of the bath, of whom four were prudently selected from the citizens of London. The next day the mayor, aldermen and different companies met the queen at Shooter's hill, and conducted her in state to the Tower. On the Saturday, to gratify the curiosity of the populace, she rode in a horse litter through the principal streets, preceded by the newly created knights. Her coronation followed on the Sunday, and the rest of the week was devoted to feasting, tournaments, and public rejoicings.²⁹

The elevation of Elizabeth was the elevation of her family. By the influence of the king her five sisters were married to the young duke of Buckingham, and to the heirs of the earl of Essex, the earl of Arundel, the earl of Kent, and the lord Herbert: her brother Anthony to the daughter of the late lord Scales, with whom he obtained the estate and title: her younger brother John in his twentieth year to Catharine, the dowager but opulent dutchess of Norfolk, in her eightieth:³⁰ and her son Thomas by her former

CHAP.
III.
1465.
May 22.

May 26.

All her
relations
provided
for.

²⁸ Monstrel. iii, 105.

²⁹ Wrycest. 501—503. Fragment ad fin, Sprot, 294, 295.

³⁰ Juvencula fere 80 annorum. Wyrcest. 501. On account of the disparity of their ages, Wyrcester calls this maritagium diabolicum. But adds, vindicta Bernardi inter eosdem postea patuit. Ibid. What was the vindicta Bernardi?

CHAP.
III.
~~~

husband to Anne, the king's niece, and daughter and heiress to the duke of Exeter. We are assured by a contemporary that these marriages were viewed with jealousy by most of the nobility. Many saw those projects disconcerted which they had formed for the advancement of their own children, particularly the earl of Warwick, who had previously solicited the hand of the heiress of Exeter for his own nephew; all considered the sudden rise of the new family as an injury offered to themselves. To add to their discontent, the lord Mountjoy, treasurer of England, was removed to make place for the queen's father, who was created earl Rivers, and soon afterwards, at the resignation of the earl of Worcester, lord high constable.<sup>31</sup>

Discontent of the Nevils.

Of the three Nevils, George the youngest brother, bishop of Exeter, had received the seals on Edward's accession, and had lately been transferred to the archiepiscopal see of York.<sup>32</sup> The next, the lord Montague, was warden of the east marches of Scotland, and with the title of earl of Northumberland had obtained the estates of the Percies. The earl of Warwick, the third, had hitherto been the king's chief minister and general. He held the wardenship of the west marches, the office of chamberlain, and the government of Calais, the most lucrative and im-

<sup>31</sup> Wyrcest, 500, 501, 505, 506, 507.<sup>32</sup> The reader may see the particulars of the feast at his installation, and the names of the guests in Lel. Coll. vi. 1—14.

portant appointment in the gift of the sovereign.<sup>33</sup> Hitherto they had governed the king and the kingdom: now they foresaw the diminution of their influence by the ascendancy of a rival family. Edward had grown weary of the state of tutelage in which they detained him: the Wydeviles urged him to emancipate himself from the control of his own servants; and his affections were insensibly transferred from the men, who had given him the title, to those who exhorted him to exercise the authority, of a king. This coldness was first made public in the year 1467, when a marriage was suggested between Margaret the king's sister, and Charles count of Charolois, son to the duke of Burgundy, who as he was sprung from the house of Lancaster, had always favoured the friends of Henry, but now from motives of policy sought an alliance with Edward to protect himself against his adversary the king of France. Warwick, who had long avowed himself the enemy of Charles,<sup>34</sup> con-

<sup>33</sup> Comines, who was often at Calais, tells us on the authority of the chief officer of the staple, that the government of that town was worth 15,000 crowns a year. Com. I. iii. c. 4.—Stow adds that Warwick was a great favourite with the people, on account of his hospitality. “When he came to London, he held such an house, “ that six oxen were eaten at a breakfast, and every tavern was full “ of his meat; for who that had any acquaintance in that house, “ he should have had as much sodden (boiled) and roast, as he “ might carry upon a long dagger.” Stow, 421.

<sup>34</sup> Cont. Hist. Croyl. 551. Capitali odio prosecutus est hominem illum, scilicet Carolum. Ibid.

CHAP.

III.

~~~

denned the project, and advised a marriage with one of the French princes. To his objections were opposed the advantages which would result from the intended alliance, to the king by converting the enemy of his family into a friend, and to the nation by affording greater facility to the commercial intercourse between England and the Netherlands. Edward, perhaps to free himself from an imperious counsellor, commissioned Warwick to treat with the king of France, who received him at Rouen with all the respect due to a sovereign prince, gave him for his residence the house next to his own, and by a private door repeatedly visited him in secret for the space of twelve days.³⁵ During the earl's absence the bastard of Burgundy arrived in London under the pretence of performing feats of arms with the lord Scales, but at the same time to negotiate the intended marriage. When the parliament assembled, the chancellor did not attend on account of a real or affected sickness: but Edward, whose suspicions had been awakened by the conferences between Warwick and the French king, went to the house of the prelate with a numerous retinue, required him to deliver up the seals, and, in virtue of an act of resumption passed at the time, took from him two manors, which he had formerly obtained from the crown.³⁶ The treaty of marriage was, how-

1467.
May 6.

June 3.

June 8.

³⁵ Monstrel. App. 22. Fragment, 297.³⁶ Rym. xi. 578.

ever, interrupted by the unexpected death of the duke of Burgundy, and the sudden departure of the negociator in consequence of the news.

CHAP.
III.
~~~

Warwick immediately returned, bringing with him ambassadors from France, whose object it was to prevent the alliance between Edward and Charles. They had been instructed to offer the king an annual pension from Louis, and to consent that his pretensions to Normandy and Aquitaine should be referred to the decision of the pope, who should be bound to give judgment within four years. But Edward received them coldly, left the capital, and appointed an inferior agent to hear, or rather to reject, their proposals. The earl by increased attention sought to compensate for the neglect of the king : but he was not sparing of hints and menaces in the company of his friends, and on the departure of the ambassadors retired in discontent to his castle at Middleham in Yorkshire.<sup>37</sup> During his absence the princess gave her consent to the marriage in a great council of peers at Kingston ; and soon afterwards an emissary from queen Margaret, who had been taken in Wales, informed the king that Warwick was considered in the French court as a secret partisan of the house of Lancaster. As the earl refused to quit his castle, he was confronted with his accuser at Middleham : and though the charge was de-

July 1.

Oct. 1.

<sup>37</sup> Wyrcest. 510. Duclos, Hist. of Louis XI.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~  
Reconcili-
ation.
1468.
Jan. 8.

clared to be groundless, the king selected a body guard of two hundred archers, who were ordered to attend always on his person. Every thing seemed to threaten a rupture, when their common friends interfered, by whose means the archbishop of York and the earl Rivers met at Nottingham, and settled the terms of reconciliation. The prelate conducted his brother to Coventry, where he was graciously received by the king: all subjects of offence between him and the lords Herbert, Stafford, and Audeley were reciprocally forgiven; and the archbishop, as the reward of his services, recovered the possession of his two manors.³⁸ During the next year Warwick publicly appeared at court: when Edward conducted his sister to the coast, on her way to Flanders, she rode behind the earl through the streets of the metropolis:³⁹ and on the discovery of a conspiracy in favour of Henry, he sate among the judges on the trial of the accused. But these outward appearances of harmony and confidence did not deceive the people: they foresaw the storm which was gathering; and while they pitied the real or imaginary wrongs of their favourite, laid the blame on the ambition of the queen and her relatives.⁴⁰

³⁸ The grant of the manors is dated 1469 in Rymer (x. 642), which proves that Wyrcester is wrong, unless it be a second grant for greater security.

³⁹ She was married to Charles, now duke of Burgundy, at Damme on the 3d of June, at five in the morning. Fenn, ii. 4.

⁴⁰ See in particular Wyrcester, 510—515.

I have been the more particular in these details, that the reader might observe the origin and progress of the jealousies and dissensions, which dissolved the friendship between Warwick and Edward, led to the flight of the latter, and the restoration of Henry.⁴¹ But with respect to most of the events which follow, he must be content with a bare and very imperfect narrative. For though they were extraordinary in their nature, and most important in their re-

" Many writers tell us that the enmity of Warwick arose from his disappointment, caused by Edward's clandestine marriage with Elizabeth. If we may believe them, the earl was at the very time in France negotiating on the part of the king a marriage with Bona of Savoy, sister to the queen of France; and having succeeded in his mission, brought back with him the count of Dampmartin as ambassador from Louis. To me the whole story appears a fiction. 1. It is not to be found in the more ancient historians. 2. Warwick was not at the time in France. On the 20th of April, ten days before the marriage, he was employed in negotiating a truce with the French envoys in London (Rym. xi. 521), and on the 26th of May, about three weeks after it, was appointed to treat of another truce with the king of Scots (Rym. xi. 424). 3. Nor could he bring Dampmartin with him to England. For that nobleman was committed a prisoner to the Bastile in September, 1463, and remained there till May, 1465. Monstrel. iii. 97. 109. Three contemporary and well informed writers, the two continuators of the history of Croyland, and Wyrcester, attribute his discontent to the marriages and honours granted to the Wydeviles, and the marriage of the princess Elizabeth with the duke of Burgundy: and a fourth tells us from the mouth of Edward himself, that the king's suspicion of Warwick's fidelity arose from the secret conferences of that nobleman with Louis at Rouen. See Cont. Hist. Croyl. 542. 55. Wyrcester, 504—510. Fragment, 299. Wyrcester's annals end in 1468: from a letter in Fenn, ii. 112, it is probable that he died in 1472.

CHAP.
III.
~~~Clarence  
married to  
the daugh-  
ter of  
Warwick.

sults, yet in the confused and mutilated records of the time, it is impossible to discover the immediate causes by which they were produced, or the secret relations, which connected them with each other.

1. George, the elder of the surviving brothers of Edward, had received with the title of duke of Clarence, a proportionate income, and had been named to the lieutenancy of Ireland, which office on account of his age he was permitted to execute by his deputy, the earl of Worcester. This young prince, dissatisfied at the ascendancy of the Wydeviles, absented himself frequently from court, and preferred to the company of his brother that of the earl of Warwick. Another cause for this preference may, perhaps, be found in the attachment which he had formed for Isabella, the daughter of that nobleman. Clarence was yet the next male heir to the throne : and Edward, aware of the ambition of Warwick, earnestly laboured to prevent the marriage of the parties. His efforts were ineffectual : and the ceremony was performed without his consent, in the church of St. Nicholas at Calais, by the uncle of the bride, the archbishop of York.

1469.  
July 11.Insurrec-  
tion in  
Yorkshire.

2. It is a singular circumstance that at the very time, when this prelate and his brother met at Calais to celebrate the marriage in defiance of the king, an insurrection should burst forth in that part of the realm, where they possessed the principal influence. Its ostensible

cause was the determination of the farmers of Yorkshire to resist the demand of a thrave of corn from every plough-land, made by the warden of the hospital of St. Leonard's. The thrave had been always paid since the time of king Athelstan: of late it had been refused; and when the officers attempted to levy its value by distress, the peasants flew to arms, chose for their leader Robert Hilyard, commonly called Robin of Redesdale, and threatened to march to the south, and reform the abuses of government. The citizens of York were alarmed by the approach of fifteen thousand insurgents: but the earl of Northumberland, Warwick's brother, to prevent the destruction of the city, attacked and defeated them with considerable slaughter. Their leader was executed on the field of battle.

3. This circumstance seems to acquit one of the Nevils from all share in the insurrection: yet his subsequent inactivity, and the conduct of his two brothers prove, that whatever were its original cause, they were willing at least to convert it to their own purposes. Northumberland could, if he had pleased, have instantly extinguished the flame: he carelessly looked on, till it grew into a general conflagration. The rebels, though repulsed, were neither dispersed nor followed: and in the place of the leader whom they had lost, found two others of more illustrious name, and more powerful con-

Edward is  
in distress.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

nexions, the sons of the lords Fitz-hugh and Latimer, the one the nephew, the other the cousin german of Warwick. These young men, though nominally at the head of the army, in reality obeyed the commands of sir John Conyers, an old and experienced officer. The claim of the hospital was now forgotten. Their avowed object was to meet the earl of Warwick, that with his advice they might remove from the king's councils the Wydeviles, the authors of the taxes that impoverished, and of the calamities that oppressed the nation. At the name of Warwick his tenants crowded from every quarter: and in a few days the insurgents were said to amount to sixty thousand men.⁴²

⁴² During this insurrection reports of witchcraft were circulated against Jacquetta, the king's mother-in-law. She afterwards exhibited the following complaint to Edward: "To the king our "sovereign lord sheweth and lamentably complaineth unto your "highness your humble and true liege-woman Jacquetta, dutchess "of Bedford....that when she at all time hath and yet doth "truly believe on God according to the faith of holy church, as a "true christian woman ought to do, yet Thomas Wake, esq..... "hath caused her to be brought in a common noise and dislander "of witchcraft throughout a great part of your realm, surmising "that she should have used witchcraft and sorcery, insomuch as "the said Wake caused to be brought to Warwick at your last "being there, sovereign lord (he was then in the custody of Clarence, Warwick, and the archbishop), to divers of the lords being "there present, an image of lead made like a man of arms con- "taining the length of a man's finger, and broken in the middle, "and made fast with a wire, saying that it was made by your "said oratrice, to use with the said witchcraft and sorcery: where "she, nor none for her or by her ever saw it, God knoweth." Of

On the first intelligence of the rising in Yorkshire Edward had summoned his retainers : and in the interval making a progress by the monasteries in Suffolk and Norfolk, fixed his head quarters at the castle of Fotheringay. Here the advance of the insurgents, their increasing numbers, and their menaces of vengeance, created considerable alarm : and it was resolved that the Wydeviles should retire from the army, and secrete themselves in their different seats in the country. From Fotheringay the king marched to Newark : but alarmed at the signs of disaffection which he every where observed, turned back to the castle of Nottingham. Thence he dispatched letters written with his own hand to his brother Clarence, the earl of Warwick, and the archbishop, requesting them to hasten to him at Nottingham with the same retinue, which usually attended them in time of peace. In the note to Warwick he added these significant words : “ and we do not believe that ye should “ be of any such disposition toward *us*, as the “ rumour here runneth, considering the trust “ and affection we bear you. And, cousin, ne “ think but ye shall be to us welcome.”⁴³ But

July 9

course her innocence was admitted by the king. Rot. Parl. vi. 232. I have mentioned this, that the reader may see on what frivolous grounds these accusations were brought, and how anxious the highest personages were to guard against them.

⁴³ Fenn, ii. 40. The letters are dated at Nottingham, July 9th, without any year. I have placed them in 1469, because Edward

CHAP. III. the noblemen, on whose attachment and services he rested his chief hopes were the lords Herbert and Stafford, lately created earls of Pembroke and Devon. The former, who had reduced the strong castle of Hardlough, hastened from Wales to the aid of his sovereign with eight thousand men, the latter with five thousand joined him at Banbury: but an unfortunate dispute about quarters irritated Stafford, and he withdrew his troops to another town at the distance of twelve miles. A numerous party of the insurgents seized the opportunity to attack the loyalists the next day at Edgecote, who, without archers, and deserted by their friends the Welshmen, offered an easy victory to the multitude of their enemies. Five thousand with their leader perished on the field: during the pursuit the victors discovered the earl Rivers and sir John Wydevile, the father and brother of Elizabeth, in the forest of Dean. They were seized, brought to Northampton, and executed by the order, or the pretended order, of Clarence and Warwick. Even Stafford did not escape. He was afterwards beheaded at Bridgewater, some say by command of the king in revenge for the loss of the battle, others with more pro-

Battle at
Edgecote.
July 26.

was then at Nottingham; Clarence, Warwick, and the archbishop were together at Calais, and consequently could receive letters by the same messengers; and actually did all three wait on the king a few weeks after. See Cont. Hist. Croyl. 542, 543.

bability by the fury of the people, who hated him as a friend of the Wydeviles.⁴⁴

4. Clarence, Warwick, and the archbishop had now landed in England, and taking with them the archbishop of Canterbury, proceeded in search of the king; whom they found at Olney, plunged in the deepest distress by the defeat of Pembroke, the murder of the Wydeviles, and the desertion of his friends. At the first interview they approached him with all those expressions of respect which are due from the subject to the sovereign; and Edward, deceived by these appearances, freely acquainted them with his suspicions and displeasure. But his imprudence was soon checked by the discovery that he was in reality their captive: and he hastily accepted those excuses, which it would have been dangerous to refuse. The few loyalists who had remained with the king, dispersed by the permission of Warwick: at his command the insurgents returned to their homes loaden with plunder: and Edward accompanied the two brothers to Warwick; whence for greater security he was removed to Middleham, under the custody of the archbishop.⁴⁵

CHAP.
III.

~~~~~  
Edward is  
made pri-  
soner and  
confined.

<sup>44</sup> See Cont. Hist. Croyl. 543. 551. Fragment, 300, 301. Stow, 422.

<sup>45</sup> Cont. Hist. Croyl. 543. 551. By modern writers the captivity of Edward has been scornfully rejected. Hume says it is contradicted by records, Carte and Henry pronounce it incredible and romantic. But, if it were, they should have accounted for what in that case were more inconceivable, the mention which is made

CHAP.  
III.  
He is re-  
leased.

England exhibited at this moment the extraordinary spectacle of two rival kings, each confined in prison, Henry in the Tower, Edward in Yorkshire. Whatever might have been the intentions of Warwick, they were disconcerted by the friends of the former, who seized the opportunity to unfurl his standard in the marches of Scotland, under sir Humphrey Nevil.<sup>46</sup> The conduct of the earl proved that the suspicions previously entertained of his acting in concert

of it by almost every writer of the age, whether foreigner or native, even by Commines (iii. 4), who says he received the principal incidents of Edward's history from the mouth of Edward himself; and by the annalist of Croyland (551), who was high in the confidence of that monarch. Hume's arguments are, 1<sup>o</sup>. That the records in Rymer allow of no interval for the imprisonment of Edward in 1470; and 2<sup>o</sup>. That it is not mentioned, as, if it had happened, it must have been in the proclamation of Henry against Clarence and Warwick of the same year. But in the first place, he has mistaken the date of the imprisonment, which was not in 1470, but in 1469 (ea *estate* quæ *contingebat* anno nono regis, qui erat annus domini 1469. Cont. Croyl, 551): and in the second the proclamation ought not to have named it; because it confines itself to the enumeration of those offences only, which had been committed after the pardon granted to them at Christmas 1469 (Rot. Parl. vi. 233). But there is a record, which places the existence of the imprisonment beyond a doubt, the attaïnder of Clarence, in which the king enumerates it among his offences: “as in jupartyng the king's royll “estate, persone and life *in straite warde*, putting him thereby from “all his libertie, afre procuring grete commocions.” Rot. Parl. vi. 193. I may add, that in the records in Rymer for 1469, there is a sufficient interval of three months from the 12th of May to the 17th of August, the very time assigned for the insurrection and imprisonment.

<sup>46</sup> Sir Humphrey had fled from the defeat at Hexham in 1464, and concealed himself during five years in a cave, opening into the river Derwent. Year-book, Ter. Pasch. 4 Ed. IV. 20.

Aug. 17.

Nov. 6.

with the partisans of that monarch, were groundless. He summoned all the lieges of Edward to oppose the rebels: but the summons was disregarded, and men refused to fight in defence of a prince, of whose fate they were ignorant. He therefore found it necessary to exhibit the king in public at York, having first obtained from him a grant of the office of justiciary of south Wales, and of all the other dignities held by the late earl of Pembroke. From York he marched into the north, defeated the Lancastrians, and conducted their leader to Edward, by whom he was condemned to lose his head on a scaffold. By what arguments or promises the king procured his liberty, we know not. A private treaty was signed: he repaired to the capital, accompanied by several lords of the party: and his return was hailed by his own friends as little short of a miracle. A council of peers was now summoned, in which, after many negotiations, Clarence and his father-in-law condescended to justify their conduct. Edward with apparent cheerfulness accepted their apology; and a general pardon was issued in favour of all persons, who had borne arms against the king from the first rising in Yorkshire under Robin of Redesdale, to the time when they were dismissed by the earl of Warwick at Olney.<sup>47</sup>

<sup>47</sup> The account of Edward's escape, which is generally given, is that the archbishop allowed him to hunt, and that one day, while

CHAP.  
III.  
His eldest  
daughter  
promised  
to George  
Nevil.

5. Elizabeth had not yet borne her husband a son, and though the eldest daughter was but four years old, Edward in this assembly asked the advice of the lords, how he should dispose of the young princess in marriage. For his own part he wished to give her to George, the son of the earl of Northumberland, and presumptive heir to all the three Nevils. His choice was unanimously approved: and the young nobleman, that his rank might approach nearer to that of his intended bride, was created duke of Bedford. This extraordinary measure has been explained on two suppositions, either that the king alarmed at the marriage between his brother and the daughter of Warwick, sought to raise up a new and opposite interest in the family; or

---

he was employed in that exercise, he was carried off by his friends (Hall, 203). That which I have given, depends on the superior authority of the historian of Croyland, who while he considers the king's liberation almost miraculous, yet asserts that it had the express consent of Warwick. *Præter omnem spem pene miraculose, non tam evasit, quam de expresso ipsius comitis consensu dimissus est*, p. 551. Stow mentions Edward's promises, and that he remained at York till after the execution of Sir Humphrey Nevil, p. 421. In Fenn there is a letter without date, which I believe refers to this period. It relates the king's return from York to London in company with the archbishop, who, however, was not permitted to enter the capital with him, but ordered to remain at the Moor, his seat in Herefordshire. The earl of Oxford, a Lancastrian, was treated in the same manner.—“The king,” adds the writer, “hath himself good language of the lords of Clarence and Warwick, and of my lords of York and Oxford, saying they be his best friends; but his household men have other language, so that what shall hastily fall I cannot say.” Fenn, i. 294.

that, as the price of his liberation, he had promised to give his daughter to this young nobleman, the son of a brother who had never offended him, and the nephew of the two brothers, who kept him in confinement.

6. To those, who were not in the confidence of the parties, their reconciliation appeared sincere. For greater security a pardon for all offences committed before the feast of Christmas was granted to Clarence and Warwick ; and in consequence of the restoration of peace within the realm, proposals were made to invade France in concert with the king's brother-in-law, the duke of Burgundy. The French ambassadors, who came over probably to learn the state of the different parties, were so much deceived, that Louis XI. in consequence of their representations, published an order to all his subjects to meet in arms on the first of May, that they might be in readiness to repel the threatened invasion.<sup>48</sup> Yet under this outward appearance of harmony, distrust and resentment festered in their hearts ; and a singular occurrence proved, how little faith was to be given to the protestations uttered on either side. The archbishop had invited the king to meet Clarence and Warwick at an entertainment, which he designed to give at his seat at the Moor in Hertfordshire. As Edward was washing his hands before sup-

Another  
rupture,  
and recon-  
ciliation.

1470.

<sup>48</sup> Monstrel. addit. p. 33.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

Feb.

Insurrec-
tion of sir
Robert
Welles.

per, John Ratcliffe, afterwards lord Fitz-Walter, whispered in his ear, that one hundred armed men were lying in wait to surprise, and convey him to prison. Without inquiring into the grounds of the information, he stole to the door, mounted a horse, and rode with precipitation to Windsor. His abrupt departure revived all the former dissensions ; fresh conferences were held at Baynard's castle, under the mediation of Cecily, dutchess of York, the king's mother ; and a new reconciliation was effected equally insincere with all those which had preceded it.⁴⁹

7. During these conferences the commons in Lincolnshire rose in arms. There can be little doubt that they were secretly instigated by Clarence and Warwick : openly they complained of the extortions of the officers of the household, chased sir Robert Burgh, a purveyor, out of the county, burnt his mansion, and pillaged his estates. The king, to the great surprise of his friends,⁵⁰ gave a commission to the duke and the earl to levy troops for his service : and, before he left London, sent for the Lord Welles,

⁴⁹ Fragment, 302. Fab. 499. The author of the Fragment is singularly unfortunate in his dates. He places this incident in the present year after Easter. Yet it is evident from authentic records, and subsequent events, that if it happened at all, it must have happened before Lent.

⁵⁰ Rym. xi. 652. Sir John Paston in one of his letters says “ My Lord of Warwick, as it is supposed, shall go with the king “ into Lincolnshire : some men say that his going shall do good, “ some say that it doth harm.” Fenn, ii. 32.

the father of sir Robert, who was leader of the insurgents. That irresolute nobleman at first obeyed the summons, then repenting of his word fled with sir Thomas Dymock into a sanctuary, and afterwards, on the promise of a pardon, repaired to the court. Edward insisted that he should employ his paternal authority, and command his son to submit to the royal mercy: but the young man at the same time received letters from Warwick and Clarence, exhorting him to persevere, and assuring him of speedy and powerful aid. When the king had reached Stamford, and found that sir Robert was yet in arms, he ordered the father and Dymock to be beheaded in violation of his promise: and then sent a second summons to sir Robert, who indignantly replied, that he would never trust the perfidy of the man, who had murdered his parent. This answer was, however, dictated by despair. The king attacked the insurgents at Erpingham in Rutlandshire: his artillery mowed down their ranks: their leaders were taken: and while the meaner prisoners were dismissed, sir Charles Delalaunde, and sir Robert Welles, paid the forfeit of their lives. Before their execution they ascribed their obstinacy in refusing the king's mercy to the solicitations of Clarence and Warwick.⁵¹ The earl of Worcester had been ap-

Battle of
Erping-
ham.
March 12.

March 15.
March 19.

⁵¹ Rot. Parl. vi. 144. "As the said sir Robert Welles, &c. have
"openly confessed and shewed before his said highness, the lords

CHAP.

III.

~~~

pointed lord constable: and under that cruel nobleman, the lord Willoughby lost his head at York, and several knights and gentlemen were put to the most barbarous and ignominious deaths.<sup>52</sup>

Flight of  
Clarence  
and War-  
wick.

By the premature defeat of the Lincolnshire insurgents Clarence and Warwick found themselves in a most perplexing situation. They had purposed to join sir Robert Welles on the morrow: now seeing themselves unable to cope with the king, they advanced towards Yorkshire, having previously by proclamation ordered every man able to bear arms to join them under the penalty of death.<sup>53</sup> The king was at Doncaster, when they reached Esterfield at the distance of twenty miles: and having arrayed his forces to receive them, he sent Garter king at arms to summon them to appear before him, and clear themselves of the offences laid to their charge. They immediately turned to the west, and marched to Manchester to solicit the aid of the lord Stanley, who had married the sister of Warwick. Want of provisions prevented the pursuit by the royal army, and Edward hastening to York published a proclamation, in which he enum-

March 20.

March 23.

---

“ of his blood, and the multitude of his subjects attending upon him “ in his host at this time,.....which they affirmed to be true at their “ deaths, uncomelled, unstirred, and undesired so to do.” Ibid. p. 233.

<sup>52</sup> I shall not shock the feelings of the reader by relating the cruelties mentioned by Stow, 422.

<sup>53</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 233.

rated their offences, but exhorted them to return to their duty within a certain term, assuring them, that if they could vindicate their innocence, he would accept their justification with pleasure ; and that if they could not, he would still remember that they were allied to him by blood, and had been once numbered among his dearest friends.<sup>54</sup> At the same time he took from Clarence the lieutenancy of Ireland, and gave it to the earl of Worcester ; restored to Henry Percy the earldom of Northumberland and the wardenship of the east marches, giving in compensation to Warwick's brother, who had held him ever since the battle of Towton, the barren title of marquess Montague ; and having learned that the fugitives, unable to corrupt the fidelity of the lord Stanley, had marched to the south, issued commissions to array the population of all the counties through which it was probable they would pass. From York he hastened to Nottingham ; where, as the time allotted to them had expired, he declared them traitors, and, having offered rewards for their apprehension, continued his march with the greatest expedition. But they fled more rapidly than he could pursue : and by the time that he reached Exeter, had collected ships at Dartmouth, whence they set sail for the harbour of Calais.<sup>55</sup>

March 25.

March 26.

March 31.

April 15.

<sup>54</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 233, and Fenn ii. 36.<sup>55</sup> Ibid. Rym. 654—657. The reward was 100*l.* per annum in

CHAP.

III.

They are  
excluded  
from Ca-  
lais.

Warwick had intrusted the government of Calais to a gentleman of Gascony, named Vauclerc, a knight of the garter. To his dismay and astonishment the batteries of the place opened upon him, as he attempted to enter. It was in vain that he sent an officer to remonstrate. Vauclerc, acquainted with the recent transactions in England, had resolved to play a deep, but, he trusted, a secure game. To Warwick he apologised for his conduct, by informing him that the garrison was disaffected, and would, if he landed, infallibly betray him. At the same time he dispatched a messenger to Edward with assurances of his loyalty, and his determination to preserve so important a fortress for his sovereign. What impression his reasons made on the mind of Warwick, we know not: but Edward rewarded him with the government of Calais, and the duke of Burgundy granted him a pension of a thousand crowns. The fugitives, after some deliberation, steered their course towards Normandy, captured every Flemish merchantman which fell in their way, and were received at Harfleur, with distinguished honours, by the admiral of France.<sup>56</sup>

But re-  
ceived by  
Louis XI.

Louis XI. had hitherto espoused but faintly the cause of the house of Lancaster: but he now saw the advantage to be derived from the arrival

land or 1000*l.* in money. Hence we may infer that land in this reign sold at ten years' purchase.

<sup>56</sup> Commines, iii. 4. Monstrel. addit. 34.

of Warwick and his friends; and ordered them and their ladies to be provided with the best accommodations in the neighbouring towns. Clarence and the earl were invited to his court at Amboise; where they met Henry's queen, Margaret of Anjou. No two persons had ever inflicted more serious injuries on each other than the earl and that princess: but misfortune had blunted the edge of their mutual hatred, and interest induced them to forget their past enmity. A reconciliation was speedily effected: Edward, <sup>June.</sup> Margaret's son, married Anne, the second daughter of Warwick: it was agreed that both parties should unite to restore Henry to the throne; and that in failure of issue by the prince, the crown at his death should devolve on the duke of Clarence.<sup>57</sup>

The only persons dissatisfied with this arrangement were that duke and his duchess. Clarence had hitherto been induced to follow the councils of Warwick by the prospect of succeeding to his brother on the throne: he now saw another claimant interposed between himself and the object of his ambition; and his chance of success made to depend on a distant and very uncertain contingency. His discontent was artfully fomented by the intrigues of a female agent. A lady belonging to the suite of the duchess had in the hurry of the flight been left in Eng-

Clarence  
is dissatis-  
fied.

<sup>57</sup> Com. ibid. Hall, 206, 207. Frag. 304. Lell. Coll. ii. 503.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

land: but was permitted to follow, in appearance through the attention of the king to his sister-in-law, in reality that she might carry private instructions to Clarence. She represented to that prince how unnatural it was for him to fight against his brother, and to support the cause of a family, the prosperity of which must depend on the destruction of his own. These suggestions were not lost on a mind already predisposed to receive them: and the duke found the means to assure Edward, that when the occasion should offer, he would prove himself a loyal subject and affectionate kinsman.⁵⁸

The exiles
return and
land.

The conduct of that prince during this interval is almost inexplicable. If we except the execution of some and the banishment of others, among the adherents of Warwick, he took no precautions to avert, made no preparations to meet, the approaching storm. His time was spent in gallantries and amusements: the two brothers of Warwick were received into favour; and one of them, the marquess of Montague, was honoured with the royal confidence.⁵⁹ In such circumstances no man but the infatuated monarch himself entertained a doubt of the result, if Warwick should effect a landing. That nobleman had always been the favourite, his exile had made

⁵⁸ Commines, iii. 5.

⁵⁹ Though the archbishop was allowed to remain at the Moor in Hertfordshire, "ther was belefte with hym dyverse of the kynge's servantes," evidently to watch his motions. Fenn, ii. 48.

him the idol, of the people: no ballad was popular in the towns and villages which did not resound his praise; and every pageant and public exhibition made allusions to his virtues and his misfortunes. But if Edward was indolent, his brother-in-law, the duke of Burgundy, was active. He sent emissaries to Calais to watch the conduct of Vauclerc: complained to the parliament of Paris of the reception which had been given to his enemy; sought by menaces and preparations of war to intimidate Louis; seized all the French merchandise in his territories as an indemnity for the captures made by Warwick; and dispatched a powerful squadron to blockade the mouth of the river Seine. But the Burgundian ships were dispersed by a storm; and the next morning the exiles, under the protection of a French fleet, left their anchorage; and steering across the channel, Sept. 13. landed without opposition at Plymouth and Dartmouth.⁶⁰

The incautious Edward had been drawn as far as York by an artifice of the lord Fitz-hugh, brother-in-law to Warwick, who pretended to raise a rebellion in Northumberland, and on the approach of the king, retired within the borders of Scotland.⁶¹ Thus the southern counties were

Edward is
driven out
of the
kingdom.

⁶⁰ Commynes, *ibid.* Hall, 207, 208. The duke of Burgundy wrote with unusual warmth on these subjects. Par St. George, says he in one of his letters, *si l'on n'y pourvoid, a l'aide de Dieu j'y pour-veoirai sans vos congés n'y vos raisons.* *Apud Duclos, ii. p. 11.*

⁶¹ *Fab. 500.* *Fenn, ii. 48.*

CHAP.
III.
~~~

left open to the invaders. The men of Kent had risen in arms : in London Dr. Godard preached at St. Paul's cross in favour of the title of Henry VI.: Warwick proclaimed that monarch, ordered all men between sixteen and sixty to join his standard, and marched with an army, which increased every hour, in a direct line towards Nottingham. The thoughtless king affected to treat the invasion with his usual levity : he was happy that his enemies had at last put themselves in his power ; and trusted that the duke of Burgundy would prevent their escape by sea. But the delusion was soon dissipated. Very few of those, who had been summoned, resorted to his quarters at Doncaster ; and of these few many took the first opportunity to depart. As he sate at dinner or lay in bed, word was brought that Warwick continued to approach with the utmost expedition : nor had he recovered from his surprise, before a second messenger informed him that six thousand men, who had hitherto worn the white rose, had, at the instigation of Montague, thrown away that device, and tossing their bonnets into the air, had cried, “God bless king Harry.” A battalion of guards was immediately dispatched to secure a neighbouring bridge, and the king, after a short consultation with his friends, mounting his horse, rode without stopping to the town of Lynn. He found in the harbour an English ship, and two Dutch brigs ; and embarking in them with a few noblemen and about eight hun-

dred followers, compelled the sailors to weigh anchor, and to steer immediately for the coast of Holland. The fugitives were descried by a fleet of pirates from the Hanse towns : and to escape the pursuit of these unknown enemies, the king was compelled to run his vessel on shore. He landed near Alkmaar; was received with every token of respect by Grutuse, the governor of the province ; and conducted by him to the Hague to meet the duke of Burgundy. Thus, by his presumption and inactivity, did Edward lose his crown, before he could strike one blow to preserve it.<sup>62</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
Oct. 3.

Queen Elizabeth with her family had remained in the Tower : but perceiving that the tide of loyalty had turned in favour of Henry, she left that fortress secretly, and fled with her mother and three daughters to the sanctuary of Westminster, where she was shortly afterwards delivered of a son.<sup>63</sup> Within a few days Clarence and Warwick made their triumphal entry into the capital. Henry was immediately conducted from the Tower to the bishop's palace : and thence walked in solemn procession, with the crown on his head, to the cathedral of St. Paul's. His friends attributed his restora-

Henry is  
restored.]

Oct. 1.

Oct. 6.

Oct. 13.

<sup>62</sup> Cout. Croyl. 554. Commines, iii, 5. Fragment, 306. Stow, 422: Hall, 209. Edward after his restoration, rewarded Grutuse with the earldom of Winchester, which that nobleman was induced to resign by Henry VII.

<sup>63</sup> Stow, 422, 423. Fenn, ii. 52.

CHAP.

III.

~~~

Settlement
of the suc-
cession.

Nov. 26.

tion to the undoubted interposition of heaven;⁶⁴ by foreign nations it was viewed with wonder, or treated with ridicule; to himself it is doubtful whether it proved a source of joy or regret. He had been the captive of Edward; he was now become the slave of Warwick.⁶⁵

By a parliament summoned in the name of the restored king, Edward was pronounced an usurper, his adherents were attainted, and all acts passed by his authority were repealed. The next step was to ratify the convention of Amboise. An act of settlement entailed the crown on the issue male of Henry VI., and in default of such issue on the duke of Clarence and the heirs of his body: and appointed that prince with his father-in-law, protectors of the realm, during the minority of Edward, the present prince of Wales. All the lords, who had suffered for their attachment to the cause of Henry, recovered their titles and property: Clarence was made heir to his late father Richard duke of York, promoted to the lieutenancy of Ireland, and in place of some manors, which had belonged to Lancastrians, received other grants of equal, perhaps of

⁶⁴ Cont. Croyl. 554, who adds, though himself a Yorkist, that the Lancastrians were at that period the more numerous party. *Ibid.*

⁶⁵ A foreigner writing on the subject to the cardinal of Pavia, says: *Ridebunt posteri, credo, aut ut miracula mirabuntur, cum audierint tantum esse hujus comitis ingenium ut indomitam gentem tam facile regat, novos reges fecerit, his denuo pulsis veteres revocarit, et ipse pulsus intra vertentem annum, multis intra et extra regnum adversantibus, in idem regnum redierit, &c.* Hesdini, Oct. xi. 1470. *Apud Raynal. eodem anno.*

superior, value: Warwick reassumed his offices of chamberlain of England and captain of Calais, to which was added that of lord high admiral: his brother the archbishop was again entrusted with the seals; and his other brother the marquess recovered the wardenship of the marches. But if the conquerors thus provided for themselves, it must be added in their praise, that their triumph was not stained with blood. The only man who suffered was the earl of Worcester; whose cruelty in the office of constable had acquired for him with the title of “the butcher.” the hatred of the people.⁶⁶

CHAP.
III.
~~~

To no one did this sudden revolution afford greater satisfaction than to Louis of France. By his orders it was celebrated with public rejoicings for three days, and Margaret was received at Paris with the same distinction as a queen of France. To compliment Henry, a splendid embassy proceeded to London, and a treaty of peace and commerce for fifteen years cemented the union between the two crowns.<sup>67</sup> The duke of Burgundy on the contrary found himself placed in a most distressing dilemma. Edward had fled to him and solicited his aid. Could he refuse the brother of his consort? The dukes of

Conduct of  
foreign  
powers.

1741.  
Feb. 13.

<sup>66</sup> Cont. Croyl. 554. Rym. xi. 661—679. 693—696. 699—705. When the proceedings of Henry's parliament were afterwards repealed, it is probable that they were also cancelled. They do not now appear on the rolls. Rot. Parl. vi. 191.

<sup>67</sup> Rym. xi. 683. 690.

CHAP.

III.

~~~

Exeter and Somerset had reached his court, and reminded him that he was descended from the same ancestor as Henry. Could he contribute to dethrone a prince of his own blood? By aiding Edward, he might provoke Henry to espouse the cause of Louis, who had already wrested from him a rich and populous territory; by refusing to aid him, he should expose himself to equal danger from the friendship between the two crowns. At last he adopted the crooked, but in this instance successful, policy, of rejecting in public, while he favoured in private, the cause of the exile. By proclamation he forbade under severe penalties any of his subjects to lend assistance to Edward: in secret he made him a present of fifty thousand florins; ordered four large ships to be equipped for his use at Vere in Holland; and hired fourteen vessels from the Hanse towns to transport him to England.⁶⁸

Edward
lands in
England.

March 12.

About the middle of Lent the hostile fleet was descried off the coast of Suffolk: but the preparations which had been made, and the activity of a brother to the earl of Oxford, deterred it from approaching the land. Continuing his course to the north, Edward entered the Humber, and with fifteen hundred men disembarked at Ravenspur, the very place where Henry IV.

March 14.

⁶⁸ Commynes, iii. 6. He had 900 English and 300 Flemings, "with hange gunns," forte, hande gunns. Lell. Coll. ii. 503.

landed to dethrone Richard II. The hostility of the inhabitants induced him to imitate the dissimulation and perjury of that monarch. He exhibited a pretended safe-conduct from the earl of Northumberland ; protested that he came not to claim the throne, but the inheritance of his late father, the duke of York ; wore in his bonnet an ostrich feather, the device of Edward, the Lancastrian prince of Wales : and ordered his followers to shout “ Long live king Henry,” in every village and town through which they passed. At the gates of York, and afterwards on the altar of the cathedral, he was compelled to abjure upon oath in presence of the corporation and clergy all his pretensions to the crown. Such a reception was not calculated to flatter his hopes : but he had staked his life on the result ; he resolved to press forward ; and the boldness and decision which marked his conduct, contrasted with the inactivity, timidity, and irresolution of his adversaries, will justify a suspicion that he possessed resources, and was encouraged by promises, of which we are ignorant. At Pontefract lay the marquess Montague with an army sufficiently numerous to have overwhelmed the invaders. A short correspondence passed between Edward and that commander. The former marched within four miles of the head-quarters of his adversary, and not a sword was drawn to impede or retard his progress. But the rivulet, as it rolled on, was

CHAP. swelled by the accession of numberless streams :
 III. at Nottingham the exile saw himself at the head
 ~~~~~ of fifty or sixty thousand men : and in his pro-  
 clamations he assumed the title of king, and  
 summoned every loyal subject to hasten to the  
 aid of his sovereign. Clarence also threw off  
 the mask. He had raised a numerous body of  
 men under a commission from Henry : he now  
 ordered them to wear the white rose over their  
 gorgets ;<sup>69</sup> and joined his brother near Coventry,  
 where the earls of Warwick and Oxford had  
 concentrated their forces. The battle, which  
 Edward offered, was obstinately refused ; and  
 And is ad- the Yorkists directed their march with expedi-  
 mitted into Lon- tion to the capital, which had been intrusted to  
 don. the care of the archbishop. But that prelate  
 April. 11. already began to waver. In the morning he  
 conducted Henry, decorated with the insignia of  
 royalty, through the streets of the city ; in the  
 afternoon he ordered the recorder Worswick to  
 admit Edward by a postern in the walls. In his  
 excuse it was alleged, that the party of the  
 house of York had gained the ascendancy among  
 the citizens ; that the richest of the merchants  
 were the creditors of Edward ; that his affabi-  
 lity, and gallantries, had attached numbers to  
 his interests ; and that the sanctuaries contained  
 two thousand of his adherents, ready at a signal  
 to unsheathe the sword in his favour. However

---

<sup>69</sup> Fenn, ii. 62.

that may be, the archbishop secured a pardon for himself, and ruined the cause of his brothers.<sup>70</sup> Warwick and Montague followed their adversary, expecting to find him encamped before the capital: but he, apprehensive of the Lancastrians within its walls, immediately left it, and taking Henry with him, advanced to meet his pursuers as far as Barnet. Clarence, who felt some compunction for the part which he had acted, sent to offer his services as mediator between his father-in-law and his brother. "Go and tell your master," replied the indignant earl, "that Warwick true to his word is 'a better man than the false and perjured Clarence.'" He had appealed to the sword: he would admit of no other arbiter between him and his enemies.<sup>71</sup>

It was late on Easter-eve when the two armies came in sight of each other: before sunrise the next morning their leaders had arrayed them in the field. The battle was more remarkable for its consequences to the rival parties, than

Battle of  
Barnet.  
April 14.

<sup>70</sup> "He was doble (as men suppose) to king Henry, and kept hym at London, when he woold have beene at Westminster. He had lettres of king Edward to kepe king Henry out of sanctuary." *Lel. Coll. ii. 508.* He swore allegiance to Edward on the sacrament in the morning before the king left London for Barnet. *Rym. xi. 710.* Yet he was committed for a few days to the Tower, either to conceal his treason, or through mistrust. *Fenn, ii. 64.* His pardon includes all offences committed before Easter-eve. *Rym. xi. 709.*

<sup>71</sup> *Contin. Croyl. 554. Speed, 881. Commines, iii. 7.*

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

for the number of the slain or the obstinacy of the combatants: but to describe it from the imperfect and discordant narratives which have descended to us, would be a perplexing and hopeless task. It is agreed that it lasted six hours; that on one occasion the Yorkists began to retire; and that intelligence of their total defeat reached their friends in the capital. The fortune of the day was changed, if we may believe some writers, by the advance of Edward's reserve; according to others by a fatal mistake of the earl of Warwick, whose men charged the followers of the earl of Oxford as enemies, and compelled them to exclaim “treason,” and flee from the field.⁷² Warwick was slain either fighting in the midst of his enemies, or in an attempt to secrete himself in a wood: his brother Montague also fell, whether it was that he offered himself bravely to the swords of the enemy, or that by putting on the livery of Edward, he excited the resentment of his own party. The duke of Exeter was left as dead, but his servants found him breathing in the evening, and conveyed him to the sanctuary at Westminster. Of all the Lancastrian leaders the earl of Oxford alone escaped, and joining the earl of Pembroke

⁷² The soldiers of the different parties were distinguished by the badges of their leaders, which they wore both on their breasts and their backs. That day Edward had chosen for his badge a sun with rays, and Oxford a star with rays. It was easy to mistake one for the other. Lel. Coll. ii. 504.

in Wales, still defied the power of the Yorkists. Edward lost the lords Cromwell and Say, and the son of the lord Berners.⁷³ By many writers the number of the slain is swelled to several thousands: one of the Pastons, who was in the engagement, reduces it to ten or eleven hundred.⁷⁴

To Edward the death of Warwick was of greater importance than any victory. That nobleman by a long course of success had acquired the surname of the king-maker: and the superstition of the vulgar believed that the cause which he supported must finally triumph. His body, with that of his brother Montague, was publicly exposed for three days in the church of St. Paul's, and then deposited among the ashes of his forefathers in the abbey of Bilsam. Edward entered the city in triumph, remanded the unfortunate Henry to his cell in the Tower, and resumed the exercise of the sovereign authority.⁷⁵ But he was not long permitted to indulge in repose or festivity. He had fought at Barnet on the Sunday: on the Friday he was again summoned into the field. Queen Margaret, who had been detained for weeks on the French coast by the state of the weather, had at last sailed, and after a tempestuous passage of seventeen days had landed with a body of French auxiliaries at Plymouth. It was the very day of the battle

CHAP.
III.

Landing
of queen
Margaret.
April 15.

April 19.

⁷³ Cont. Croyl. 555. Lel. Col. 504, 505. Hall, 217, 218. Fab. 504.

⁷⁴ Fen. ii. 64.

⁷⁵ Fab. 504.

CHAP.
III.
~~~Battle of  
Tewks-  
bury.  
May 4.

of Barnet. She was hardly recovered from the fatigue of the voyage, when a messenger arrived with the fatal intelligence. All her hopes were instantly broken: she sank to the ground in despair: and as soon as she came to herself, hastened with her son to the sanctuary of Beaulieu. But the Lancastrian lords, who still remained faithful to the cause, induced her to quit her asylum, conducted her to Bath, and raised a considerable body of troops to fight under her banner. If this army could have joined that under the earl of Pembroke in Wales, the crown might perhaps have been again replaced on the head of Henry. But the citizens of Gloucester had fortified the bridge over the Severn: and when she reached Tewksbury, Edward had already arrived with a more numerous army. The Lancastrians, posted behind a lofty intrenchment, easily repulsed the assailants: and the duke of Somerset, flushed with this temporary success, sallied out to harass their retreat. But few followed their gallant leader: the rest were restrained by the treason or timidity of the lord Wenlock. The Yorkists turned on their pursuers, chased them back to the foot of the intrenchments, and put most of them to the sword. Distrust and dismay now spread through the ranks of the Lancastrians: the rampart was but faintly defended: first the banner of the duke of Gloucester, soon that of Edward, waived in the midst of the camp: and Somerset in

despair, riding up to Lord Wenlock, at one stroke beat out his brains. The queen and her son were made prisoners. The former was reserved to grace the conqueror's triumph ; the latter was led to his tent, and being asked what had brought him to England, boldly but ingenuously replied, "To preserve my father's crown and my own inheritance." Edward had the barbarity to strike the young prince in the face with his gauntlet : Clarence and Gloucester, or perhaps the knights in their retinue, dispatched him with their swords.<sup>76</sup>

It is probable that many of the Lancastrian leaders might have escaped by flight, if they had not sought an asylum within the church. While *they* were triumphant, they had always respected the right of sanctuary ; and a hope was cherished that gratitude for the preservation of his wife, his children, and two thousand of his partisans, would restrain Edward from violating a privilege, to which he was so much indebted. But the murder of the young prince had whetted his appetite for blood. With his sword drawn he attempted to enter the church : but a priest, bearing the host in his hand, ran to the door, and refused to move from the threshold till the king had given a reluctant promise to spare the lives of all who had taken refuge within the walls. For two days the promise was observed :

Execution  
of the  
duke of  
Somerset.

<sup>76</sup> Cont. Croyl. 556. Hollingshead, 1340. Stow, 424.

CHAP.

III.

May 6.

on the third a body of armed men burst into the church, seized the duke of Somerset, with the lord of St. John's, six knights, and seven esquires, and dragging their victims to a scaffold, struck off their heads.<sup>77</sup>

Murder of  
Henry VI.

May 22.

There now remained but one person whose life could give uneasiness to Edward. As long as the son lived to claim the crown of his father, the blood of Henry was not worth the shedding : but now that the young prince was no more, to remove the old king, was to remove the last temptation from his adherents. In the morning of the eve of the Ascension Edward made his entry into London ; in the evening of the same day Henry perished in the Tower. To satisfy the credulous it was reported that he had died of grief : but though the conqueror might silence the tongues, he could not control the belief or the pens of his subjects :<sup>78</sup> and the writers who lived under the next dynasty, not only proclaim the murder, but ascribe the black deed to the advice, if not to the dagger, of the younger of the three brothers, Richard duke of Gloucester.<sup>79</sup>

<sup>77</sup> Lel. Collect. ii. 506.

<sup>78</sup> Parcat, says the monk Croyland, Deus, et spatium pœnitentiae ei donet, quicumque tam sacrilegas manus in Christum Domini ausus est immittere. Unde et agens, tyranni ; patiens que, gloriosi martyris titulum mereatur. He wrote during the reign of Richard. Cont. Croyl. 556.

<sup>79</sup> Mr. Laing in a dissertation printed at the end of Henry's history (vol. xii. p. 393), labours to clear the memory of Richard from the murder of Henry. With this view he attempts to prove that Henry did not die on the evening of the day, on which Edward

The body, surrounded with guards and torches, was conducted to St. Paul's, and thence to the abbey of Chertsey, where it was buried. By the friends of the house of Lancaster, Henry was revered as a martyr. It was soon whispered that miracles had been wrought at his tomb, and Richard III., apprehensive of the impression which such reports might make on the public mind, removed his bones from Chertsey to Windsor. Henry VII. placed, or intended to place, them among the tombs of his ancestors in Westminster abbey.<sup>80</sup>

Before I proceed with the reign of Edward, it

Fate of the  
Lancas-  
trians.

entered London, because, as Malone observes (Shakespeare, xi. 653), "it appears on the face of the public accounts allowed in the exchequer for the maintenance of Henry VI. and his numerous attendants in the Tower, that he lived till the twelfth of June, twenty-two days after the time assigned for his pretended assassination." These accounts are to be found in Rym. xi. 712. But they afford no proof that Henry lived till the 12th of June. The latest date of any particular charge is that of William Sayer for the maintenance of Henry and ten guards for a fortnight, beginning the 11th of May, and of course ending on the day on which the king is said to have been buried. The mistake arises from this, that Malone has taken the day of the month on which the accounts were allowed at the exchequer, for the day on which the expences ceased: which is so far from being the case that it even belongs to a different year, 1472 and not 1471: as appears from the two next accounts, which though allowed on the 24th of June, refer to expenses in September and October of 1471. See them in Rym. xi. 713, 714.

<sup>80</sup> Rous, 217. Rym. xiii. 103. Pope Julius in his brief says of Henry's death, *ante diem facto, ut creditur, æmolorum, debitum naturæ persolvit*—and of the translation of his body, that it was made by the same æmuli, *qua mente ducti, ignoratur*. Ibid. Yet Henry VII. gives the reason mentioned above. Wilk. Con. iii. 653.

CHAP.

III.

Queen  
Margaret.The duke  
of Exeter.

Nov. 12.

The earl  
of Oxford.1473.  
May.

Sept. 30.

may not be amis to notice the history of the surviving adherents of Henry. 1. Margaret was confined first in the Tower, afterwards at Windsor, and lastly at Wallingford, with a weekly allowance of five marks for the support of herself and her servants. After a captivity of five years she was ransomed by Louis of France, and died in 1482 in her own country. 2. Henry Holand duke of Exeter, and great grandson of John of Ghent by his second daughter Elizabeth, had been conveyed, as the reader has seen, from the field of battle to the sanctuary at Westminster. It was expected that he would obtain his pardon by the influence of his wife Anne, the eldest sister of Edward. But that lady solicited and obtained a divorce in 1472, and married sir Thomas St. Leger. The duke was at the time in the custody of the king, with the weekly allowance of half a mark : the next year his dead body was found floating in the sea between Dover and Calais.<sup>81</sup> 3. Vere earl of Oxford, had escaped from Barnet into Scotland, and thence into France : but disdaining a life of indolence, he collected a small squadron of twelve sail, swept the narrow seas, kept the maritime counties in perpetual alarm, and by frequent captures enriched himself and his followers. With about four hundred men he surprised the strong fortress of mount St. Michael in Cornwall, whence

<sup>81</sup> Stow, 426.

he made repeated inroads into the neighbouring counties, receiving supplies from the friends of the house of Lancaster, and wreaking his vengeance on those of the house of York. By Edward's command, sir Henry Bodrugan besieged the mount: but his fidelity was suspected; and he was in a short time superseded by sir John Fortescue. The new commander had been a Lancastrian and a friend: he had recourse to promises and persuasion: and the earl, apprehensive of the treachery of his own men, surrendered the place on condition that his life and the lives of his followers should be spared, with the exception of the lord Beaumont and sir Richard Laumarth. During the next eleven years he was confined a close prisoner in the castle of Ham; while his countess, the sister to the great Warwick, was compelled to support herself by the profits of her needle and the secret presents of her friends.<sup>82</sup>

4. Though the archbishop of York had rendered the king many services, Edward did not feel easy on his throne, as long as a Nevil remained at liberty. They had hunted together at Windsor; and the king in return promised to hunt with the prelate at the Moor in Hertfordshire. The most magnificent preparations were made for his reception: all the plate which the archbishop

The arch-  
bishop of  
York

1473.

<sup>82</sup> Stow, 426. Lel. Coll. ii. 508, 509. Fenn, ii. 133. 139. 142. 156. Rot. Parl. vi. 149. We shall meet with him again fighting victoriously for the house of Lancaster.

CHAP. III. had secreted since the death of his brothers, had been collected : and the principal nobility of the neighbourhood were invited to partake of the entertainment. But Edward sent for him to Windsor, and arrested him on a charge of having lent money to the earl of Oxford. The revenue of his bishopric was seized ; his plate confiscated ; his mitre converted into a crown ; and his jewels divided between the king and the prince of Wales. The prelate lingered in prison for three years, partly in England and partly at Guisnes : and did not recover his liberty till a few weeks before his death in the year 1476.<sup>83</sup>

The earls of Pembroke and Richmond.

5. The earl of Pembroke, the uterine brother of Henry, with his nephew the young earl of Richmond, left Wales, and was driven by a storm on the coast of Bretagne. The king, as if he had foreseen the severe revenge which that young prince was destined to inflict on the house of York, employed solicitations and promises to have both the uncle and nephew delivered into his hands. But the duke Francis, though he stood in need of the assistance of Edward, resolutely refused to betray the suppliants. He engaged to watch them so, that they should give no reasonable cause of disquietude ; but would not expose the exiles, to whom he had promised protection, to the vengeance or policy of their enemy. They remained in a kind of

<sup>83</sup> Lel. Coll. ii. 508. Stow, 426. Rym. xii. 28.

honourable confinement during the reign of Edward : the reader will see them again in England under that of his successor.<sup>84</sup> 6. Of the other partisans of the house of Lancaster, the principal, as soon as their hopes were extinguished by the death of Henry and his son, condescended to implore the clemency of Edward ; and that prince, having no longer a competitor to fear, listened with greater attention to their petitions. Hence in the next parliament several attainders were reversed in favour of persons, whose services might prove useful, or whose influence was too inconsiderable to make them subjects of jealousy. Of these I may mention two, Dr. Morton, parson of Blokesworth, and sir John Fortescue lord chief justice, who had both been present in the field of Towton, and both been attainted by act of parliament. In their petitions to Edward they use nearly the same expressions.

“ They are as sorrowful and repentant, as any creatures may be, for whatever they have done to the displeasure of the king’s highness : and protest that they are and ever will be true liegemen and obeissant subjects to him their sovereign lord.” Acquainted with the talents of Morton, Edward had already granted him his pardon, and made him keeper of the rolls. Soon afterwards he preferred him to the bishopric of Ely. His attachment to the sons of his

Morton  
and For-  
tescue.

<sup>84</sup> Com. v. 18. Stow, 426. 429.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

benefactor earned for him the enmity of Richard III. : and to his councils were afterwards ascribed the deposition of that usurper, and the termination of civil discord, by the union of the two roses in the marriage of Henry VII. with the princess Elizabeth. Sir John Fortescue accompanied Margaret and her son during their exile, and with the title of chancellor was intrusted with the education of the young prince. While he was with Henry in Scotland, he had written a treatise in proof of the claim of the house of Lancaster, against that of the house of York. But he could support with equal ability either side of the question : and after the death of Henry wrote a second treatise in proof of the claim of the house of York, against the claim of that of Lancaster. The latter seems to have been required as the price of his pardon. In his petition he assures the king, “that he hath so clearly disproved all the arguments that have been made against his right and title, that now there remaineth no colour or matter of argument to the hurt or infamy of the same right or title by reason of any such writing, but the same right and title stand now the more clear and open by that any such writings have been made against them.”⁸⁵

⁸⁵ See Rot. Parl. vi. 26. 69. He maintained in his first work that Philippa, daughter of Lionel duke of Clarence, through whom the house of York claimed, had never been acknowledged by her father ; in the second that she was his legitimate child and heir.

Thus, after many a bloody field, and the most surprising vicissitudes of fortune, was the head of the house of York seated on the throne of England, apparently without a competitor. His eldest son, who had been born in the sanctuary during his exile, and had also been named Edward, was now created prince of Wales and earl

CHAP.
III.

Quarrel
between
Clarence
and Glo-
cester.

June 26.

See extracts from both treatises in "The Hereditary Right Assert-
"ed," p. 234, 235, and App. i. ii. taken from the Cotton MS. Otho,
B. 1.—But the most important of the works of this learned judge,
is his tract *De Laudibus Legum Angliæ*, which he wrote in exile
for the instruction of the young prince, who was murdered after
the battle of Tewksbury. He informs his royal pupil that the
English is not an absolute but a limited monarchy. In the former,
which is the offspring of force and conquest, the will of the prince
is the law: in the latter, which arises from the free election of
men for their own safety and convenience, the king can neither
make laws, nor take the goods of his subjects, without their con-
sent (c. 9. 12, 13, 14.). Of the superior advantages of the latter
the prince could have no doubt, if he would contrast the situation
of the lower classes in his own country, with that of similar classes
in France. He would find that the English were better clothed,
better fed, and enjoyed in greater abundance the comforts of life
(c. 35, 36.). He then proceeds to give the preference to the
English before the Roman law: 1^o. Because the trial by jury is
superior to that by witnesses; and to a question from the young
Edward, why then other nations do not adopt it, he replies, that
they cannot, because in no other country are there to be found such
number of substantial yeoman, qualified to serve as jurors: 2^o. Be-
cause it bastardizes the issue born before wedlock, whereas the civil
law legitimates it: 3^o. Because it makes the child of the same con-
dition as the father, not as the mother: 4^o. Because it refuses the
guardianship of orphans to those who by law would succeed to their
estates, &c. This treatise is deserving of attention, because it shews
what notions prevailed at that period respecting the nature of the
English constitution, and the liberties of the subject.

CHAP.

III.

July 3.

of Chester, and was recognized as the heir apparent in great council of prelates and peers.⁸⁶ The partisans of the house of Lancaster had no leader in England: the marauding expeditions of the earl of Oxford had become subjects rather of ridicule and terror; and the king was relieved from all apprehensions on the part of Scotland by the promising state of his negotiations with that kingdom.⁸⁷ His chief disquietude was created by the insatiate rapacity of his two brothers, the dukes of Clarence and Gloucester. The immense property of the late earl of Warwick had been derived from two sources, the inheritance of his father the earl of Salisbury, and the possessions of his wife Anne, the heiress to the noble and opulent family of Beauchamp. Clarence, who had married Warwick's eldest daughter, grasped at the whole succession: Gloucester proposed, by marrying the younger, the relict of the late prince of Wales, to claim for himself a proportionate share. To defeat the project of his brother, the former concealed the widow from the pursuit of Gloucester: but after some months she was discovered in London in the disguise of a cook-maid, and for greater security was conducted to the sanctuary of St. Martin's. Clarence could not prevent the marriage: but he swore that Gloucester "should not part the livelyhood with him." The king

⁸⁶ Rym. xi. 713.⁸⁷ Id. xi. 718. 733. 748.

endeavoured to reconcile the two brothers. They pleaded their cause repeatedly before him in council; arbitrators were appointed; and at length an award was given, which, after assigning her portion to Anne, left the rest of the property to Isabella, the elder sister.⁸⁸ All this while the countess their mother was living, and to her belonged by law the possessions of her late brother and father, with the dower settled on her by her husband.⁸⁹ But her interests were disregarded. By act of parliament it was determined that the daughters should succeed as if their mother were dead: that, if either of them should die before her husband, he should continue to enjoy her portion for the term of his natural life: and that if a divorce should be pronounced between Richard and Anne, Richard should still have the benefit of this act, provided he should marry, or do his endeavours to marry, her again.⁹⁰ Still the two brothers were not

1474.
May.

⁸⁸ Fenn, ii. 90. During this quarrel sir John Paston writes thus :
 " The world seems queasy here. For the most part that be about
 " the king, have sent hither for their harness (armour). It is said
 " for certain, that the duke of Clarence maketh himself big in that
 " he can : shewing as (if) he would but deal with the duke of
 " Gloucester: but the king intended to be as big as they both.
 " Some men think that under this there should be some other thing
 " intended, and some treason conspired: so what shall fall, can I
 " not say." Fenn, ii. 127. April 13, 1473.

⁸⁹ She had been, since the death of her husband, in the sanctuary of Beverly, but was removed to the north in June 1473, by sir J. Tyrrel. Edward had assented to it: but Clarence was displeased.

⁹⁰ Rot. Parl. vi. 100, 101. Thus says the Continuator Hist. Croyl. *Parum aut nihil veræ dominæ relictnm est*, p. 556, 557.

CHAP. secure. To preclude any claim from the son of
 III. the marquess Montague, Warwick's brother, it
 July. was enacted that Clarence and Gloucester, and
 their heirs, should enjoy certain lands, the former
 property of the earl, as long as there should
 exist any male issue of the body of the mar-
 quess. By these acts of parliament, and the
 grant of different honours and emoluments, the
 demands of the royal brothers were satisfied :
 but a secret hatred had been kindled in their
 breasts, which was ready to burst forth on the
 first and most trivial provocation.⁹¹

Alliance
against
France.

Being at length relieved from all cause of
 disquietude at home, Edward turned his atten-
 tion to the concerns of foreign powers. Louis
 king of France, and Charles duke of Burgundy,
 had long been implacable enemies. The latter,
 with his ally the duke of Bretagne, solicited
 Edward to prosecute the ancient claim of the
 English monarchs to the French crown. Gra-
 titude for the services which he had received
 from his brother-in-law, the desire of punishing
 Louis for the succours which he had furnished
 to the house of Lancaster, and above all, the
 advantages of employing in a foreign war those,
 who from their former attachments, might be
 inclined to cabal against his government, in-
 duced him to lend a willing ear to the project.
 Alliances, offensive and defensive, were con-

⁹¹ Rot. Parl. vi. 124.

cluded between him and the two dukes: the partition of their conquests was arranged: and the respective quotas, with the payment, of their troops were satisfactorily settled. France, according to these treaties, would have been divided into two independent states: of which one, comprehending the northern and eastern provinces, would have belonged to the duke of Burgundy without any obligation of fealty or homage: the other would have been possessed by Edward as the undoubted heir to the ancient monarchs.⁹² The king found the nation willing to embark in the romantic undertaking: the clergy, the lords, and the commons, separately granted him a tenth of their income: and the parliament, which with different prorogations continued to sit during two years and a half, voted supply upon supply with unprecedented rapidity.⁹³ But an additional aid was obtained by the king's own ingenuity. He assumed the tone of a sturdy beggar; called the more wealthy of the citizens before him; and requested from each a present for the relief of his wants. No one presumed to reject the prayer of his sovereign: and considerable sums were thus procured from the shame, the hopes, or the fears, of the donors. Preceding monarchs had repeatedly borrowed on their own security, or that of the parliament: Edward was the first who demanded

From
1472,
Oct. 6,
to 1475,
March 24.

⁹² Rym. xi. 804—814.

⁹³ Rot. Parl. vi. 3—153.

CHAP.
III.
~~~

presents, and facetiously termed the money which he had extorted, *a benevolence*.<sup>94</sup> We may believe that the sums collected from these different sources exceeded the treasures amassed by any of his predecessors ; but it is plain that the historian was not possessed of the gift of prophecy, when he asserted that they would never be equalled on any subsequent occasion.<sup>95</sup>

Edward  
lands in  
France.

Though Europe had long resounded with the report of these preparations, from some accident or other the threatened expedition was annually postponed. Edward, however, improved the delay to secure the friendship of the king of Scots. His commissioners offered ample indemnity for all injuries sustained by the Scottish merchants : the long truce was reciprocally confirmed ; a marriage was contracted between the duke of Rothsay, the eldest son of James, and Cecily the second daughter of Edward, and the portion of the princess was fixed at twenty thousand marks, to be paid by equal instalments in ten years : a mode of payment which, by making the king of Scots the pensioner, attached him to the interests of the king of England.<sup>96</sup> At length Edward proceeded to Sandwich : his army, consisting of fifteen hundred men at arms,

1475.  
June 20.

<sup>94</sup> Inaudita impositio muneris, ut per benevolentiam quisque daret quod vellet, imo verius quod nollet. Cont. Croyl. 558.

<sup>95</sup> Ad eas summas, quarum summae neque antea visae, neque in futurum de verosimili simul videndae sunt. Ibid.

<sup>96</sup> Rym. xi. S21—S32

and ten times that number of archers, was transported to Calais: and Charles duke of Burgundy was invited, according to the treaty, to join the king with his troops. But that prince, who had already wasted his resources by a romantic and unsuccessful expedition into Germany, arrived in the English camp with a slender retinue, and offered the best apology in his power for his inability to fulfil his engagements. Edward accompanied him to Peronne, where his chagrin was augmented by the jealousy with which Charles excluded the English from the town. Thence a detachment, was sent to occupy St. Quintin's, but the constable of St. Pol, who had been represented as an ally, fired on it from the walls. The king could no longer check the expression of his disappointment: and the duke departed with a promise to return in a short time at the head of a numerous army.

From Sandwich, in conformity with the laws of chivalry, Garter king at arms had been dispatched to Louis, to make a formal demand of the French crown. The monarch heard him with composure, took him into his closet, expressed much esteem for the character of Edward, and a sincere desire to live in amity with so illustrious a prince. He then put three hundred crowns into the hands of the herald, and promised him a thousand more on the conclusion of peace. Won by his liberality and apparent confidence, Garter advised him to apply to

Policy of  
Louis.

CHAP.

III.

  Peace and  
alliance  
with  
France.

Aug. 13.

the lord Howard or the lord Stanley, as ministers averse from war, and high in the favour of their sovereign. Louis immediately dismissed him, and prepared to avail himself of the information.<sup>97</sup>

While Edward lay in his camp near Peronne, ruminating on the unaccountable conduct of the Burgundian, a French herald addressed himself to the lords Howard and Stanley, and solicited an introduction to the king. Being admitted, he assured Edward that Louis had never entertained the slightest hostility against him personally; and that if he had lent assistance on one occasion to the earl of Warwick, it had been solely through his hatred to the duke of Burgundy: he insinuated that the friendship pretended by Charles was hollow and insincere: that he had allured the English into France for his own individual advantage, and that he would desert them the moment he could obtain better terms for himself: and then added that, with a little forbearance on each side, it would be easy for two princes, who mutually esteemed each other, to prevent the effusion of christian blood, and agree to an accommodation equally beneficial to their subjects. By Edward, discontented as he was, the suggestion was received with pleasure. He convoked a council of officers, and a resolution was taken that the king should return with his army to Eng-

land, if Louis would consent to pay him immediately seventy-five thousand crowns ; to settle on him an annuity for life of fifty thousand more ; to conclude a truce and commercial intercourse between the two nations for seven years ; and to marry his eldest son to Edward's eldest daughter, or in the event of her death to her sister Mary, who at the age of puberty should be conveyed to France at the expense of Louis, and receive from him an annual income of sixty thousand francs. The motives assigned by the members for this resolution, are the approach of winter, the poverty of the treasury, and the insincerity of duke Charles :<sup>98</sup> but to these must be added the presents which Louis distributed among the royal favourites, and the prospect of a supply of money, an object of high importance to a voluptuous and indigent prince. Commissioners on both sides were appointed to meet at a neighbouring village. Louis assented to every demand : and in addition it was agreed that Margaret of Anjou should be set at liberty on the payment of fifty thousand crowns : and that all differences between the two kings should be submitted to four arbitrators, the cardinal of Canterbury and duke of Clarence on the part of Edward, the archbishop of Lyons and the count of Dunois on the part of Louis, who should be bound to pronounce their award within the

Aug. 29.

<sup>98</sup> Rym, xi. 14, 15.

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~~~

course of three years.⁹⁹ As soon as these conditions had been mutually exchanged, a bridge was thrown across the Somme at Picquigny near Amiens, with a grating of wood erected in the middle. Here the monarchs met each other, shook hands through the grating, and swore on the missal to observe their engagements. They then entered into familiar conversation; and Louis incautiously invited his new acquaintance to Paris. Edward, eager in the pursuit of pleasure, did not refuse; and it required all the address of the French monarch to postpone the intended visit to an indeterminate period. The English kings, he afterwards observed to his confidants, had been too much in the habit of visiting France: he liked them best on their own side of the water.¹⁰⁰

The king
and his fa-
vourites
accept an-
nuities
from him.

1476.
Jan. 9.

All the immediate conditions of the treaty were faithfully performed. Edward received the money on the appointed day, and instantly commenced his march to the coast: the truce was published, and prolonged for one year after the death of either king: the annual pension, and the sum stipulated for the ransom of queen Margaret, were carefully paid: Edward resigned all power over that princess as his captive, and Louis bound himself never to make any demand in her favour; and she herself, after she was delivered to the French commissioners at Rouen,

⁹⁹ Rym. xi. 15—21. xii. 52.

¹⁰⁰ Com. iv. 5—10.

signed a formal renunciation of all her rights as queen dowager of England.¹⁰¹ Each king congratulated himself on the issue of the expedition. Edward had not only filled his coffers, but had ensured for himself an annual supply of money: Louis, at an expense comparatively small, had escaped from a dangerous war, and had converted a powerful enemy into a faithful ally. To secure this advantage he had purchased the services of many in the English council, who did not hesitate to copy the example of their sovereign. The lord Hastings, Edward's principal favourite, and the chancellor, accepted annual pensions of two thousand crowns each: and twelve thousand more were yearly distributed to the marquess of Dorset, the lords Howard and Cheney, sir Thomas Montgomery, Thomas St. Leger, and a few others. Most of these were not ashamed to recognise themselves as pensioners of the king of France: the lord Hastings alone, though he greedily accepted the money, could never be induced to put his signature to a receipt.¹⁰²

But though Edward was satisfied, the army and people did not conceal their disappointment. Of the former many accused the avarice of the king, and threatened with public vengeance the counsellors who had suffered themselves to be bribed by Louis: but they were

Edward's
method of
raising
money.

¹⁰¹ Rym. xii. 21. Du Tillet, 145.

¹⁰² Com. iv. 8. vi. 2.

CHAP.

III.

carefully watched, and severely punished for the imprudence of their language. Others, as soon as the army was disbanded, formed associations, extorted money by violence, and threw several counties into confusion by repeated robberies and murders. To suppress these disorders the king directed the laws to be strictly enforced, accompanied the judges in their circuits, and inexorably refused mercy to every delinquent, whatever might have been his station or services. But the dissatisfaction of the people supplied a source of deeper disquietude. It was evident that they wanted but a leader to guide their efforts, and that the imposition of new taxes would infallibly goad them to insurrection. Hence it became the great object of the king's policy to provide for the expenses of his household, and of the government, without laying any additional burden on the nation. With this view he ordered the officers of the customs to exact the duties with severity, extorted frequent tenths from the clergy, levied large sums for the restoration of the temporalities of abbots and bishops, resumed most of the grants lately made by the crown, and compelled the holders of estates, who had omitted any of the numerous minutiae of the feudal tenures, to compound by heavy fines, for the rents which they had hitherto received. Neither did he disdain the aid which might be derived from the transactions of commerce. His ships were annually freighted with tin, wool, and cloth : and

the merchandise of the king of England was publicly exposed to sale in the ports of Italy and Greece. In a short time he became rich: though individuals might complain, the nation was satisfied; and men grew insensibly attached to a prince, who could support the splendour of the throne without making any demand on the purses of his subjects.¹⁰³

It was not, however, long before an event occurred, which embittered the remainder of Edward's days. His brother Clarence by the act of resumption had been deprived of several estates, and seems to have considered the loss as an unjustifiable aggression. He withdrew from court, could seldom be persuaded to eat at the king's table, and at the council board observed the most obstinate silence. His wife after the birth of her third child, fell into a state of debility, which, at the expiration of two months, terminated her life: and Ankaret Twynhyo, one of her female servants, was tried, condemned, and executed on the charge of having administered poison to the dutchess.¹⁰⁴ It chanced that about the same time the duke of Burgundy fell at the battle of Nanci; and his immense possessions devolved on Mary, his only daughter and heir. Clarence solicited her hand: his suit was seconded by all the influence of his sister, her mother-in-law: and it is thought that he would

Discontent
and im-
pri-
sonment of
Clarence.

1476.
Dec. 22.

¹⁰³ For these interesting particulars we are indebted to the historian of Croyland, p. 559.

¹⁰⁴ Rot. Parl. vi. 173, 174.

CHAP.
III.
~~~

have succeeded, had it not been for the resolute opposition of Edward. The king was too jealous of the ambition of a brother, who might employ the power of Burgundy to win for himself the crown of England ; and too apprehensive of incurring the enmity of Louis, who had already seized a considerable portion of Mary's inheritance. From that moment the brothers viewed each other as enemies, and scarcely preserved in their intercourse the external forms of decorum. While they were thus irritated against each other, whether it were the effect of accident, or a preparatory step to the ruin of Clarence, Stacey, one of his servants, was accused of practising the art of magic, and of melting certain images of lead to accelerate the death of the lord Beauchamp. On the rack he named as his accomplice Thomas Burdett, a gentleman in the duke's family. They were arraigned together before the judges and most of the temporal peers ; and, after a short trial, were condemned and executed. The indictment charged them with having calculated the nativities of the king and the princes, and circulated seditious rhymes and ballads : but on the scaffold both protested against the sentence ; Clarence immediately professed himself the champion of their innocence : and the next day Dr. Godard, an eminent divine, was introduced by him into the council chamber to depose to their dying declarations. When these particulars, exaggerated perhaps by officious friends,

had been communicated to Edward, he hastened from Windsor to London, sent for the duke, upbraided him with insulting the administration of justice, and in the presence of the mayor and sheriffs committed him to the Tower.<sup>105</sup>

CHAP.  
III.  
~~~

He is con-
demned
and put to
death.
1478.
Jan. 16.

A parliament was now summoned, and the unfortunate Clarence stood at the bar of the house of lords under a charge of high treason. Not one of the peers ventured to open his mouth: the king produced his witnesses, and conducted the prosecution. He described the tender affection, which he had formerly cherished for his brother, and the great possessions with which he had enriched him. Yet the ungrateful prince had turned against his benefactor, had leagued with his enemies, had deprived him of his liberty, and during his exile, had conspired to dethrone him. All this had been forgiven. Yet what was the return? Clarence had again formed the project to disinherit him and his issue. For this purpose he had commissioned his servants to give public entertainments, during which they insinuated that Burdett had been innocent of the crime for which he suffered; that the king was himself a magician, and therefore unfit to govern a christian people, and what was more, was a bastard, and consequently without any right to the crown. Moreover Clarence had induced men to swear,

¹⁰⁵ Cont. Croyl. 561, 562. compared with the indictment in Howell's State Trials, iii. 364.

CHAP.
III.
~~~

Feb. 7.

that they would be true to him without any reservation of allegiance to their sovereign; had declared that he would recover both for himself and them the lands which had been lost by the act of resumption; had obtained and preserved an attested copy of the act declaring him the next heir to the crown after the male issue of Henry VI.; had sent orders to all his retainers to be in readiness to join him in arms at an hour's notice; and had endeavoured to substitute another person's child in the place of his own son, that he might send the latter out of the kingdom, as if his life were menaced by the enmity of his uncle.<sup>106</sup> How far these charges against Clarence were true, or whether they amounted to more than precautions against the malice of his enemies, it is impossible for us to decide: for though we know that he replied with warmth and acrimony, his reply has not been preserved. The peers were persuaded by the arguments of the royal accuser: Clarence was found guilty; and the duke of Buckingham, who had been appointed high steward for the occasion, pronounced on him the sentence of death.<sup>107</sup> Soon afterwards an act was passed to reverse the judgment of Ankaret; and the commons petitioned the king to execute justice on his brother.<sup>108</sup> But Edward disapproved of a public

<sup>106</sup> See the long and laboured bill of attainder in Rot. Parl. vi. 193, 194. <sup>107</sup> Ibid. 195.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid. 173. At the same time George Nevil, who had been

exhibition. About ten days later it was announced that the duke had died in the Tower. The manner of his death has never been ascertained : but a silly report was circulated that he had been drowned in a butt of Malmsey wine.<sup>109</sup>

It was a singular but leading feature in the policy of this king, that he negotiated marriages for his children, almost the very moment they were born. Elizabeth had long been contracted to the dauphin of France, Cecily to the son and heir of the king of Scotland, Anne to the infant son of Maximilian archduke of Austria, and his eldest son to the eldest daughter of the duke of Bretagne. In all these projects he was disappointed, in two of them he was completely overreached. The instalments of the sum to be given with Cecily, had for some years been regularly paid : in 1478 they were suspended, and in 1480 war was declared between England and Scotland. By some writers, the rupture has been attributed to the intrigues

CHAP.  
III.  
Feb. 18.

War with  
Scotland.

1478.

1480.

---

created duke of Bedford, was deprived of his title, on the pretence that he had not an income equal to support it. *Ibid.* And an act was passed "for the surety of all lords, noblemen, and other the king's true servants and subjects," repealing the acts passed in the parliament summoned by Henry VI., during the absence of Edward, more than seven years before. *Rot. Parl.* vi. 191.

<sup>109</sup> The historian of Croyland says only: *factum est id, qualemque erat, genus supplicii*, 562. I suspect that the principal cause of Edward's jealousy against Clarence arose from his having been declared the next heir after Edward, the son of Henry VI. Supposing the validity of that act, he was even now the rightful heir. The king was careful to have it repealed. *Rot. Parl.* vi. 191.

CHAP.  
III.

of Louis, who secretly stimulated James to break his alliance with Edward: by others, to the policy of Edward, who sought to convert to his own advantage the dissensions between the king and the nobles of Scotland. From public documents it appears, that the two princes were highly exasperated against each other. Edward upbraided James with meanness of conduct and breach of faith; and James returned the compliment with the contumelious appellation of "the robber," alluding probably to the manner in which his adversary had acquired the crown.<sup>110</sup> Great preparations were made, James placed himself at the head of the Scottish, the duke of Gloucester at the head of the English, army: and the borderers renewed their depredations: yet, two years elapsed before the war assumed a formidable appearance. The king of Scotland, who aspired to the reputation of taste and science, had long avoided the society of his proud but ignorant nobles, and admitted to his company none but a few artists, distinguished indeed in their respective professions, but born in the lower stations of life, and the more hateful in the sight of the natives, because some of them were foreigners. The discontent of the nobility was shared by the duke of Albany and the earl of Mar, the brothers of James, who, to intimidate the factious, suddenly arrested them

---

<sup>110</sup> Rym. xii. 115. 117. Black Acts, fol. 56.

both, and confined them in separate prisons, the former in the castle of Edinburgh, the other in that of Craigmillar. Albany, by the assistance of the captain of a French vessel, contrived to escape, and eluded the vengeance of his brother, by a voluntary exile in Paris. The unfortunate Mar, on the very doubtful charge of magical practices against the life of the king, was condemned by the council, conducted to the Cannongate, and there suffered to bleed to death by the opening of a vein. Revenge rankled in the breast of Albany, who, encouraged by the hostilities between the two powers, came to England, solicited the protection of Edward, and under the pretence that his brother was illegitimate, proclaimed himself king of Scotland.<sup>111</sup> It was stipulated, that Edward should employ his forces to place Albany on the throne, who in return should surrender the town and castle of Berwick ; should hold the crown as the vassal of the English monarch ; should abjure the national alliance with France : and should marry, if the laws of the church would permit (for he had even now two supposed wives living) one of the English princesses. Accompanied by the duke of Gloucester, who led an army of twenty-two thousand five hundred men, he laid siege to Berwick. The town opened its gates,

1482.  
June 10-

<sup>111</sup> His mother, Mary of Gueldres, was not an immaculate character. See Wyrest. 492.

CHAP. the castle made the most obstinate resistance.  
III. James had summoned his retainers, and had advanced as far as Lauder, unaware of the danger which threatened him. It was generally during a military expedition, that the Scottish barons made a successful stand against the authority of the sovereign. They were then assembled in a body; they were surrounded with their clans and retainers; and if they were but united among themselves, they always proved more than a match for the power of the crown. They had met to consult in the church of Lauder, when Cochran the architect, whom the infatuated James had lately created earl of Mar, inadvertently joined the assembly. He was instantly seized: six more of the royal favourites were dragged from the king's tent: and all were hanged over the bridge. The confederate chiefs immediately disbanded the army, and conveyed the king to the castle of Edinburgh, menacing him with perpetual imprisonment, unless he should grant a full pardon for the murder of his friends.<sup>112</sup>

The news of this extraordinary revolution quickly reached the army, which lay before Berwick: and Albany and Gloucester with sixteen thousand men hastened to Edinburgh. That capital received them as friends: and every man expected that the sceptre of Scotland would

---

<sup>112</sup> Abercromb. ii. 446. Buch. 234.

Aug. 2.

1483.  
Feb. 11.

pass from the feeble hands of its possessor to the firmer grasp of his brother, when, to the astonishment of both nations, Albany signed an agreement with two Scottish peers and two prelates, by which *he* bound himself to act the part of a faithful subject, *they* to procure for him a pardon without any exceptions, and the restoration of his estates and honours. It was, however, stipulated, that to satisfy the king of England, the castle of Berwick should be surrendered, and the provost and merchants of Edinburgh should give security for the repayment of all monies advanced on account of the marriage portion of Cecily, unless Edward were willing that the former contract should still subsist. The king, however, demanded the money, which was faithfully repaid. Albany took the castle of Edinburgh by force, and liberated his brother. To prove their reconciliation, they both rode to Holyrood-house on one horse, and slept in the same bed. Yet the restless mind of the duke was not satisfied. He renewed his negotiations with Edward; on the discovery of his traitorous designs escaped again into France; and was at last attainted by an act of the Scottish parliament.<sup>113</sup>

<sup>113</sup> Rym. xii. 155—163. 172—179. Cont. Hist. Croyl. 563. He acquaints us that the king was not pleased with the result of the expedition, which had cost him more than 100,000*l.* The possession of Berwick was an advantage: but the expense of retaining it amounted to 10,000 marks yearly. Ibid.

CHAP.

III.

June 27.  
He is  
duded by  
Louis.

Another instance in which the expectations of Edward were cruelly disappointed, was the projected marriage of his daughter Elizabeth with the dauphin of France. When she had completed her twelfth year it was hoped that Louis, according to his engagement, would have sent for the princess, and have settled on her the stipulated annuity of sixty thousand francs. Four years past ; still she remained in England. Remonstrances were made, but Louis always returned some plausible answer. The parliament warned the king of the artifices of the French court ; still he refused to suspect the sincerity of his good brother. An unexpected event opened his eyes. The princess Mary of Burgundy, who had borne her husband Maximilian two children, Philip and Margaret, was unexpectedly killed by a fall from her horse : and Louis, forgetting the princess Elizabeth, instantly demanded Margaret for the dauphin. It was in vain that the father hesitated. The people of Ghent, to whose custody the children had been intrusted, extorted his consent : Margaret was delivered by them to the commissioners of Louis : and the provinces which that monarch had ravished from her mother, were settled upon her as her marriage portion. When the news reached Edward, he burst into a paroxysm of rage. From that moment his thoughts were constantly fixed, his conversation generally employed, on the readiest means of inflicting

CHAP.  
III.

His death.

1483.  
April 9.

vengeance on the perfidy of the king of France. But whether it were owing to the agitation of his mind, or to the debaucheries in which he indulged, a slight ailment, which had been treated with neglect, suddenly exhibited the most dangerous symptoms. He spent the few days preceding his death in the exercises of religion, and directed that out of the treasures which he should leave behind him, full restitution should be made to all whom he had wronged, or from whom he had extorted money under the name of benevolence. He expired in the twenty-first year of his reign.

Edward is said to have been the most accomplished, and, till he grew too unwieldy, the most handsome man of the age. The love of pleasure was his ruling passion. Few princes have been more magnificent in their dress,<sup>114</sup> or more licentious in their amours: few have indulged more freely in the luxuries of the table.<sup>115</sup> But such pursuits often interfered with his duties, and at last incapacitated him for active exertion. Even in youth, while he was fighting for the throne, he was always the last to join his adherents: and in manhood, when he was firmly seated on it, he entirely abandoned the charge of

<sup>114</sup> At the Christmas before his death he appeared in a new dress. His robes were furnished with sleeves enormously long and deep, lined with the most precious furs, and folded back on his shoulders: "Novum," says the historian, "et singulare intuentibus spectaculum." Cont. Croy. 563.

<sup>115</sup> In homine tam corpulento, tantis sodalitiis, vanitatibus, crapulis, luxui, et cupiditatibus dedito. Id. 564.

CHAP.  
III.

military affairs to his brother the duke of Gloucester.<sup>116</sup> To the chief supporters of the opposite party he was cruel and unforgiving: the blood which he shed, intimidated his friends no less than his foes: and both lords and commons during his reign, instead of contending like their predecessors for the establishment of rights, and the abolition of grievances, made it their principal study to gratify the royal pleasure.<sup>117</sup> He was as suspicious as he was cruel. Every officer of government, every steward on his manors and farms, was employed as a spy on the conduct of all around him: they regularly made to the king reports of the state of the neighbourhood; and such was the fidelity of his memory, that it was difficult to mention an individual of any consequence, even in the most distant counties, with whose character, history, and influence he was not accurately acquainted.<sup>118</sup> Hence every project of opposition to his government was suppressed almost as soon as it was

<sup>116</sup> During the Scottish campaign posts were first established in England. Horsemen were placed at the distance of twenty miles from each other on the road from Scotland to London. They delivered the dispatches from one to another at the rate of 100 miles a day. Cont. Croyl. 571.

<sup>117</sup> Id. 562. 564.

<sup>118</sup> We shall search in vain on the rolls for such petitions, as were presented to the throne by the commons in former reigns: but one improvement was firmly established, that of framing the petitions in the form of an act of parliament: an improvement which prevented any of those alterations in the statutes of which the commons formerly complained. The clerks had now nothing more to do than to copy the words of the petition, and add to it that the king had given his assent.

formed: and Edward might have promised himself a long and prosperous reign, had not continued indulgence enervated his constitution, and sown the seeds of that malady, which consigned him to the grave in the forty-first year of his age. He was buried with the usual pomp in the new chapel at Windsor.<sup>119</sup>

The king left two sons, Edward in his twelfth year, who succeeded him, and Richard in his eleventh, duke of York, and earl marshal. This young prince had been married in his fifth year to Anne, the daughter and heiress of John Mowbray, duke of Norfolk, and thus became entitled to the immense estates of that nobleman. Five of Edward's daughters survived him. Of these four, whom he had so anxiously laboured to place on foreign thrones, found husbands in England. Elizabeth, contracted to the dauphin, was married to Henry VII.; Cecily, the destined wife of the prince of Scotland, to the viscount Welles; Anne, who had been promised to Philip of Burgundy, to Thomas Howard duke of Norfolk; and Catharine, the expected bride of the infant of Spain, to William Courtenay earl of Devonshire. Bridget became a nun in the convent at Dartford.

---

<sup>119</sup> The ceremony of his interment may be read in Sandford (General Hist. p. 4—13). Immediately after his death he was exposed on a board, naked from the waist upwards, during ten hours, that he might be seen by all the lords spiritual and temporal, and by the mayor and aldermen of London. *Ibid.*

## CHAP. IV.

## EDWARD V.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emperor of Ger.</i> | <i>King of Scotland.</i> | <i>King of France.</i> | <i>Sover. of Spain.</i> | <i>Pope.</i> |
|------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|
| Frederic III.          | James III.               | Louis XI.              | Isabella & Ferdinand {  | Sixtus IV.   |

CONDUCT OF THE DUKE OF GLOCESTER — ARRESTS — THE DUKE IS MADE PROTECTOR — MURDER OF LORD HASTINGS AND THE EARL RIVERS — PENANCE OF JANE SHORE — THE DUKE ASPIRES TO THE CROWN — SERMON IN HIS FAVOUR — SPEECH OF THE DUKE OF BUCKINGHAM — OFFER OF THE CROWN TO GLOCESTER — WHO ACCEPTS IT.

CHAP.  
IV.  
~~~~~  
State of
parties at
the death of
Edward.

A FAINT glimmering of light may be thrown on the dark transactions, which followed the death of the late king, by adverting to the state of parties at the close of his reign. Whether it were that Edward had been compelled by the importunities of his wife, or that he felt a pride in aggrandizing the family of her whom he had placed by his side on the throne, he had successively raised her relations from the condition of knights and esquires to the highest honours and offices

in the state. By the more ancient nobility their rapid elevation was viewed with jealousy and resentment: and their influence, though it appeared formidable, while it was supported by the favour of the king, proved in the sequel to be very inconsiderable, and confined to the few families into which they had married. The marquess of Dorset, the queen's son by a former marriage, and her brother, the accomplished but unfortunate earl Rivers, possessed the first seats at the council board: but they were continually opposed by the lords Hastings, Howard, and Stanley, the king's personal friends, particularly the first, whom Edward had chosen for the companion of his pleasures, and who on that very account was the more odious to the queen. The monarch, during his health, had balanced by his prudence the rivalry, and silenced by his authority the dissensions, of the two parties: and on his death bed, warned by the unfortunate minority of Henry VI., had called them into his chamber, exhorted them to mutual forgiveness, and commanded them to embrace in his presence. They obeyed with apparent cheerfulness: but their hearts gave the lie to the sentiments which they uttered, and the lapse of a few days proved how treacherous were all such reconciliations, when he by whose order they had been made, no longer lived to enforce them.¹

¹ More's Works, 38—40, edit. of 1557. For our knowledge of the events of this period we are chiefly indebted to the continuator

CHAP.
IV.
Orders is-
sued for
the coro-
nation of
his son.
April 9.

As soon as the king had expired, the council assembled, and resolved to proclaim his eldest son by the style of Edward V. But here their unanimity ended. The young prince, accompanied by his uncle earl Rivers, and his uterine brother lord Gray, had been sent to Ludlow in Shropshire, under the pretext that his presence would serve to restrain the natives of Wales; but in reality that by growing up under their tuition, he might become more attached to his maternal relatives. A suspicion was entertained, that, in imitation of Isabella, the mother of Edward III., the queen would aspire to a considerable share of authority during the minority of her son; and to defeat her designs, the enemies of the Wydeviles anxiously expected the arrival of the two first princes of the blood, the duke of Gloucester the king's uncle, and the duke of Buckingham the lineal descendant of Thomas of Woodstock, the youngest son of Edward III. When Elizabeth proposed that

of the history of Croyland, and sir Thomas More. The first was a contemporary. His name is unknown; but it appears from his work that he was a doctor of canon law, sometime a member of the council under Edward IV., and occasionally employed by him as envoy to foreign powers (p. 557). He declares that he has written with truth and impartiality. *Sine ulla scita intermixtione mendacii, odii, aut favoris, 575.* Sir Thomas More was born in 1480. In 1513, when he was under-sheriff of London, he wrote his history of Richard III. from the accounts of contemporaries. In substance he generally agrees with the preceding writer: in circumstances of smaller import, he sometimes differs from him. In that case I prefer the authority of the continuator.

Rivers and Gray should conduct Edward from Ludlow to the metropolis under the protection of an army, Hastings and his friends took the alarm. Gloucester and Buckingham were still absent; the Tower was in possession of the marquess of Dorset: the king was surrounded by the queen's creatures: and the addition of an army would place her opponents at her mercy, and enable the Wydeviles to establish their authority. Where, they asked, was the necessity of an army? Who were the enemies, against whom it was to be directed? Did the Wydeviles mean to break the reconciliation, which they had sworn to observe? A long and angry altercation ensued: Hastings declared that he would quit the court, and retire to his command at Calais: the queen thought it prudent to yield: and in an evil hour the resolution was taken that the retinue of the young king should not exceed two thousand horsemen.²

Richard duke of Gloucester was a prince of insatiable ambition, who could conceal the most bloody projects under the mask of affection and loyalty. Having the command of the army against the Scots, he was employed in the marches at the time of his brother's death: but the moment he heard of that event, he repaired to York with a train of six hundred knights and esquires dressed in mourning, ordered the ob-

Conduct
of Richard
duke of
Gloces-
ter.

² Cont. Croyl. 565. More, 41.

CHAP.
IV.
—

sequies of the deceased king to be performed with royal magnificence in the cathedral, summoned the gentlemen of the county to swear allegiance to Edward V.; and, to give them an example, was himself the first who took the oath. At the same time he dispatched letters to profess his affection and loyalty to his nephew, to condole with Elizabeth on the loss of her consort, and to offer his friendship to the earl Rivers, and the other lords of the queen's family. Having added to the number of his followers, he proceeded southward, avowedly for the purpose of assisting at the coronation, which had been fixed by the council for the fourth of May.³

He receives the king's relations.

April 29.

With the secret messages which during this interval had passed between the duke, and Buckingham, and Hastings, we are unacquainted: of their import we may form a probable conjecture from the events, which immediately succeeded. The young Edward had reached Stony Stratford on his road to London, on the same day on which his uncle arrived at Northampton, about ten miles behind him. The lords Rivers and Gray immediately turned back to welcome Gloucester in the name of the king, and to submit to his approbation the orders, which had been framed for the royal entry into the metropolis. They were received with distinction, and invited to dine with the duke, who

³ Cont. Croyl. 565. More, 41.

lavished on them marks of his esteem and friendship. In the evening came the duke of Buckingham with a suite of three hundred horsemen. After supper Rivers and Gray retired to their quarters, highly pleased with their reception: the two princes, left to themselves, arranged the plan of their proceedings for the next day.

CHAP.

IV.

In the morning it was discovered that every outlet from the town had been strongly guarded during the night, for the purpose, it was said, of preventing any person from paying his respects to the king before the arrival of his uncle. The circumstance awakened suspicion: but the four lords rode in company, and apparently in friendship, to the entrance of Stony Stratford, when Gloucester suddenly accused Rivers and Gray of having estranged from him the affection of his nephew. They denied the charge, but were immediately arrested, and conducted into the rear. The two dukes proceeded to the house where the king resided, and approached him bending the knee, and professing their loyalty and attachment. But after this outward demonstration of respect, they apprehended sir Thomas Vaughan, and sir Richard Hawse, his confidential servants, ordered the rest of his retinue to disperse, and forbade by proclamation any of them to return into the royal presence under the penalty of death. The prince, abandoned and alarmed, burst into tears: but Glo-

And ar-
rests them.

April 30.

CHAP.
IV.
—

cester, on his knees, conjured him to dismiss his terrors, to rely on the affection of his uncle, and to believe that these precautions had been rendered necessary by the perfidy of the Wydevilles. He conducted Edward back to Northampton, and ordered the four prisoners to be conveyed under a strong guard to the castle of Pontefract.⁴

The same evening this mysterious transaction was confidentially announced to the Lord Hastings, and soon afterwards was communicated to the queen mother, who, foreboding the ruin of her family, hastily retired with her second son Richard, her five daughters, and the marquess of Dorset, into the sanctuary at Westminster. That asylum had formerly been respected by her greatest enemy, the earl of Warwick: it would not, she trusted, be violated by a brother-in-law. The capital was instantly thrown into confusion. The citizens armed themselves: some repaired to Elizabeth in Westminster; others to the lord Hastings in London. That nobleman in general terms assured his friends, what he probably believed himself, that the two dukes were loyal subjects: but their real purpose was preserved an impenetrable secret; and the adherents of the queen, without a leader, and without information, awaited the result in the most anxious uncertainty.⁵

⁴ *Cont. Croyl.* 565. *More*, 41, 42.

⁵ *Cont. Ibid.* 565, 566. *More*, 43.

CHAP.
IV.

~~~~~  
 The young  
 king en-  
 ters Lon-  
 don,  
 May 4.

On the fourth of May, the day originally appointed for the coronation, Gloucester conducted his captive nephew into the metropolis. At Hornsey park they were met by the lord mayor and aldermen in scarlet, followed by five hundred citizens in violet. The young king wore a long mantle of blue velvet, his attendants were dressed in deep mourning: Gloucester rode before him with his head bare, and pointed him out to the acclamations of the citizens. He was lodged with all the honours of royalty in the palace of the bishop, and immediately received the fealty and homage of the prelates, lords, and commoners who were present. A great council had been summoned, and continued to sit during several days. On the motion of the duke of Buckingham the king was removed to the Tower: a distant day, the 22nd of June, was fixed for the coronation: fifty lords and gentlemen were summoned to receive the order of knighthood preparatory to that ceremony: the seals were taken from the archbishop of York and given to the bishop of Lincoln: several officers of the crown were dismissed, to make room for the adherents of the ruling party: and Gloucester, who had been appointed protector, assumed the lofty style of “ brother and uncle “ of kings, protectour and defensour, gret chamb-“ berlayne, constable, and lord high admiral of “ England.”<sup>6</sup>

The duke  
 is made  
 protector.

<sup>6</sup> Cont. Croyl. 566. More, 47. Rym. xii. Buck, 522. 185.  
 Fab. 513. Drake's Eborac. 115.

CHAP.  
IV.  
~~~

What may have been the original object of this prince, can be only matter for conjecture. It is not often that the adventurer discerns at the outset the goal to which he ultimately arrives. The tide of events bears him forward: and past success urges him still to higher attempts. If the duke aspired to nothing more than the protectorate, his ambition was not to be blamed. It was a dignity which the precedents of the two last minorities seemed to have attached to the king's uncle. But it soon appeared that he could not stand so near to the throne, without wishing to place himself on it: and that when he had once taken his resolve, no consideration of blood, or justice, or humanity, could divert him from his object. He proceeded, however, with that caution and dissimulation which marked his character: his designs were but gradually and partially unfolded: nor did he openly avow his pretension to the crown, till he had removed the most trusty of the king's friends, and taken from the rest the very hope of opposing him with success.

Murder of
the lord
Hastings.

While orders were issued and preparations made for the expected coronation, Gloucester was busily employed in maturing his plans, and dispatching instructions to his adherents. With consummate art he divided the council, ordering the members, distinguished by their attachment to Edward, to hold their sittings in the Tower: while those to whom he dared impart the secret of his ambition, held their meetings

at Crosby place, his own residence in London. This separation of the council awakened the jealousy of lord Stanley, who communicated his suspicions to Hastings: but that minister replied, that there was no reason of alarm: and that he kept a confidant at Crosby place, from whom he was sure to learn all the duke's secrets. The next day the protector took his seat at the council in the Tower. After a short pause he struck his fist upon the table; a voice at the door exclaimed treason; and a body of armed men burst into the room. Hastings and Stanley, with the prelates of York and Ely, men whose attachment to the sons of the late king he despaired to subdue, were instantly arrested. The three last were confined in separate cells; Hastings was told to prepare for immediate execution. It was in vain that he inquired the cause. The order of the protector would not admit of delay: the first priest who offered himself, received his confession; and a piece of timber, which accidentally lay in the yard at the door of the chapel, served for the block on which he was beheaded. A proclamation was issued the same afternoon, announcing that Hastings and his friends had conspired to put to death the dukes of Gloucester and Buckingham, who had most miraculously escaped the snare laid for their destruction.⁷

CHAP.
IV.

June 12.

June 13.

⁷ Cont. Croyl. 566. More, 53, 54.

CHAP.
IV.
~~~~~  
And of the  
prisoners  
at Ponte-  
fract.

June 15.

June 19.

On the same day (and the time should be noticed) Ratcliffe, one of the boldest partisans of the protector, at the head of a numerous body of armed men, entered the castle of Pontefract, and made himself master of the earl Rivers, the lord Gray, sir Thomas Vaughan, and sir Richard Hawse. To the spectators it was announced that they had been guilty of treason: but no judicial forms were observed; and the heads of the victims were struck off in the presence of the multitude.<sup>8</sup> Two days afterwards a letter from the duke was delivered by Ratcliffe to the mayor and citizens of York, informing them of the traitorous designs imputed to Elizabeth and the Wydeviles; and four days later proclamations were issued in the northern counties, commanding all men "to rise, and come to London "under the earl of Northumberland and the lord "Nevil, to assist in subduing, correcting, and "punishing the quene, her blode, and other her "adherents, who entended to murder and de- "stray the protectour and his cousyn the duc "of Buckyngham, and the old royal blode of "the realm."<sup>9</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> Cont. Croyl. 567. More says it was the same day, 54.

<sup>9</sup> See the originals in Drake's Eboracum, 115. It is observable that on the 8th Richard wrote to the citizens of York a cajoling letter, promising to reward them for their constant attachment to him: two days later, on the 10th, but three days before the murders in the Tower and at Pontefract, he wrote again to inform them of the plots against his life by the queen and her friends. The letter

CHAP.  
IV.

~~~~~  
The queen
surrenders
her second
son.

June 16.

With these proceedings in the north, the inhabitants of London were yet unacquainted : but the murder of Hastings and the arrest of Stanley and the two prelates had liberated Richard from all apprehensions on the part of those, who were most attached to the family of the late king. Of the royal brothers the elder had been securely lodged in the Tower : the younger still remained in sanctuary under the eye of Elizabeth. Him also the protector resolved to have at his mercy : and before the terror created by the late execution could subside, he proceeded to Westminster in his barge, accompanied by several noblemen and prelates, and followed by a numerous body of armed men. There cannot be a doubt that he intended to employ force, if force should be found necessary : but he determined to try first the influence of persuasion, and ordered a deputation of lords with the cardinal of Canterbury at their head, to enter and demand the young prince from his mother. The ingenious arguments which sir Thomas More has attributed to the prelate, and the affecting replies which he has put in the mouth of the queen, are probably the composition of that writer :¹⁰ a better authority assures us that Elizabeth, convinced of the inutility of resistance, affected to acquiesce with cheerfulness in the

was five days on the road. Drake, 115. We may presume that the order to Ratcliffe was sent about the same time.

¹⁰ More, 48—51.

CHAP. demand. She called for her boy, gave him a
IV. last and hasty embrace, and turning her back,
~~~ burst into tears. The innocent victim was con-  
ducted with great pomp to the Tower: and  
while the mother abandoned herself to the pro-  
phetic misgivings of her heart, her sons made  
themselves happy in the company of each other,  
little suspecting the wiles and cruelty of their  
unnatural uncle.<sup>11</sup>

Penance  
of Jane  
Shore.

The partisans of the protector were now em-  
ployed to circulate the most strange and in-  
credible rumours. Some revived the tale, ori-  
ginally invented by Clarence, that the late king,  
though the reputed son of the duke of York,  
was in reality the fruit of an adulterous inter-  
course between his mother Cecily and a knight  
in the service of her husband. Others, and in  
greater numbers, affected to throw doubts on  
the validity of his marriage with Elizabeth, and  
consequently on the legitimacy of his children  
by that lady. To aid these impressions the  
protector appeared in a new character, that  
of the patron and avenger of public morals.  
Among the married women, who were known  
to have yielded to the unprincipled desires of  
Edward, was Jane, the wife of Shore, a young  
and opulent citizen. From the moment that  
her seduction became public, she had been  
abandoned by her husband: and notwithstanding-

---

<sup>11</sup> Cont. Croyl. 566.

ing the inconstancy of her lover, contrived to retain the principal place in the king's affections till the time of his death. This woman Richard now singled out for punishment. Her plate and jewels, to the value of three thousand marks, he very wisely appropriated to himself: her person he delivered to the ecclesiastical court to be punished according to the canons. In her kirtle, with her feet bare, carrying a lighted taper in her hand, and preceded by the cross, Shore was compelled to walk through the streets of the capital, lined with an immense concourse of people.<sup>12</sup> That her penance could not affect the title of Edward's children, is evident: but it served to direct the attention of the public to the dissolute conduct of that monarch, and to prepare men for the marvellous scene which was soon to be exhibited.

A body of Welshmen, raised by the duke of Buckingham, had now reached London: the banditti, that had murdered the prisoners at Pontefract, were in the neighbourhood: and the force under the earl of Northumberland would, it was expected, be able to crush all opposition in the north. In these circumstances no danger

Sermon in  
favour of  
the protec-  
tor's right  
to the  
crown.

<sup>12</sup> More, 56, 57. He gives her in one respect a commendable character. "Many the king had: but her he loved: whose favour, " to say the truth (for sin it were to belie the devil) she never abused " to any man's hurt, but to many a man's comfort and relief....and " now she beggeth of many at this day living, that at this day had " begged, if she had not been." Ibid.

CHAP. could be apprehended from the public exposure  
IV. of Gloucester's object: On the next Sunday he  
June 22. appointed Dr. Shaw, the brother of the lord  
mayor, to preach at St. Paul's cross, who selected  
for his text the following passage of the Book  
of Wisdom: "Bastard slips shall not strike  
"deep roots." Having maintained from differ-  
ent examples that children were seldom per-  
mitted to enjoy the fruit of their father's in-  
iquity, he proceeded to describe the well known  
libertinism of the late king, who, he averred,  
had been in the habit of promising marriage to  
every woman, whom he found it difficult to seduce.  
Thus, in the beginning of his reign, to  
gratify his passion, he had not hesitated to con-  
tract marriage in private with Eleanor, the  
widow of the lord Boteler of Sudely:<sup>13</sup> and  
afterwards had married in the same clandestine  
manner Elizabeth, the widow of sir John Gray.  
At a subsequent period he had thought proper  
to acknowledge the second contract: but such  
acknowledgment could not annul the prior right  
of Eleanor, who in the eyes of God and man  
was the true wife of the king. Hence the  
preacher concluded that Elizabeth, though ad-  
mitted as queen of England, could be consider-  
ed in no other light than a concubine; and that

---

<sup>13</sup> In sir Thomas More, Elizabeth Lucy is substituted for lady Boteler. It is probably an accidental mistake, as both had been Edward's mistresses. More, 61.

her children by Edward had no legitimate claim to the succession of their father. Indeed, he entertained a doubt, whether that prince were in reality the son of Richard duke of York, and real heir to the crown. All who had been acquainted with the duke must know that there existed no resemblance between him and Edward. “But,” he exclaimed (and at the very moment the protector, as if by accident, passing through the crowd, shewed himself from a balcony near the pulpit) “here, in the duke of ‘‘ Gloucester, we have the very picture of that ‘‘ hero: here every lineament reflects the fea- ‘‘ tures of the father.” It was expected that at these words the citizens would have exclaimed, “Long live king Richard;” but they gazed on each other in silent astonishment: the protector put on an air of displeasure; and the preacher having hastily concluded his sermon, slunk away to his home. It is said that he never after ventured beyond his own door, but pined away through shame and remorse.<sup>14</sup>

---

<sup>14</sup> More, 60, 61. This sermon is rejected by the author of the *Historic Doubts*. That several of the speeches recorded by Sir Thomas More, are mere rhetorical exercises, is indeed probable: but it is equally probable that in mentioning this public and celebrated sermon, which was still in the recollection of many of his readers, he would preserve at least its substance. The principal part of his narrative is moreover corroborated by the testimony of Fabian (p. 514, 515), who was probably present. To the objection that the protector lived in habits of friendship with his mother, and therefore would not allow her character to be aspersed, it may be

CHAP.  
IV.  
Speech of  
the duke  
of Buck-  
ingham.  
June 24.

Richard, however, was not disconcerted by the failure of this attempt; but intrusted his cause to the eloquence of a more noble advocate. On the next Tuesday the duke of Buckingham, attended by several lords and gentlemen, harangued the citizens from the hustings at the Guildhall. He reminded them of Edward's tyranny, of the sums which he had extorted under the name of benevolence, and of the families which he had rendered unhappy by his avarours. He then took occasion to allude to the sermon which they had heard on the last Sunday, the story of the king's precontract with the lady Boteler, his subsequent union with the lady Gray, and the illegitimacy of the children, the fruit of that pretended marriage. He added, that evidently the right to the crown was in Richard duke of Gloucester, the only true issue of the duke of York, and that the lords and commons of the northern counties had sworn never to submit to the rule of a bastard. Contrary to his expectation the citizens were still silent: he at length required an answer, whether it were in favour of the protector or not: and a few persons, hired for the purpose, and stationed at the bottom of the hall, having thrown up their bonnets, and exclaimed, "King Richard,"

---

replied that there is no satisfactory proof of that friendship, and that the man who could shed the blood of two nephews to procure the crown, would not refuse to allow the character of his mother to be slandered for the same purpose.

the duke gave the assembly his thanks for their assent, and invited them to accompany him the next day to Baynard's castle, the residence of the duke of Gloucester.<sup>15</sup>

In the morning Buckingham, with several lords and gentlemen, and Shaw with the principal citizens, proceeded to the palace, and demanded an audience. The protector affected to be surprised at their arrival : expressed apprehensions for his safety ; and when at last he shewed himself at a window, appeared before them with strong marks of embarrassment and perturbation. Buckingham, with his permission, presented to him an address, which, having been afterwards embodied in an act of parliament, still exists for the information of posterity. It is styled the consideration, election, and petition of the lords spiritual and temporal, and commons of this realm of England : and after an exaggerated picture of the former prosperity of the kingdom, and of its misery under the late king, proceeds thus : “Also we “consider how the pretended marriage betwixt “the above-named king Edward and Elizabeth “Gray, was made of great presumption, with-“out the knowing and assent of the lords of “this land, and also by sorcery and witchcraft “committed by the said Elizabeth and her “mother Jacquetta dutchess of Bedford, as the

Petition  
presented  
to the pro-  
tector.  
June 25.

<sup>16</sup> More, 61—65. Fab. 515.

CHAP. " common opinion of the people, and the public  
IV. " voice and fame is throughout all this land,  
~~ " and hereafter, if and as the case shall require,  
" shall be proved sufficiently in time and place  
" convenient: and here also we consider how  
" that the said pretended marriage was made  
" privily and secretly, without edition of banns,  
" in a private chamber, a profane place; and not  
" openly in the face of the church after the law  
" of God's church, but contrary thereunto, and  
" the laudable custom of the church of Eng-  
" land: and how also that at the time of the  
" contract of the said pretended marriage, and  
" before and long after, the said king Edward  
" was and stood married and trotli-plight to one  
" dame Eleanor Butteler, daughter to the old  
" earl of Shrewsbury, with whom the said king  
" Edward had made a precontract of matrimony  
" long time before he made the said pretended  
" marriage with the said Elizabeth Gray in man-  
" ner and form aforesaid: which premises being  
" true, as in very truth they be true, it appear-  
" eth and followeth evidently that the said king  
" Edward, during his life, and the said Eliza-  
" beth, lived together sinfully and damnable in  
" adultery against the law of God and of his  
" church. Also it appeareth evidently and fol-  
" loweth, that all the issue and children of the  
" said king Edward be bastards, and unable to  
" inherit or to claim any thing by inheritance  
" by the law and custom of England." Next is

recited the attainder of the duke of Clarence, by which his children were debarred from the succession, and thence it is inferred that the protector is the next heir to Richard late duke of York. "And hereupon," continues the petition, "we humbly desire, pray, and require "your noble grace, that according to this election of us the three estates of your land, as by "your true inheritance, you will accept and "take upon you the said crown and royal dignity, with all things thereto annexed and "appertaining, as to you of right belonging, as "well by inheritance as by lawful election."<sup>16</sup>

The protector was careful not to dispute the truth of these assertions. But he replied with modesty, that he was not ambitious: that royalty had no charms for him: that he was much attached to the children of his brother, and resolved to preserve the crown that it might grace the brows of his nephew. "Sir," returned the duke of Buckingham, "the free people of England "will never crouch to the rule of a bastard, and "if the lawful heir refuse the sceptre, they know "where to find one who will cheerfully accept "it." At these words Richard affected to pause: and after a short silence replied, "that it was "his duty to obey the voice of his people: that "since he was the true heir and had been chosen "by the three estates, he assented to their peti-

He accepts  
the crown.

<sup>16</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 240, 241. Cont. Croyl. 567.

CHAP.  
IV.  
~~~~~

“tion, and would from that day take upon himself the royal estate, pre-eminence, and kingdom of the two noble realms of England and France, the one from that day forward by him and his heirs to rule, the others by God’s grace and their good help to get again and subdue.”¹⁷

And takes possession.

Thus ended this hypocritical farce. The next day Richard proceeded to Westminster in state, and took possession of his pretended inheritance by placing himself on the marble seat in the great hall, with the lord Howard, afterwards duke of Norfolk, on his right hand, and the duke of Suffolk on his left. He observed to the people that he had chosen to commence his reign in that place, because the administration of justice was the first duty of a king: and ordered proclamation to be made that he forgave all offences which had been committed against him before that hour. From Westminster he went to St. Paul’s, where he was received by the clergy in procession, and welcomed with the acclamations of the people. From that day, the 26th of June, he dated the commencement of his reign.¹⁸

¹⁷ More, 66.¹⁸ Id. 67. Fab. 515. Cont. Croyl. 566, and Richard’s own letter to the garrison of Calais, Buck, p. 522. See Note [A] at the end of the volume.

CHAP. V.

RICHARD III.

CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

<i>Emperor of Ger.</i>	<i>King of Scotland.</i>	<i>Kings of France.</i>	<i>Sovers. of Spain.</i>	<i>Popes.</i>
Frederic III.	James III.	Louis XI... 1483. Charles VIII.	Isabella Ferdinand }	Sixtus IV... 1484. Innocent VIII.

CORONATION OF RICHARD — DEATH OF HIS TWO NEPHEWS — CONSPIRACY AGAINST HIM DEFEATED — IS RECONCILED WITH ELIZABETH — WISHES TO MARRY HIS NIECE — RAISES AN ARMY AGAINST THE EARL OF RICHMOND — IS KILLED IN THE BATTLE AT BOSWORTH.

THE preparations which had been made for the coronation of the nephew, served to hasten that of the uncle. In less than a fortnight from his acceptance of the petition at Baynard's castle, Richard was crowned at Westminster with his consort Anne, the daughter of the late earl of Warwick. No expense was spared to give splendour to the ceremony: almost all the peers and peeresses graced it with their presence: and it was remarked that the train of the king was borne by the duke of Buckingham, that of the queen by the countess of Richmond, both

CHAP.
V.

Corona-
tion of
Richard.
1483.
July 6.

CHAP.
V.
~~~

descendants of John of Ghent, and the heads of the house of Lancaster.<sup>1</sup>

The new king employed the first<sup>3</sup> days of his reign in acts of favour and clemency. The lord Stanley, the husband of the countess of Richmond, had not only appeased his jealousy, but was appointed steward of the household : the archbishop of York regained his liberty : Merton bishop of Ely was released from his dungeon in the Tower, and committed to the custody of the duke of Buckingham in the castle of Brecknock ; the lord Howard obtained the office of earl marshal, with the title of duke of Norfolk : his son was created earl of Surrey : many of the nobility were raised to a higher rank : and the treasures amassed and left by Edward, were lavishly employed in the reward of past, and the purchase of future services.

His progress through the kingdom.

Richard had of late affected an extraordinary zeal for the suppression of crime, and the reformation of manners. Before their departure he called the lords before him and admonished them to keep the peace in their counties, and

<sup>1</sup> Cont. Croyl. 567. Hall, 25, 26. In the *Historic Doubts* (p. 65.) we are told that the deposed prince walked in the procession : because it appears that robes were ordered for him and his henchmen or pages. The inference is far from correct, as the robes charged in the roll (Archaeol. i. 372, 373), are probably those which had been ordered and made for Edward's *own* coronation. To have forced him to walk on such an occasion would have been a dangerous experiment : nor could it have escaped the notice of the contemporary writers.

to assist his officers in the apprehension and punishment of offenders. Within a few days he followed them himself, declaring it to be his intention to travel through the kingdom for the same purpose. His progress was slow. In all the great towns he administered justice in person, listened to petitions, and dispensed favours.<sup>2</sup> The inhabitants of Oxford, Woodstock, Gloucester, and Worcester, were honoured with his presence: at Warwick he was joined by the queen, the Spanish ambassadors, and many of the nobility: and the court after a week's residence in that city, proceeded through Coventry, Leicester, Nottingham, and Pontefract, to York.<sup>3</sup> The inhabitants had been previously warned to display every mark of joy, “that the southern lords ‘might mark the resayving of their graces.’” The gentlemen of the neighbourhood had received orders to attend, and to do the king homage: and the royal wardrobe had been forwarded from London, that Richard and his queen might appear in their most splendid dresses. To please the men of the north, among whom he had for some years been popular, he was again crowned with his consort: and the ceremony was performed with the same pomp and pageantry, which had been exhibited in the metropolis.<sup>4</sup>

And coro  
nation at  
York.

<sup>2</sup> Apud Drake, Eborac. 116.

<sup>3</sup> Rouse, 217. I am the

more particular in noticing this progress, as Laing has crowded the whole of it into the short space of seven days, p. 420.

<sup>4</sup> Drake's Eborac. 116, 117. Cont. Croyl. 567.

CHAP.  
V.  
Confe-  
deracy  
against  
him. <sup>1</sup>

While Richard was thus spending his time in apparent security at York, he was apprized of the tempest which had been gathering behind him. The terror of his presence had before silenced the suspicions of the public: but he was no sooner gone, than men freely communicated their thoughts to each other, commiserated the lot of the young Edward and his brother in the Tower, and openly condemned the usurpation of the crown by their unnatural uncle. Different plans were suggested. Some proposed to liberate the two princes from their confinement: others preferred the less dangerous measure of conveying one or more of their sisters beyond the sea, that whatever might be the subsequent policy of Richard, the posterity of his brother might survive to claim, perhaps to recover, the crown. But the king, though it was unknown, had already guarded against the first of these projects by the murder of his nephews: and to prevent the second, he ordered John Nesfield to surround the sanctuary of Westminster with a body of armed men, and to refuse ingress or egress to any person without a special licence.<sup>5</sup> Meanwhile the friends of the princes steadily pursued their object. In Kent, Essex, and Sussex, in Berkshire, Hants, Wilts, and Devonshire, meetings were privately held: a resolution was taken to appeal to arms: and

<sup>5</sup> Cont. Croyl. 567, 568.

the hopes of the confederates were raised by the unexpected accession of a most powerful ally. What, in the course of a few weeks could have changed the duke of Buckingham from a zealous friend into a determined enemy to the new king, it is in vain to conjecture. If his services to Richard had been great, they had been amply rewarded. He had been made constable of England, justiciary of Wales, governor of the royal castles in that principality, and steward of the king's manors in Hereford and Shropshire: and in addition had obtained the opulent inheritance of Humphrey de Bohun, which the late monarch had unjustly annexed to his own demesnes.<sup>6</sup> Perhaps his knowledge of the cruel and suspicious character of the usurper had taught him to fear that he himself, to whom the Lancastrians looked up for protection, might be the next victim: perhaps, as has been said, his opinions were changed by the artful and eloquent observations of his prisoner Morton. However that may be, Buckingham, whose wife was the sister of Elizabeth, engaged to restore the crown to the young prince, whom he had contributed to dethrone: and his resolution to put

---

<sup>6</sup> Bohun had left two daughters, who divided his property between them. One married Henry IV., the other an ancestor of the duke. When the posterity of Henry IV. became extinct in Henry VI., Buckingham claimed the share of the second sister, but it was refused by Edward IV. Most writers say that Richard also refused it: but the contrary appears from Dugdale's Baronage, i. 168.

CHAP. himself at the head of the party was communicated in circular letters to the principal of the confederates. At that very moment, when their hearts beat with the confidence of success, their hopes were suddenly dashed to the ground by the mournful intelligence, that the two princes for whom they intended to fight, were no longer alive.<sup>7</sup>

Death of  
his ne-  
phews.

On what day, or in what manner they perished, was kept a profound secret: the following is the most consistent and probable account, collected from the confession made by the murderers in the next reign. Soon after his departure from London, Richard had tampered in vain with Brakenbury, the governor of the Tower. From Warwick he dispatched sir James Tyrrel, his master of the horse, with orders that he should receive the keys and the command of the fortress during twenty-four hours. In the night Tyrrel, accompanied by Forest, a known assassin, and Dighton, one of his grooms, ascended the staircase leading to the chamber in which the two princes lay asleep. While Tyrrel watched without, Forest and Dighton entered the room, smothered their victims with the bed-clothes, called in their employer to view the dead bodies, and by his orders buried them at the foot of the staircase. In the morning Tyrrel restored the keys to Brakenbury, and rejoined

<sup>7</sup> Cont. Croyl. 568.

the king before his coronation at York. Aware of the execration to which the knowledge of this black deed must expose him, Richard was anxious that it should not transpire: but when he understood that men had taken up arms to liberate the two princes, he suffered the intelligence of their death to be published, that he might disconcert the plans, and awaken the fears of his enemies.<sup>8</sup>

The intelligence was received with horror by both the friends and the foes of the usurper; but, if it changed the object, it did not dissolve the union of the conspirators. They could not retrace their steps with security: and since the princes for whom they had intended to fight were no longer alive, it became necessary to set up a new competitor in opposition to Richard. The bishop of Ely proposed that the crown should be offered to Henry the young earl of Richmond, the representative, in right of his mother, of the house of Lancaster,<sup>9</sup> but on the

Conspi-  
racy in fa-  
vour of the  
earl of  
Rich-  
mond.

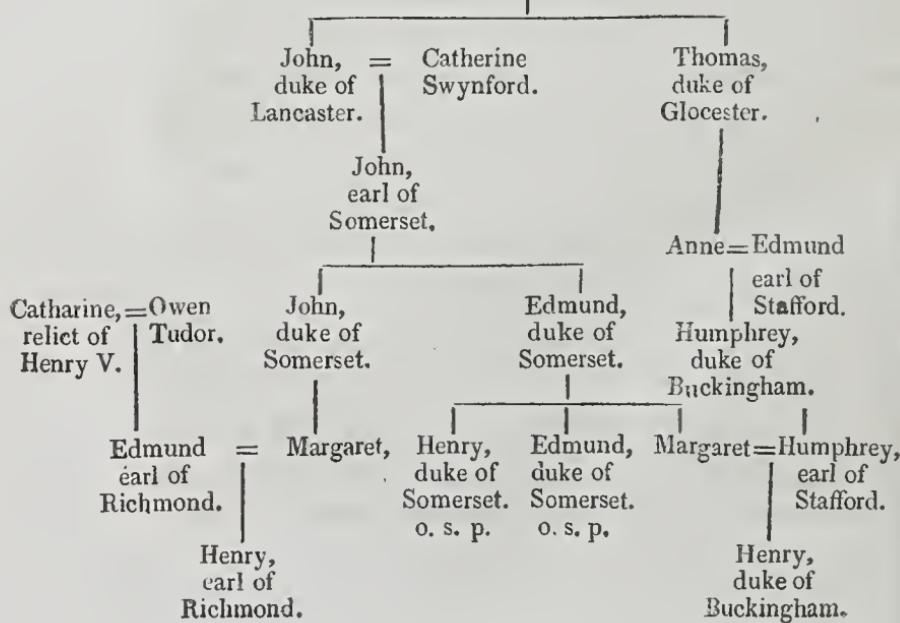
<sup>8</sup> See More's account of the murder, 67, 68. Objections have been raised against it, but I hope to shew that they are of no weight in a note at the end of this volume.—Carte attributes the story of the death of the princes to Buckingham and his friends, as if it were intended to aid the insurrection (iii. 822): from the Croyland historian it is certain that it was published by others, and had at first the effect of disconcerting all their projects. Cont. Croyl. 568.

<sup>9</sup> If Margaret countess of Richmond, was the great-grand-daughter of John Ghent, so was Margaret countess of Stafford, the mother of Buckingham: but as the father of the former was an elder brother, she was deemed the head of the house of Lancaster, and had married Edmund earl of Richmond, the son of queen Catharine by

CHAP.  
V.  
condition that he should marry the princess Elizabeth, to whom the claim of the house of York had now devolved: a marriage which, the prelate observed, would unite the partisans of the two families in one common cause, enable them to triumph over the murderer, and put an end to those dissensions which had so long convulsed and depopulated the nation. The suggestion was approved by the queen dowager, the duke of Buckingham, the marquess of Dorset, and most of their friends: the countess of Richmond consented in the name of her son:

Owen Tudor—Buckingham was descended also from Thomas duke of Gloucester, sixth son of Edward III. These particulars will be plain from the following table :

Edward III.



and a messenger was dispatched to Bretagne, to inform the earl of the agreement, to hasten his return to England, and to announce the eighteenth of October as the day fixed for the general rising in his favour.<sup>10</sup>

CHAP:  
V.  
~~~~

The new plan of the confederates escaped the vigilance of the king, who, ignorant of his danger, proceeded from York into Lincolnshire: but in a fortnight the answer of Henry was received, and was no sooner communicated to his friends, than it reached the ears of Richard. To prepare for the contest, he summoned all his adherents to meet him with their retainers at Leicester, proclaimed Buckingham a traitor, and sent for the great seal from London.¹¹ On the appointed day the rising took place. The marquess of Dorset proclaimed Henry at Exeter: the bishop of Salisbury declared for him in Wiltshire: the gentlemen of Kent met for the same purpose at Maidstone; those of Berkshire at Newberry: and the duke of Buckingham unfurled his standard at Brecknock.¹²

Insurrec-
tion.

Oct. 11.

Oct. 15.

Oct. 18.

Oct. 23.

Five days later, Richard joined his army at Leicester, where he issued a most singular proclamation. He begins by boasting of his zeal for morality and the administration of justice: then calls his enemies “ traitors, adulterers, and “ bawds; asserts that their object is not only

¹⁰ Cont. Croyl. 568.

¹¹ Drake, Eborac. 119. Rym. xii, 203.

¹² Rot. Parl. vi. 245, 246.

CHAP. the destruction of the throne, but “ the letting
V. “ of virtue, and the damnable maintenance of
“ vice ;” grants a free pardon to all yeomen and
commoners who have been deluded by the false
pretensions of the rebels ; threatens with the
punishment of treason all who shall hereafter
lend them assistance ; and promises rewards for
the apprehension of Buckingham and his asso-
ciates.¹³ But Richard’s good fortune served him
better than his troops or his proclamations. Had
Henry landed, or had the duke been able to join
the other insurgents, the reign of the usurper
would probably have been terminated. But
though Henry had sailed from St. Malo with a
fleet of forty sail, the weather was so tempestuous
that but few could follow him across the
channel ; and when he reached the coast of
Devon, the insufficiency of his force forbade
him to disembark. Buckingham was still more
unfortunate. From Brecknock he had marched
through the forest of Dene to the Severn ; but
the bridges were broken down, and the river
was so swoln that the fords had become impassable.
He turned aside to Webly, the seat of
the lord Ferrers : but the Welshmen who had
followed him, disbanded : and the news of their
desertion induced the other bodies of insurgents
to provide for their own safety. Thus the king
triumphed without drawing the sword. Webly

¹³ Rym. xii. 204.

was narrowly watched on the one side by sir Humphrey Stafford, on the other by the clan of the Vaughans, who for their reward had received a promise of the plunder of Brecknock. Morton effected his escape in disguise to the isle of Ely, and thence passed to the coast of Flanders: the duke in a similar dress reached the hut of Bannister, one of his servants in Shropshire, where he was betrayed, either by the perfidy of his host, or the imprudence of those who were acquainted with his retreat. If he hoped for pardon on the merit of his former services, he had mistaken the character of Richard. That prince had already reached Salisbury with his army: he refused to see the prisoner, and ordered his head to be immediately struck off in the market-place. From Salisbury he marched into Devonshire. The insurgents dispersed: the marquess of Dorset, and Courtney bishop of Exeter, crossed the channel to the coast of Bretagne: and the others found an asylum in the fidelity of their neighbours, and the respect which was still paid to the sanctuaries. St. Leger alone was taken, a knight who had married the dutchess of Exeter, the sister of Richard. It was in vain that the plea of affinity was urged in his favour, and a large sum of money offered for his ransom. By the king's order he suffered at Exeter.¹⁴

Nov. 2.

When the conqueror had traversed the south-

¹⁴ Cont. Croyl. 563. 570.

CHAP.

V.

He assem-
bles a par-
liament.

Nov. 11.

ern counties, and by repeated executions punished such of his enemies, as fell into his hands, he returned to the capital, and summoned a parliament. This assembly, like those of the last reign in similar circumstances, proved its loyalty by its eagerness to anticipate every wish of the monarch.¹⁵ It adopted and confirmed the celebrated petition presented to Richard during his protectorate; pronounced him “undoubted “king of this realm of England as well by “right of consanguinity and inheritance, as by “lawful election, consecration and coronation;” and entailed the crown on the issue of his body, particularly his son, Edward prince of Wales, whose succession the lords spiritual and temporal bound themselves to uphold. Then followed a bill of attainder, which, though a common measure in these turbulent times, is said to have been severe and comprehensive beyond all precedent. One duke, one marquess, three earls, three bishops, with many knights and gentlemen, were deprived of their estates, honours, and rights. The forfeitures were employed partly to augment the revenue of the crown, partly to remunerate the king’s northern adherents, who were thus transplanted into the southern counties, and converted into spies on the disaffection of their neighbours. Among

¹⁵ The historian attributes the conduct of the parliament to fear, propter ingentem in constantissimos cadentem metum. Cont. Croyl. 570.

the attainted was the countess of Richmond. But she was spared from execution at the intercession of her husband the lord Stanley, who had convinced Richard of his own loyalty, and who, on his promise to watch over the conduct of his consort, was permitted to retain the possession of her estates during his life.¹⁶

As the marriage between Edward IV. and Elizabeth Gray had now been declared null by the approbation given to the petition presented at Baynard's castle, their son was officially termed "Edward the bastard, lately called Edward the fifth :" his mother was designated Elizabeth late wife of sir John Gray, and the letters patent were annulled by which she had been entitled to her dower as queen of England.¹⁷ Still the king was seriously alarmed at the idea of a marriage between the young earl of Richmond and the eldest of her daughters. At the last festival of Christmas a meeting had been held in Bretagne, where Henry solemnly swore to make her his queen as soon as he should triumph over the usurper ; and the exiles to the number of five hundred had on that condition promised him fealty, and done homage to him as to their sovereign. It was not that Henry of himself could advance any right to the crown. By the father's side he was descended from

Attempts
to defeat
the plans
of Henry.

¹⁶ Rot. Parl. vi. 240—251.

¹⁷ Rym. xii. 259. Rot. Parl. vi. 263.

CHAP. V. Owen Tudor and Catharine, the relict of Henry V.: by the mother's from John Beaufort earl of Somerset, the natural son of John of Ghent by Catharine Swynford. Somerset, indeed, had been legitimated: but the very act by which this favour had been granted, had expressly excluded him and his posterity from the succession to the crown. There were still in Spain and Portugal princes and princesses of the house of Lancaster; but they despised or neglected a disputed title, and the partisans of the family looked up to Henry and his mother as their natural chiefs. Under no circumstances, much less under these, would the lords attached to the house of York, have admitted the claim of the earl of Richmond. But convinced of the death of the two sons of Edward, they considered his eldest daughter as rightful sovereign: and the moment Henry bound himself by oath to marry that princess, they swore fealty to him as the future husband of her, who was by succession queen of England.

Prevails
on Eliza-
beth to
quit the
sanctuary.

1484.
March 1.

To defeat this project now became the chief policy of Richard. That he might draw the late queen out of the sanctuary, he tempted her with the most flattering promises, and harassed her with the most terrible threats. Message after message was interchanged: and at last a private treaty was concluded, in consequence of which he swore in the presence of several lords and prelates, and the mayor and aldermen, that she

and her daughters should be treated by him as his kinswomen ; that their lives should be in no danger ; that the mother should possess an annuity of seven hundred marks for life ; and that each of the daughters should receive two hundred marks as a marriage portion, and be married to none but gentlemen.¹⁸ Induced by these promises she repaired with her family to court ; both mother and daughters were kindly received ; and marks of particular distinction were lavished upon the young Elizabeth, whom Richard had probably destined to be the wife of his son Edward. But that prince suddenly expired at Middleham, and the king and his consort were for a time inconsolable on account of their loss.¹⁹ What Richard's designs might now be with respect to Elizabeth, were unknown : but she was attached to the company of the queen, and thus kept in real though honourable captivity.

At length the king had leisure to direct his attention to Bretagne, where the earl of Richmond and the exiles were busily employed in devising the means of expelling him from the throne. No expense was spared to procure the most accurate information of their numbers and projects ; and the useful aid of Landois, the Breton minister, was purchased with valuable presents. The duke Francis listened by degrees

CHAP.

V.

Death of
the king's
son.
April.

Henry
flees from
Bretagne
into
France.

¹⁸ Buck apud Kennet, p. 528.

¹⁹ Cont. Croyl. 571.

CHAP.
V.
~~~~~  
June 8.

to the suggestions of his favourite : an armistice between the two nations prepared the way for more frequent intercourse : the king raised a body of a thousand archers for the service of his new friend ; and a dark plot was framed for the apprehension of Henry and of his principal adherents.<sup>20</sup> They would have been caught in the toils of their wily adversary, had they not been warned of their danger by Morton, and found a new and safer asylum in the dominions of Charles VIII. king of France, where they employed more than a year in making new preparations for their intended expedition.

Negotiations with Scotland.

During the interval Richard put an end to the tedious and destructive hostilities between the Scots and his subjects. The duke of Albany and the earl Douglas had received from him the same protection, which on a former occasion they had received from his brother : but he was too much occupied with his own concerns to lend them effectual aid ; and their efforts were confined to occasional inroads by land, and piratical depredations by sea. During this summer they had attempted to surprise the merchants at the fair of Lochmaben : but were repulsed with considerable loss, and the capture of Douglas and several of his English associates. This disgrace, however, was more than compensated by the success of the English cruisers

<sup>20</sup> Rym. xii. 226. 229. Argentré, xiii. 26.

CHAP.  
V.  
Sept. 21.

against the commerce of Scotland : and at the solicitation of James an armistice for three years, and an alliance by marriage between the royal families of the two kingdoms, was concluded at Nottingham. Richard, indeed, after the death of his son, was without legitimate children : but he had declared John earl of Lincoln, and son of his sister the dutchess of Suffolk, heir apparent to the crown ; and he now affianced the sister of that young prince, Anne de la Pole, to the eldest son of the king of Scotland. It was mutually stipulated, that the marriage should take place as soon as the parties had arrived at the age of puberty.<sup>21</sup>

At Christmas the king kept his court in the palace of Westminster. Whether it were from policy or inclination, he affected extraordinary magnificence : the holidays were a constant repetition of feasting, balls, and amusements ; and it was remarked with surprise that in every company his niece Elizabeth appeared in robes exactly similar to those worn by the queen consort. Before men could discover the cause of this unusual arrangement, the latter suddenly fell sick ; and Richard in expectation of her death, offered his hand to his niece. Her mother

The king  
wishes to  
marry the  
princess  
Elizabeth.

<sup>21</sup> Rym. xii. 235—246. Rouse informs us that the young earl of Warwick, the son of the late duke of Clarence, was treated at first as heir apparent : but that after some time he was removed, put in close custody, and the young earl of Lincoln substituted for him, p. 218.

CHAP.

V.

1485.

Feb.

March.

But is dis-  
suaded.

is said not to have disapproved of the unnatural union, but to have written to her son the marquess of Dorset at Paris, and to have ordered him to retire from the councils of Henry. The princess herself in a letter which she wrote to the duke of Norfolk, shewed how much she was dazzled with the splendours of royalty. She solicited the good offices of that nobleman in her favour, protested that the king was “ her joy “ and maker in this world, and that she was his “ in heart and thought,” and hinted her surprise at the duration of the queen’s illness, and her apprehensions “ that she would never die.”<sup>22</sup> These apprehensions, however, were soon quieted : in less than a month the queen expired ; and Elizabeth was flattered with the idea of mounting the throne, Richard with the prospect of disconcerting by this marriage the machinations of his rival. But when the king communicated the plan to Ratcliffe and Catesby, confidants by whose advice he was generally ruled, he experienced an unexpected and most obstinate opposition. Their objection perhaps arose, as the historian surmises, from a well-grounded apprehension, that if Elizabeth should become queen, she would revenge on them the murder of her uncle and brother at Pontefract : but their arguments, whatever were their secret motives, deserved the most serious attention of their

---

<sup>22</sup> See Buck, p. 568.

master. They represented to him that this incestuous marriage would be an object of horror to the people, and would be condemned by the clergy: that suspicions were already entertained of his having removed the queen by poison to make room for the niece:<sup>23</sup> that to marry her in the present circumstances would convert such suspicions into a certainty, and would in consequence deprive him of his staunchest adherents, the men of the northern counties, for whose support he had been hitherto indebted to the respect, which they bore to his late consort, as daughter of the great earl of Warwick. The king, though with considerable reluctance, yielded to their remonstrances. In the great hall of the Temple he assured the mayor, aldermen, and commoners, that no such marriage had ever been contemplated; and by a letter to the citizens of York, required them to refuse credit to the slanderous tales which had been circulated, and to apprehend and bring before the council all persons known to advance or propagate reports to his prejudice.<sup>24</sup>

April 11.

<sup>23</sup> From the expressions in Elizabeth's letter mentioned before, there is reason to fear that this suspicion was too true. It is evident Richard had not only promised to marry her, but had told her that the queen would die in February. Hence she observes that the better part of February is past, and the queen still alive. Buck, p. 568.

<sup>24</sup> See the whole account in the Croyland Historian, 572. The letter to the citizens of York is in Drake's *Eboracum*, p. 119. That writer supposes it to have been written in 1484. But as it alludes

CHAP.  
V.  
His difficulties and preparations.

As the time approached, in which the contest for the crown was to be decided, the mind of Richard became the prey of doubts and apprehensions. It may be that the disturbed rest, the imaginary spectres, and the sudden terrors described by sir Thomas More, were the fictions of his enemies:<sup>25</sup> but, unfurnished as he was with money, and suspicious of his adherents, he could not look forward to a contest, in which his crown and life were at stake, without feeling considerable alarm. The treasures left by his brother, the monies arising from the late forfeitures, and three tenths obtained from the clergy, had all been expended. He dared not summon a parliament for the purpose of demanding a subsidy: and to solicit a benevolence he had already pronounced illegal and unconstitutional. Yet his necessities compelled him to adopt the thing, while he refused it the name:

---

to the reports about the marriage, and observes that the king had already explained matters to the citizens of London, which the Croyland Historian says he did some time before Easter, I have no difficulty in fixing it to the present year.

<sup>25</sup> "I have heard by credible report of such as were secret with his chamberers, that he never had quiet in his mind, never thought himself sure. When he went abroad, his eyes whirled about, his body privily fenced, his hand ever on his dagger, his countenance and manner like one always ready to strike again. He took ill rest at nights, lay long waking and musing, sore wearied with care and watch, rather slumbered than slept, troubled with fearful dreams, suddenly sometimes started up, leapt out of bed, and run about the chamber, so was his restless heart continually tossed and troubled with the tedious impression and stormy remembrance of his abominable deed." More, 69.

and though by extorting different sums from the most wealthy of the citizens, he replenished his coffers, he forfeited at the same time the small share, which he retained in their affection.<sup>26</sup> He no longer knew whom to trust or distrust. Daily defections taught him to suspect the fidelity of the most attached among his adherents. Sir Walter Blount, the governor of Ham, deserted to Henry with his prisoner, the old earl of Oxford: several officers of the garrison of Calais, and the sheriffs of some counties, followed their example; and numerous emigrations from the coast doubled the amount of the exiles. But no one gave him more anxiety than Lord Stanley, a nobleman of extensive influence in Cheshire and Lancashire. On the one hand he had hitherto served Richard with unwearied zeal: on the other he had married the mother of the pretender to the crown. To attach him the more firmly to the royal interests, the king had lavished favours upon him: but at the same time to keep him always under his own eye, he had made him steward of the household. When at last lord Stanley urged his former services to obtain permission to visit his estates, Richard consented with reluctance, but retained at court the lord Strange as an hostage for the fidelity of his father.<sup>27</sup>

His dis-  
trust of  
lord Stan-  
ley.

<sup>26</sup> As the king would not allow the name of benevolence to be applied to this extortion, the people gave to it that of malevolence. Cont. Croyl. 572.

<sup>27</sup> Cont. Croyl. 573.

CHAP.  
V.  
His proclama-  
tion.

June 23.

At length the king was informed by his emissaries, that the earl of Richmond with the permission of Charles had raised an army of three thousand adventurers, most of them Normans ; and that a fleet was lying in the mouth of the Seinc to transport them to England. He affected to receive the intelligence with joy ; and immediately to prepare the public for the event, published a long and artful proclamation. It stated that “ the king’s rebels and traitors, disabled and “ attainted by authority of the high court of par-“ liament, of whom many were known for open “ murderers, adulterers, and extortioners, had “ forsaken their natural country, and put them-“ selves at first under the obediēe of the duke “ of Bretagne, to whom they had made promises “ so unnatural and abominable that they had “ been refused by that prince—that they had “ next betaken themselves to the king’s ancient “ enemy, Charles, calling himself king of France, “ and chosen for their captain one Henry Tudor, “ descended of bastard blood both by the father’s “ and the mother’s side, and who therefore could “ never have any claim to the crown of England “ but by conquest—that the said Henry Tudor, “ in order that he might achieve his false intent “ by the aid of the king’s ancient enemy of “ France, had covenanted with him to give up “ in perpetuity all the right, which the king of “ England had to the crown of France, to Nor-“ mandy, Anjou, Mainc, Guienne, Calais, and

“ the marches, and to dissever the arms of  
“ France from the arms of England for ever—  
“ that in more proof of his said purpose of con-  
“ quest, the said Henry Tudor had given away  
“ archbishoprics, bishoprics, and other dignities  
“ spiritual, and the dutchies, earldoms, baronies,  
“ and other inheritances of knights, esquires,  
“ and gentlemen, within the realm—that he in-  
“ tended to change and subvert the laws of the  
“ same, and to do the most cruel murders,  
“ slaughters, robberies, and disherisons, that  
“ were ever seen in any christian realm—where-  
“ fore, the king willed that all his subjects, like  
“ good and true Englishmen, should endower  
“ themselves with all their power for the defence  
“ of them, their wives, children, goods, and here-  
“ ditaments, and as he, like a diligent and cou-  
“ rageous prince, would put his most royal  
“ person to all labour and pain necessary in that  
“ behalf, to the comfort and surety of his faith-  
“ ful subjects, so he commanded all his said  
“ subjects to be ready in their most defensible  
“ array to do his highness service of war, when  
“ they by open proclamation or otherwise should  
“ be commanded so to do, for the resistance of  
“ the king’s said rebels, traitors, and enemies.”<sup>28</sup>

<sup>28</sup> Fenn, ii. 318—326. I have abridged the proclamation, but have, as much as possible, retained the very words, that the reader may notice how near the language approaches to that of the present day. It is dated 23d June, anno 2: which Fenn has made 1484: but as Richard did not begin his reign till the 26th of that month, it should be 1485.

CHAP.  
V.  
July 24.

Henry  
lands in  
Wales.

Having issued instructions to his friends in the maritime counties, and established posts of cavalry on the high roads for the more speedy transmission of intelligence, Richard sent for the great seal, and fixed his head quarters at Nottingham. There he was nearer to his partisans in the north, on whose fidelity he chiefly relied: and thence, as from the centre, he could watch the extremities, of the kingdom. On the first of August his competitor sailed from Harfleur: on the seventh he landed at Milford haven, and directed his march through the northern districts of Wales, a tract of country in the interest of the Stanleys. He met with little to oppose or to encourage him: if the Welsh chieftains did not impede his progress, few joined his standard; and when he took possession of Shrewsbury, his army did not exceed four thousand men. A week elapsed before Richard heard of his landing; but orders were instantly dispatched for all his subjects to meet him at Leicester, with the most alarming menaces against the defaulters. The duke of Norfolk obeyed with the men of the eastern counties, the earl of Northumberland with the northern levies, the lord Lovel from Hampshire, and Brakenbury from London; but the man whom he most feared, the lord Stanley, replied that he was confined to his bed by the sweating sickness. This feint could not deceive the king: and lord Strange, fearing for his life, made an attempt to

escape. He was discovered, taken, and induced to confess, that he himself, his uncle sir William Stanley chamberlain of North Wales, and sir John Savage, had engaged to join the invaders : but he protested that his father was ignorant of their intention, and already on his way to join the royal standard. He was permitted to write to lord Stanley, and inform him that he must accelerate his march, if he wished to save the life of his son.<sup>29</sup>

At Leicester the king found himself at the head of a numerous and well-appointed army, which, had it been attached to its leader, might have trampled under foot the contemptible force that followed the banner of his competitor. But Henry, assured by the promises of his secret adherents, continued to press forward, as if he were determined to rush into the very jaws of destruction. He crossed the Severn at Shrewsbury : at Newport he was joined by the tenantry of the Talbots : at Stafford he had a private conference with sir William Stanley ; and consented, in order to save, if it were possible, the life of lord Strange, that the Stanleys should continue to wear the appearance of hostility, and constantly retire before him, as he advanced. On the twenty-first of August Richard rode from Leicester with the crown on his head, and encamped about two miles from the town of Bos-

Battle of  
Bosworth.

Aug. 21.

<sup>29</sup> Cont. Croyl. 573.

CHAP. worth. The same night Henry proceeded from  
V. Tamworth to Atherston, where he joined the  
Stanleys, and was encouraged by the repeated  
arrivals of deserters from the enemy. In the  
Aug. 22. morning both armies (that of Richard was double  
in number) advanced to Redmore: and the  
vanguards, commanded by the duke of Norfolk  
and the earl of Oxford, engaged. Richard was  
dismayed to see the Stanleys opposed to him,  
the earl of Northumberland remaining inactive  
at his post, and his men wavering and on the  
point of flying, or going over to his competitor.  
Chancing to espy Henry, he determined to win  
the day, or perish in the attempt. Spurring his  
horse and exclaiming, “Treason, treason, trea-  
“son,”<sup>30</sup> he slew with his own hand sir William  
Brandon, the bearer of the hostile standard,  
struck to the ground sir John Cheney, and made  
a desperate blow at his rival, when he was over-  
powered by numbers, thrown from his horse and  
immediately slain. Lord Stanley, taking up the  
crown, placed it on the head of Henry, and the  
conqueror was instantly greeted with the shouts  
of “Long live king Henry.” In the battle and  
pursuit the duke of Norfolk, the lord Ferrers,  
some knights, and about three thousand others  
were killed. The victors lost but few: and to  
add to their joy lord Strange, whom Richard  
had ordered to be beheaded at the beginning of

Richard is  
slain.

the battle, escaped in the confusion, and rejoined his father. The body of the late king was stript, laid across a horse behind a pursuivant at arms, and conducted to Leicester, where, after it had been exposed for two days, it was buried with little ceremony in the church of the Grey friars. Henry entered the town before it with the same royal state with which Richard had marched out the preceding day. He was careful, however, not to stain his triumph with blood. Of all his prisoners three only suffered death, the notorious Catesby, and two persons of the name of Brecher, who probably had merited that distinction by their crimes.<sup>31</sup>

Of the character of Richard it is unnecessary to say much. If he was guilty of the crimes laid to his charge, he was little better than a monster in human shape. Writers have indeed existed in modern times who have attempted to prove his innocence: but their arguments are rather ingenious than conclusive; and dwindle into groundless conjectures when confronted with the evidence, which may be arrayed against them.<sup>32</sup>

---

<sup>31</sup> Count. Croyl. 573—575. Ross, 218. Fab. 520.

<sup>32</sup> See Note [B] at the end of the volume.

## CHAP. VI.

## HENRY VII.

## CONTEMPORARY PRINCES.

| <i>Emperors of Ger.</i>            | <i>Kings of Scotl.</i>        | <i>Kings of France.</i>           | <i>Sovereigns of Spain.</i>        | <i>Popes.</i>                                                                     |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Frederic III. 1493.<br>Maximilian. | James III. 1487.<br>James IV. | Charles VIII. 1498.<br>Louis XII. | Isabella. .... 1504.<br>Ferdinand. | Innocent VIII. 1492.<br>Alexander VI. 1503.<br>Pius III. .... 1503.<br>Julius II. |

PROCEEDINGS IN PARLIAMENT—THE KING'S MARRIAGE—INSURRECTION IN FAVOUR OF A PRETENDED EARL OF WARWICK—CORONATION OF THE QUEEN—WAR IN BRETAGNE—IMPOSTURE OF PERKIN WARBECK—HE IS EXECUTED—ALSO THE EARL OF WARWICK—TREATIES WITH FRANCE—WITH SCOTLAND—WITH SPAIN—MARRIAGE AND DEATH OF PRINCE ARTHUR—HENRY'S RAPACITY—HIS ILLNESS AND DEATH—HIS CHARACTER.

CHAP. VI. *THE* long quarrel between the two houses of York and Lancaster had deluged England with blood: by a fortunate concurrence of circumstances it was given to Henry of Richmond, an exile and an adventurer, without means and without title, to unite the interests of the “two “roses,” and to bequeath to posterity the bless-

*Defects of Henry's title.*

ing of an undisputed succession. From the field of Bosworth he proceeded to Leicester. Victory had placed the crown on his temples : and the absence of a rival secured to him the present possession of the sovereignty. But a perplexing question occurred : on what title he was to ground his claim. On that of hereditary descent ? The right of hereditary descent, even supposing it to be in the family of Lancaster, and not of York, could not be propagated through an illegitimate branch, which, to prevent dispute, had been originally cut off from the succession by act of parliament. Should he then depend on his stipulated marriage with the princess Elizabeth ? But his pride disdained to owe the sceptre to a wife, the representative of a rival and hated family. That would be to justify the dethronement of Henry VI., to acknowledge himself a king only by courtesy, and to exclude his issue by any succeeding marriage from all claim to the throne. There remained the right of conquest : but, though he might appeal to his late victory as an argument that heaven approved of his pretensions,<sup>1</sup> he dared

<sup>1</sup> It was the common persuasion at the time that, as in private duels, so in battles, the event shewed the right of the victorious party. Henry alluded to it in parliament. Rot. Parl. vi. 268. And the same doctrine had been openly maintained by Edward IV. “ In “ division and contraversie moved betwyxt princes upon the “ high soveraigne power rouell, more evident prove or declaration “ of trouth, right and Godds will may not be had than by the means “ of reason, auctoritie, and victorie in batailles,” Rym. xi. 710.

CHAP.  
VI.

not mention the name of conquest, or he would have united his friends with his foes in a common league against him.<sup>2</sup> The question became the subject of long and anxious deliberation ; and it was at last resolved to follow a line of proceeding, which, while it settled the crown on the king and his heirs in general, should not bring either his right, or that of the princess, into discussion.<sup>3</sup>

He sends  
Elizabeth  
to London.

The reader has seen that Richard before his fall, had named his nephew, John de la Pole earl of Lincoln, to be his successor. Him and his pretensions Henry treated with contempt : but there was another prince, Edward Plantagenet, son to the late duke of Clarence, whom he viewed with peculiar jealousy. After the execution of Clarence, Edward IV. had sent for the child to court, and had created him earl of Warwick, the title borne by his grandfather. Even Richard, when his own son was dead, had at first assigned to him the honours of the heir apparent : but afterwards, fearing that he might become a dangerous competitor, had confined him in the castle of Sheriff-hutton in Yorkshire. The first act of the new king at Leicester, was to transfer the young prince, who had only reached his fifteenth year, from his prison in the north to a place of greater security, the Tower.

<sup>2</sup> Because it was taught that a conqueror might dispossess all men of their lands, since they held them of the prince, who had been conquered.

<sup>3</sup> Bacon, 2—4.

The public commiserated the lot of the innocent victim, who thus, to satisfy the ambition of others, was condemned to perpetual imprisonment from his childhood: and the spot chosen for his confinement, a spot so lately stained with the blood of princes, was considered as an omen of his subsequent destiny. The princess Elizabeth had been his fellow captive at Sheriff-hutton. Richard had sent her there as soon as he heard of the invasion; Henry ordered her to be conducted by several noblemen to the house of her mother in London.<sup>4</sup>

The fall of the usurper excited little regret. No man could pity his death, who had pitied the fate of his unoffending nephews. When the conqueror entered the capital, he was received with unequivocal demonstrations of joy. The mayor and principal citizens met him at Hornsey park, and were permitted to kiss his hand. As he passed through the streets in a close carriage, the crowd obstructed his way, that they might behold and greet the deliverer of his country.<sup>5</sup> Before him were borne the ensigns of his triumph, the three standards which had led his small army to victory, and which he devoutly offered on the high altar of St. Paul's.<sup>6</sup> But his coronation was delayed, and the joy of

The king makes his entry into the capital.  
Aug. 28.

<sup>4</sup> Bacon 1.

<sup>5</sup> André, who was present, and recited verses in his honour.—Domit. A. xviii.

<sup>6</sup> These standards were an “ymage of Sainte George, a red firey dragon, and a done kowe.” Hall, i.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~~~  
The
sweating
sickness.

Oct. 30.

the public was damped, by the sudden spread of a disease, which acquired from its predominant symptoms the appellation of the sweating sickness. It generally extinguished life within the course of twenty-four hours: and some idea may be formed of its ravages, when it is known that within eight days it proved fatal to two successive lord mayors, and six of the aldermen of London. At the end of a month, whether it were owing to the greater experience of the physicians, or the coldness of the season, its violence began to abate,⁷ and the new king received the rite of coronation from the hands of the cardinal, archbishop of Canterbury. On that occasion twelve knights bannerets were created; and the king's uncle, the earl of Pembroke was raised to the dignity of duke of Bedford, the lord Stanley to that of earl of Derby, and sir Edward Courteney to that of earl of Devon.⁸ At the same time he appointed a body of select archers, amounting to fifty men, to attend on him by the appellation of yeomen of the guard. The institution excited surprise: but Henry justified it on the ground that by

⁷ After the loss of many lives it was discovered, that if the patient lay still for twenty-four hours, and carefully abstained from whatever might add to the heat, or induce cold, he generally recovered. By this method the mortality was much diminished, when the same disease re-appeared in England, though it still proved fatal to thousands in Flanders and Germany. Hall, 3, 4. Bacon 6.

⁸ Cont. Croyl, 577. Bacon, 6. Hall, 3.

foreign princes a guard was considered as a necessary appendage to the regal dignity.⁹

As soon as he was crowned, the king summoned a parliament; and when the commons presented to him their speaker, was careful to inform them, that "he had come to the throne " by just title of inheritance, and by the sure " judgment of God, who had given him the victory over his enemy in the field :" but, lest they should be alarmed by the last words, he added that every man should continue " to enjoy his rights and hereditaments, with the exception of such persons as in the present parliament should be punished for their offences against his royal majesty."¹⁰ When the commons returned to their own house, an unexpected difficulty arose. A large proportion of the members had been outlawed by the last monarch. Could they sit there in quality of lawgivers? Even the king, who had summoned them together, had been attainted. Was that attaingder to continue unrepealed? Henry was displeased with the boldness of these questions: but dissembling his resentment, he consulted the judges, who replied that as far as regarded the king himself, the crown had cleared away all legal corruption of blood: but that the members attainted by course of law, must forbear

CHAP.
VI.

Proceed-
ings in
parlia-
ment.
Nov. 7.

⁹ Hall, 3. Yet it is certain that former kings had guards of archers, but probably only on particular occasions.

¹⁰ Rot. Parl. vi. 268.

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

to sit, till their attainders had been reversed by equal authority. The advice was followed: all who had been disinherited by Richard, were by one act restored to their former rights: and separate bills were passed in favour of the king's mother, the dukes of Bedford, Buckingham, and Somerset, the marquess of Dorset, the earl of Oxford, the lords Beaumont, Wells, Clifford, Hungerford, Roos, and several others. The whole number of those who profited by this measure, amounted to one hundred and seven.<sup>11</sup>

Settle-  
ment of  
the crown,

The transactions which followed were important and interesting. 1<sup>o</sup>. In the settlement of the crown by legislative enactment, Henry proceeded with cautious and measured steps. Jealous as he was of the pretended right of the house of Lancaster, he was equally sensible that the claim of the princess Elizabeth would prove the firmest support of his throne. Hence he watched all the proceedings with the most scrupulous solicitude. To weaken her claim would be to undermine his own interest: to confirm it would encourage a suspicion that he was conscious of a defect in his own title. He therefore refused both to revive the act of Henry IV., which established the succession in the line of John of Ghent, and to repeal that of Edward IV., which established it in the line of Lionel duke of Cla-

---

<sup>11</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 273. 288. 280—217. Year-book, Term Mich. 1 Henry VII. 5. Bacon, 3.

rence. In his own favour he commanded that all records, containing any mention of his attainder, should be cancelled and taken off the file:<sup>12</sup> in favour of his Lancastrian predecessors, he annulled the act of Edward IV., which had pronounced Henry IV. and Henry V. usurpers; Henry VI. an usurper and traitor, Margaret and Edward, the wife and son of that monarch, traitors, and all the heirs of the body of Henry of Derby incapable of holding or inheriting any estate, dignity, pre-eminence, hereditament, or possession within the realm:<sup>13</sup> and in favour of Elizabeth he repealed the act of the 1st of Richard III., by which that princess had been pronounced a bastard, in common with the rest of her father's children by Elizabeth Gray. Out of respect for her who was to be queen, neither the title nor the body of the act was read in either house. By advice of the judges it was merely designated by the first words; the original was then ordered to be burnt; and all persons possessed of copies, were commanded to deliver them to the chancellor before Easter, under the penalty of fine and imprisonment.<sup>14</sup>

<sup>12</sup> Bacon, 9.

<sup>13</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 288. An act was

also passed restoring Elizabeth the widow of Edward IV. to the same title and dignity, as she would have had, if no act had passed against her under Richard III.: and rendering her able to plead, and be impleaded, and to receive and grant lands and chattels. But it does not appear that her dower was restored. Ibid.

<sup>14</sup> Ibid. 289. Year-book, Term Hil. 1 Henry VII. 5. Stillington bishop of Bath, who had made the petition and act now repealed;

CHAP.

VI.

In the act of settlement itself no mention was made of Elizabeth or her heirs: even Henry's own claim, which he so ostentatiously brought forward in his speech to the commons, "of his "just right of inheritance, and the sure judgment of God," was studiously omitted: and it was merely enacted, that "the inheritance of the crown should be, rest, remain, and abide in the most royal person of the then sovereign lord, king Henry VII., and the heirs of his body lawfully coming, perpetually with the grace of God so to endure, and in none other."<sup>15</sup> <sup>20</sup>. But this cautious policy, and in particular this silence with respect to the princess, seems to have alarmed not only the partisans of the house of York, but even Henry's own friends, who had trusted that under the union of the red and white roses domestic peace

---

had been apprehended by order of the king immediately after the battle of Bosworth. We find him soon afterwards a prisoner at York, "sore crazed by reason of his trouble and carrying." (Drake's Eborac. 123.) He however made his peace with Henry, was not included in the act of attainder, and obtained a full pardon. On this account Henry opposed a motion to call him before the house of lords for his conduct in composing the petition and act of bastardy of Edward's children. Year-book, *Ibid.*

<sup>15</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 270. While this bill was before the lords, the chancellor assembled all the judges, and required their opinion, whether such an act, if it were passed, would have the effect "of resuming all the franchises and liberties of all manner of persons." It seems to have been apprehended that the new settlement might have had the same effect, as the acquisition of the crown by conquest. The judges replied in the negative. Year-book, Term Hil. 1 Hen. VII. 25.

Dec. 10.

would succeed to war and dissension. When the commons presented to the king the usual grant of tonnage and poundage for life, they coupled with it a petition, that he would be pleased to "take to wife and consort the princess Elizabeth, which marriage they hoped God would bless with a progeny of the *race of kings*:"<sup>16</sup> the lords spiritual and temporal, rising from their seats, and bowing to the throne, signified their concurrence; and Henry graciously answered that he was willing to comply with their request.<sup>17</sup> At the very commencement of the session the king had alluded to "the punishment of those, who had offended his royal majesty." The expression was noticed: how, it was asked, could the late monarch and his supporters have offended the *majesty* of the earl of Richmond, at a time when he had never publicly advanced any claim to the throne? The case differed from the precedents of the past reigns. If Henry VI. and his friends had been pronounced traitors by Edward, and Edward and his adherents by Henry, on each occasion the supposed offence had been committed against a king, whose claim to the crown had been previously admitted by parliament.<sup>18</sup> But the treasury was now exhausted: Henry wanted the means to defray his expenses, and to reward his followers: and in defiance of

<sup>16</sup> *De stirpe regum.* Rot. Parl. vi. 278. By this unusual expression I conceive was meant the kings of each line.

<sup>17</sup> *Ibid.*

<sup>18</sup> *Cont. Croyl.* 581.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~

the murmurs of the people, Richard III., the duke of Norfolk, the earl of Surrey, the lords Lovell, Zouch, and Ferrers, with several knights and gentlemen, amounting in all to thirty individuals, were included in an act of attainder.¹⁹ 4°. The act of resumption which followed, was less invidious and equally politic. Treading in the footsteps of former monarchs, the king revoked all grants made by the crown since the 34th of Henry VI., and as the grantees were chiefly the partizans of the house of York, they were all placed at the mercy of the king, who, according to his judgment or caprice, had it in his power to take from them, or to confirm to them, the possession of their property.²⁰ 5°. Before he dissolved the parliament, he granted a general pardon to the adherents of Richard: but that he might monopolize the whole merit of the measure, he would not allow it to originate at the intercession, or to be issued with the concurrence, of the two houses.²¹ 6°. During the recess after Christmas, he married Elizabeth.²² It was believed that the delay arose from a desire to prevent her name from

1486.
Jan. 18.

¹⁹ Rot. Parl. vi. 275—278. In the act Richard is accused of “unnaturall, mischevous, and grete perjuries, treasons, homicides, “ and *murdres in shedding of infants blood.*” Is not this an allusion to the death of his nephews? I know of no other infants, whom he is said to have murdered.

²⁰ Rot. Parl. vi. 336—384.

²¹ Bacon, 9.

²² Cont. Croyl. 581. André tells us that Edward IV. had before offered Elizabeth to Henry during his exile in Bretagne, but that it was considered as an artifice to entice him into England. Domit. A. XVIII.

being inserted in the act of settlement. When that point had been obtained, he hastened to gratify the wishes of his people and parliament. If the ambition of the princess was flattered by this union, we are told (on what authority I know not) that she had little reason to congratulate herself on the score of domestic happiness; that Henry treated her with harshness and with neglect: and that in his estimation neither the beauty of her person, nor the sweetness of her disposition, could atone for the deadly crime of being a descendant of the house of York.²³

As the king and queen were relatives, a dispensation had been granted, previously to the marriage, by the bishop of Imola, the legate of Innocent VIII. But Henry applied for another to the pontiff himself, avowedly for the purpose of removing every doubt respecting the validity of the marriage, but in reality that by introducing into it the meaning which he affixed to the act of settlement, that meaning might have the sanction of the papal authority. Innocent in his rescript informs us, that, according to the representation made to him in the name of the king, the crown of England belonged to Henry by right of war, by notorious and indisputable

Papal dis-
pensation
of mar-
riage.

²³ This is asserted by all our historians. The reader will meet hereafter with some reasons to induce a belief, that the statement, to be true, must at least be confined to the first years of the king's reign.

CHAP.
VI.
—

hereditary succession, by the wish and election of all the prelates, nobles, and commons of the realm, and by the act of the three estates in parliament assembled ; but that nevertheless, to put an end to the bloody wars caused by the rival claims of the house of York, and at the urgent request of the three estates, the king had consented to marry the princess Elizabeth, the eldest daughter and true heir of Edward IV. of immortal memory.²⁴ The pontiff, therefore, at the prayer of the king, and to preserve the tranquillity of the realm, confirms the dispensation which has already been granted, and the act of settlement passed by the parliament ; declares the meaning of that act to be, that if the queen should die without issue before the king, or if her issue should not survive their father, the crown should in that case devolve to Henry's other children, if he should have any other by a subsequent marriage ; and concludes by excommunicating all those, who may hereafter attempt to disturb him or his posterity in the possession of their rights.²⁵ The existence of this extraordinary instrument betrays the king's uneasi-

²⁴ *Immortalis famæ regis Edvardi præfati primogenitam et veram hæredem.* Rym. xi. 297. Carte by some mistake has translated these words “ the true heiress of *the kingdom* ” (ii. 825). The reader may notice the expression *vera hæres*, and in another instrument *indubitate hæres*. Rym. xii. 294. If the pontiff believed Elizabeth to be the true and undoubted heir to her father, he must also have believed that her brothers had perished.

²⁵ Rym. *ibid.*

ness with respect to the insufficiency of his own claim.

CHAP.
VI.

Insurrec-
tion of lord
Lovell.

After his marriage and the dissolution of the parliament, the new monarch, in imitation of his predecessors, resolved to signalize the commencement of his reign by a progress through the kingdom. The natives of the northern counties had been much devoted to Richard : Henry hoped by spending the summer among them to attach them to his own interests. He was keeping the festival of Easter at Lincoln, when he heard that lord Lovell, with Humphrey and Thomas Stafford, had suddenly left the sanctuary of Colchester ; but whither they were fled, or what might be their object, remained a profound secret. Despising the information he left Lincoln for Nottingham, with a numerous and splendid retinue : from Nottingham, where he received an embassy from the king of Scots, he continued his journey ; but was stopped at Pontefract by the intelligence that lord Lovell had passed him on the road, had raised a force in the neighbourhood of Rippon and Middleham, and was preparing to surprise him at his entry into York. But Henry's court was now attended by most of the southern and northern nobility : their followers formed a pretty numerous and well appointed army : and in two days the insurgents, convinced of the superiority of the royalists, dispersed with the permission of their leader. A few were taken and executed by the

April 2.

April 6.

April 17.

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

earl of Northumberland : Lovell himself escaped to his friend sir Thomas Broughton in Lancashire, and thence to the court of Margaret dowager dutchess of Burgundy.<sup>26</sup> At the same time the Staffords had prepared to take possession of the city of Worcester : but the dispersion of the Yorkshire insurgents proved the hopelessness of the attempt : and the two brothers fled for sanctuary to the church of Colnham, an obscure village near Abingdon. Humphrey Stafford was taken thence by force ; was condemned by the judges in virtue of the act of attainder formerly passed against him ; and suffered at Tyburn the death of a traitor. It is said that the younger brother obtained a pardon, on the plea that he had acted under the control of the elder.<sup>27</sup>

The king's  
progress  
through  
the realm.

April 20.

The king made his entry into York with royal magnificence. Three miles from the city he

---

<sup>26</sup> Hall, 3, Bacon, 11, and others tell us that Lovell's attempt happened after Henry's arrival at York, and was put down by the duke of Bedford. I have followed the journal of one of the heralds who accompanied the court. Lel. Col. iv. 186.

<sup>27</sup> The prisoner had been brought to Worcester to suffer there (May 20) : but the abbot of Abingdon arrived on the same day, and required that he should be replaced in the sanctuary. This saved his life for the time. He was sent to the Tower, and the judges were consulted by the king, whether Colnham had the privilege of a sanctuary. They replied it was hard, and contrary to order that they should give their opinions beforehand on a matter, on which they would have to decide judicially. Henry assented with reluctance : the point was argued before all the judges : and the claim of sanctuary was rejected. Year-book, Term Pas. 1 Henry VII. 15. Term Trin. 1.

was met by the mayor and aldermen on horseback: at the gate he was received with a procession of the clergy, the acclamations of the populace, and the exhibition of pageants.<sup>28</sup> He spent three weeks in that city, dispensing favours, conferring honours, and redressing grievances: a conduct, the policy of which was proved by the loyalty of the country during the invasion of the following year.<sup>29</sup> Thence he returned through Worcester, Hereford, Gloucester, and Bristol, to London, to receive a numerous and splendid embassy sent by James king of Scotland. During his progress through each county, he was accompanied by the sheriffs, and the resident nobility and gentry: on all Sundays and festivals he attended divine service in public; and on such occasions he heard a sermon from one of the bishops, who was ordered to read and explain to the audience the papal bull confirmatory of the king's marriage and title. He left the citizens of Worcester with evident marks of displeasure: but by his condescension attached to himself those of Bristol, whom

May 20.

June 5.

<sup>28</sup> The people cried, “ King Henry, king Henry, our Lord pre-serve that sweet and well savoured face.” Lell. Coll. iv. 187. I observe that the verses recited on the occasion abound, like those of the Anglo-Saxons, in alliteration. They begin thus:

O Reverend Right wise, Regent of this Regalitie,  
Whose Primitive Patron I appear to your Presence, &c.

Ibid. 188.

<sup>29</sup> He diminished the yearly rent of 160*l.* paid by the citizens of York to the crown, to the small sum of 18*l.* 5*s.* Rot. Parl. vi. 390.

CHAP.  
VI.Treaty  
with Scot-  
land.

July 3.

he consulted on the causes of the decay of their trade, and at the same time encouraged them by his promise to restore their city to its former prosperity.<sup>30</sup>

To a prince in Henry's situation it was of the highest importance to live on terms of amity with his neighbours. Among these the most to be feared was James king of Scotland, from his proximity, from the ancient enmity between the two nations, and from that attachment to the house of York, which still lurked among the inhabitants of the northern counties. Fortunately James had long cherished a strong partiality for the English: a partiality so marked, that it formed the principal of the charges alleged against him by the rebels, who afterwards deprived him of life. He had sent a deputation to assist at the coronation of Henry: other envoys had met the king at Nottingham: and now a most honourable embassy awaited his arrival in London. The negociation lasted almost a month. As the former truce between the two crowns was supposed to have expired at the death of Richard, both kings readily consented to its renewal. But the turbulence and discontent of the Scottish nobility compelled James to limit its duration to three years: and Henry could only obtain a promise that it should be continued till the death of one of the two

---

<sup>30</sup> See the sequel of the herald's journal. Rot. Parl. vi. 390.

monarchs, and that a matrimonial alliance should be contracted between the royal families of England and Scotland.<sup>31</sup>

It might have been expected that the king would have taken his queen with him during his progress, to gratify the partisans of the house of York: it was supposed that he refused through his jealousy of her influence, and his unwillingness to seem indebted to her for his crown. She kept her court at Winchester with her mother and sisters, and the countess of Richmond her mother-in-law. As she advanced in her pregnancy, the king removed from London to hunt in the new forest: and in her eighth month she was safely delivered of a son, whose birth gave equal joy to the king and the nation. He was christened with extraordinary parade in the cathedral: and at the font received the name of Arthur, in memory of the celebrated king of the Britons, from whom Henry wished it to be thought, that he was himself descended.<sup>32</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.

Birth of a  
prince.

Sept. 20.

<sup>31</sup> Rym. xii. 290.

<sup>32</sup> Lel. Coll. iv. 204. On this occasion the king's mother made "ordinaunces as to what preparation is to be made against the de-  
" liveraunce of a queen, as also for the christening of the child,  
" when she shall be delivered." They descend to every particular  
" of the furniture of her highnesses chamber, and the furniture apper-  
" taining to her bedde, how the churche shall be arraied against  
" the christeninge, how the child shall go to be christened;" the  
length and breadth of the cradle "to be faire set forth by painters  
" crafte," and the dimensions of another cradle of state, which is  
to be much larger than the others, and to be furnished with "greate  
" magnificence, like as the prince or prinessse herselfe were lyinge

CHAP.  
VI.  
A pretend-  
ed earl of  
Warwick.

Hitherto the king's enemies had given him little uneasiness: but the birth of his son, which threatened to perpetuate the crown in his family, urged them to one of the most extraordinary attempts recorded in history. Towards the close of the year, one Richard Simons, a priest of Oxford, landed in Dublin with a boy about eleven years of age, the son of an obscure craftsman. He presented his ward to the lord deputy of Ireland, by the name of Edward Plantagenet earl of Warwick: and implored the protection of that nobleman for a young and innocent prince, who, by escaping from the Tower, had avoided a fate similar to that of his unfortunate cousins, the sons of Edward IV. The boy had been well instructed in the part which he had to perform. His person was handsome: his address had something in it which seemed to bespeak nobility of descent: and he could relate with apparent accuracy his adventures at Sheriff-hutton, in the Tower, and during his escape. But why he should be seduced to personate a prince who was still living, and who might any day be confronted with him, is a mystery difficult to unravel. Of the reasons which have been assigned, the least improbable is that

---

"therein." *Ibid.* 179—184. The ceremony of the christening of Arthur is afterwards described (204—207). I observe that the queen dowager was godmother, and that her daughter Cecily, attended by Anne, another of her daughters, carried the child: a proof that the queen's family was at this period in high favour with the king.

which supposes that the framers of the plot designed to place the real Warwick on the throne: but that, sensible how much they should endanger his life, if they were to proclaim him while he was in the Tower, they set up a counterfeit Warwick, and by this contrivance made it the interest of Henry to preserve the true one.

Among the English settlers in Ireland the partisans of the house of York had maintained a decided ascendency, ever since the administration of duke Richard in the reign of Henry VI. The Butlers alone had dared to unsheathe the sword in favour of the Lancastrians: and they had paid by attainders and executions the penalty of their attachment to the interests of the red rose. At the time of the battle of Bosworth the reins of administration were held by the chief of the Yorkists, the earl of Kildare: nor did Henry venture, at the commencement of his reign, to irritate a powerful faction by removing either the lord deputy, or the members of the council. But his jealousy was soon awakened by the reports of his spies: Kildare received a mandate to attend the English court: and his disobedience was excused by a petition from the spiritual and temporal peers, stating in forcible terms the necessity of his presence in Ireland. His conduct on the arrival of Simons was of a nature to confirm Henry's suspicions. He shewed no distrust of the two adventurers: he inquired not how the earl came to be committed

He is re-  
ceived in  
Ireland.

CHAP.  
VI.

to the charge of an unknown priest only twenty-seven years old: he evinced no anxiety to ascertain whether the real Warwick were still in the Tower or not: but he introduced the boy under his assumed name to the nobility of Ireland and the citizens of Dublin; and promised to afford him protection against his enemies, and those of his family. The Butlers, the bishops of Cashel, Tuam, Clogher, and Ossory, and the citizens of Waterford, remained steady in their allegiance: the rest of the population, relying on the authority of Kildare, admitted the title of the new Plantagenet without doubt or investigation; and the adventurer was proclaimed by the style of Edward VI., king of England and France, and lord of Ireland.<sup>33</sup> Most assuredly the deputy had been already admitted into the secret.

The king's  
conduct on  
the occa-  
sion.

1487.  
Feb.

When the intelligence reached Henry he was alarmed, not so much at what had happened, as from his ignorance of what might follow. He assembled a great council of peers and prelates, and by their advice consented to do, what he ought to have done long before.<sup>34</sup> 1. The pardon which he had issued in favour of his opponents, had been not only clogged with restrictions, but frequently violated. He now published a pardon which was full, without exceptions, and extended to every species of treason. 2. He conducted

<sup>33</sup> Bacon, 14, 15. Polydor. 570.

<sup>34</sup> Lel. Coll. iv. 209.

the real earl of Warwick from the Tower to St. Paul's, that he might be publicly recognised by the citizens ; and took him with him to the palace of Shene, where the young prince conversed daily with the noblemen and others who visited the court.<sup>35</sup> This prudent measure satisfied the people of England. They laughed at the impostor in Ireland, while the Irish maintained that theirs was the real, and that the boy at Shene was the pretended Plantagenet. 3. But the next measure created surprise. The reader has witnessed the honourable manner in which the queen dowager lived at court. Suddenly, if we may believe several writers, she was arrested, despoiled of her goods, and committed to the custody of the monks of Bermondsey. The reason assigned for this harsh treatment was, that after having, in the last reign, promised her daughter to Henry, she had delivered her into the hands of the usurper. But the pretext was too improbable to obtain credit. It was suspected that she had been concerned in the present plot.<sup>36</sup> Yet where could be her induce-

<sup>35</sup> Lell. Coll. iv. 209. <sup>36</sup> Bacon, 16, 17. The modern writers who maintain that Richard did not murder his nephews in the Tower, draw an inference in favour of their opinion from the confinement of Elizabeth. It is plain, they contend, that she was in possession of some secret of the highest importance to the government, and are confident that this secret was the existence, at the time, of one or both of her sons. Hence it became necessary to place her under the most rigorous confinement, that she might not reveal it to the partisans of the house of York. Laing, 433.

CHAP.

VI.

The pre-  
tender is  
joined by  
the earl of  
Lincoln.

March 19.

May 24

ment? If Henry were dethroned, her daughter must share the fate of her husband. If the real or pretended Warwick should obtain the crown, all her children would of course be disinherited.

At every step of this affair we meet with new mysteries. It will be recollected that the earl of Lincoln had been treated by Richard as heir apparent. After the accession of Henry he constantly paid his court to the king, and had been summoned to the last council as one, in whom Henry placed confidence. Yet the moment it was dissolved, he repaired to the court of his aunt, the dutchess of Burgundy, consulted with her and lord Lovell, and receiving an aid of two thousand veterans under Martin Swartz, an experienced officer, sailed to Ireland, and landed at Dublin. His arrival gave new importance to the cause of the counterfeit Warwick. Though Lincoln had frequently conversed with the real prince at Shene,<sup>37</sup> he advised that the impostor should be crowned: the ceremony of his coronation was performed by the bishop of Meath, with a diadem taken from the statue of the virgin Mary; and the new king was carried, after the Irish manner, from the church to the castle on the shoulders of an English chieftain of the name of Darcy. Writs were even issued in his

---

But all this conjectural reasoning is completely overturned by a fact, which will be mentioned in the course of a few pages.

<sup>37</sup> Lell. Coll. iv. 209.

name : a parliament was convoked ; and legal penalties were enacted against his principal opponents, Thomas and William Butler, and the citizens of Waterford.<sup>38</sup> But what could be Lincoln's object in contributing to this farce ? Even the real earl of Warwick could not be heir to the crown as long as any of the posterity of Edward IV. were alive. If it be said that they had been declared illegitimate, so had Clarence the father of Warwick been attainted. In that case Lincoln himself had a better claim than the prince in whose right he pretended to draw the sword.

When Henry first heard of the departure of Lincoln, he made a progress through the counties of Essex, Suffolk, and Norfolk, in which the earl possessed considerable interest : and thence proceeded through Northampton and Coventry to his castle of Kenilworth, which he had appointed for the residence of his queen, and his mother. There intelligence was received that Lincoln with his German auxiliaries, and a body of Irish associates, had landed at the pile of Foudray in the southern extremity of Furness, had remained in his camp at Swartmore, near Ulverstone, till he had been joined by the tenantry of sir Thomas Broughton, and was actually on his march through the county of York. The king soon found himself sur-

CHAP.  
VI.

He lands in  
Furness.

April 22.

June 4.

<sup>38</sup> Bacon, 18, 19. Irish Stat, 8 Hen. VIII.

CHAP.  
VI.

rounded by his friends with their retainers, and orders were published by his authority for “the ‘goode rule of his hooste.’” To steal, rob, or ravish ; to take provisions without paying the price affixed by the clerk of the market ; and to arrest or imprison any man on the pretext of delinquency, but without special orders, were made crimes punishable with death. To take other lodgings than were assigned by the proper officers, to cause any quarrel or affray, or to prevent persons from bringing provisions to the army, subjected the offenders to the lesser punishment of imprisonment. Every man was ordered, under the same penalty, to saddle his horse at the first blast of the trumpet, to bridle it at the second, and at the third to be mounted and ready to march. Vagabonds, who had no master, and common women, were threatened with the stocks and imprisonment.<sup>39</sup>

Battle at  
Stoke.

The two armies, as if by mutual compact, hastened towards Newark. It was in vain that the earl, as he advanced, tempted the loyalty of the inhabitants by proclaiming Edward VI. the head of the house of York. The real partisans of that family were restrained by their fears or their incredulity : and the few, who joined the standard of the adventurer, were outlaws or men of desperate fortunes. Disappointed but

<sup>39</sup> See Lel. Coll. iv. 210—212. These orders were strictly put in execution, so that at Leicester and Loughborough “the stokks and ‘prisonnes wer reasonable fylled.’” Ibid.

undismayed, Lincoln resolved to stake his life on the event of a battle ; and precipitated his march, that he might find the king unprepared. The royalists had moved from Kenilworth by Coventry, Leicester, and Nottingham. Their numbers daily increased : but their quarters were ill chosen : and night after night they were thrown into confusion by alarms which furnished opportunities of desertion to the timid and disaffected. But, what will excite the surprise of the reader, the whole army lost its way between Nottingham and Newark. Five guides were at length procured from the village of Ratcliffe, and soon afterwards the vanguard, under the earl of Oxford, was attacked at Stoke by the insurgents, amounting to eight thousand men. The action was short but sanguinary. The Germans fought and perished with the resolution of veterans : the adventurers from Ireland displayed their characteristic bravery, but with their darts and skeans (for the English settlers had adopted the arms of the natives) they were no match for the heavy cavalry ; and though a portion only of the royalists were engaged, the victory was won with the slaughter of one half of their opponents. Of the leaders of the insurgents, the earl of Lincoln, the lords Thomas and Maurice Fitz-Gerald, sir Thomas Broughton, and Martin Swartz, remained on the field of battle : lord Lovell was seen to escape from his pursuers : but whether he perished

CHAP.  
VI.

June 8.

June 16.

CHAP. VI. in crossing the Trent, or contrived to secrete himself from the notice of his friends and foes, is uncertain. He was never seen or heard of after that day.<sup>40</sup> Simons and his pupil surrendered to Robert Bellingham, one of the king's esquires. The priest was made to confess the imposture before the convocation, and then thrown into a prison, in which he perished. But the pretended Edward VI. obtained his pardon, resumed his real name of Lambert Simnel, was made a scullion in the royal kitchen, and afterwards, in reward of his good conduct, was raised to the more honourable office of falconer.<sup>41</sup>

Corona-  
tion of the  
queen.

From this insurrection the king learned an important lesson, that it was not his interest to wound the feelings of those, whose principles had attached them to the house of York. His

<sup>40</sup> On account of his disappearance several writers have supposed that he perished in the battle. But the journal of the herald who was present, evidently proves that he escaped.—After mentioning the names of the slain, he adds, “and the viscount lorde Lovell was ‘put to flight.’ Lell. Coll. 214. Towards the close of the seventeenth century, at his seat at Minster Lovel in Oxfordshire, was accidentally discovered a chamber under the ground, in which was the skeleton of a man seated in a chair, with his head reclined on a table. Hence it is supposed that the fugitive had found an asylum in this subterraneous chamber, where he was perhaps starved to death through neglect. There is also a tradition that sir Thomas Broughton escaped from the field, and lived till his death in concealment among his tenants at Witherslack in the county of Westmoreland. West's Furness, 210.

<sup>41</sup> For an account of this insurrection, compare the journal of the herald in Lel. Coll. iv. 209—215. with Hall, 4—10, Bacon, 13—23. and the rolls, vi. 397.

behaviour to the queen had created great discontent. Why, it was asked, was she not crowned? Why was she, the rightful heir to the crown, refused the usual honours of royalty? Other kings had been eager to crown their consorts: but Elizabeth had now been married a year and a half; she had borne the king a son to succeed to the throne; and yet she was kept in obscurity, as if she were unworthy of her station. Henry resolved to silence these murmurs: and from Warwick issued the requisite orders for her coronation. The ceremony was performed during the session of parliament: an ample provision was made for her maintenance; and from that period Elizabeth was brought forward on all occasions of parade, and seemed to enjoy the same consideration as former queens.<sup>42</sup>

Nov. 25.

Jurisdiction  
of  
the star-  
chamber.

The first care of the parliament was to supply

<sup>42</sup> On the Friday before the coronation fourteen gentlemen were created knights of the Bath. On the Saturday the queen went in procession from the Tower to Westminster. She was dressed in white cloth of gold of damask, with a mantle of the same furred with ermine. “Here faire yelow hair hung downe pleyne byhynd her bak, with a calle of pipes over it.” On her head was a circle of gold ornamented with precious stones. In this dress she was borne through the city reclining in a litter, with a canopy of cloth of gold carried over her by four knights of the body. Several carriages, and four baronesses on grey palfreys followed. On the Sunday she was crowned, and afterwards dined in the hall. The lady Catharine Gray and mistress Ditton went under the table, and sate at her feet, while the countesses of Oxford and Rivers knelt on each side, “and at certeyne tymys helde a kerchief byfor her grace.” The king viewed both the coronation and the dinner from behind a lattice. *Lell. Coll. iv.* 216—233.

CHAP.

VI.

the wants of the conqueror by a grant of money, and a bill of attainder, which included almost every man of property engaged in the late insurrection.<sup>43</sup> Next the king required their aid to put down the dangerous and unlawful practice of "maintenance." The reader will recollect that by "maintenance" was understood an association of individuals under a chief, whose livery they wore, and to whom they bound themselves by oaths and promises, for the purpose of maintaining by force the private quarrels of the chief and the members. Hence the course of justice was obstructed, jurors were intimidated, and offenders escaped with impunity. Hence also (and this it was that chiefly provoked the hostility of the king,) powerful noblemen were furnished with the means of raising forces at a short warning to oppose the reigning prince, or to assist a new claimant. In the preceding parliament an oath had been required from the lords, and was ordered to be taken by the commons in each county, that they would not keep in their service men openly cursed, or murderers, or felons, or outlaws; that they would not retain persons by inden-

<sup>43</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 386. 400. I have said, "almost every man of property," for by mistake or design lord Lovell was omitted. But the omission was discovered eight years afterwards, and a new bill of attainder was passed to include him (Rot. Parl. vi. 502.) The number, however, of the insurgents had then dwindled from eight to five thousand, a proof that we are not to trust the acts of attainder for more than the substance of the offence.

tures, or give liveries contrary to law: and that they would not make riots or maintenances, nor oppose the due execution of the king's writs.<sup>44</sup> In the present it was enacted that the chancellor, treasurer, and keeper of the privy seal, or two of them with one bishop, one temporal peer, and the chief judges of the king's bench and common pleas, should have authority to call before them persons accused of having offended in any of these points, and to punish the guilty, as if they had been convicted by the ordinary course of justice. Thus the jurisdiction of the court of star chamber, so celebrated afterwards, was confirmed by authority of parliament. It was not, however, a new institution. The king had always been acknowledged as the fountain of justice: and though he generally administered the laws by his delegates in the ordinary courts, yet in matters of high import to the state, he was accustomed to call causes before himself in council, which, if they were of a criminal description, were decided in a room called from its decorations the star, if of a

---

<sup>44</sup> Ibid. 287. Rym xii. 280. On that occasion the judges had been consulted, who replied that it was impossible to enforce the execution of the laws, as long as "maintenances" existed. The chief justice, among other things observed, that in the time of Edward IV. the lords swore to observe the statutes, and yet in his presence several of them, within an hour afterwards, retained by oaths persons to support their quarrels, and consequently to set aside the execution of the law. Year-book, Term Mich. 1 Hen. VII. 3.

CHAP.  
VI.Prolonga-  
tion of  
peace with  
Scotland.

Nov. 28.

civil nature, in another denominated the white chamber.<sup>45</sup>

Henry was careful to cultivate the friendship which subsisted between him and the king of Scots. To cement it the more firmly, Fox bishop of Durham had been sent during the summer to Edinburgh: and a mutual agreement had been made, that James, who had lost his consort, the daughter of the king of Denmark, should marry Elizabeth, the queen dowager of England, and that his two sons should also marry two of her daughters.<sup>46</sup> Days were even appointed for the

<sup>45</sup> Stat. at large, 3 Hen. VII. c. I. Bacon, 38. On the 15th of December, during this parliament, a conspiracy was formed among the servants of his household to murder some of the superior officers. Six of the ringleaders were attainted of felony by parliament, and an act was passed which made it felony without benefit of clergy for any person under the rank of a lord, if he were entered on the cheque-roll of the household, to conspire the death of the king, of any peer, of any privy counsellor, or of the steward, treasurer, or comptroller of the household. Before this act they could not be so punished for the conspiracy itself, unless the act followed. Rot. Parl. vi. 402. Stat. 3 Hen. VII. c. 14.

<sup>46</sup> Rym. xii. 329. This fact deserves particular notice, as it invincibly disproves the hypothesis of those writers, who maintain that Henry knew that one of the sons of Edward IV. was still living, and had confined their mother Elizabeth, that she might not divulge the secret. If this were true, it is incredible that he could have wished to marry Elizabeth to the king of Scots, and her two daughters to two Scottish princes. Such marriages would have placed her in a situation, where she might have published the truth without fear, have secured an asylum for her son, and have seconded his claim with all the power of Scotland. Indeed I think the whole story of Elizabeth's punishment extremely doubtful. That she was high in the king's favour just before the rebellion of

meeting of ambassadors to fix the marriage settlements: but the project was interrupted by the rebellion of the Scottish lords, and finally defeated by the death of James, who after losing the battle of Canglor in June 1488, was murdered at the mill of Beton during his flight. Though Henry grieved for the death of his friend, he was anxious to maintain the relations

---

Lincoln, appears from his having chosen her to be godmother to his son: that she was equally so after, may be inferred from his wish to marry her the same year to his friend the king of Scots.—Polydore, indeed (p. 571), and Bacon (p. 16), who transcribes Hall (p. 3), tell us that the king, on the rebellion of Lincoln, deprived her of all her lands and estates. If they mean her dower as queen, the only property which she had, their assertion is undoubtedly false. She had been deprived of that by Richard III.: nor was it restored by Henry's parliament, when it repealed so much of the act as deprived her "of the name, estate, and dignity of queen" (Rot. Parl. vi. 283.) In lieu of it the king granted her a compensation. See the collection of unpublished acts by Rymer, Hen. VII. tom. I. N°. 29. 39. Again Polydore (*ibid.*) assures us that she ever after led a miserable life, (Carte (p. 827), and Laing (p. 433), that she was kept in the strictest confinement. But this too must be in a great measure, if not entirely, false. For we accidentally learn from the journal of the herald (Lel. Coll. iv. 249), that when the French ambassadors were introduced to the queen at Westminster in November 1489, "ther was with her hir moder quene Elizabeth, " and my lady the kinge's moder:" and we find her the next year receiving an annuity from the king (Rym. *ibid.* N°. 75). Hence I am inclined to believe that if she were confined at all in 1487, it was only as a measure of precaution, during the time of the insurrection. Her son the Marquess of Dorset was then in the Tower, but was released soon afterwards at the coronation of his sister. The reader will recollect that Elizabeth had formerly tampered with him, to draw him from the party of Henry to that of Richard. On this account perhaps the king might distrust them both, and secure them till the danger was past.

CHAP.

VI.

of amity with his successor: and therefore, as the truce might be said to have terminated at the death of James, he ratified it anew in the following month. Thus was peace continued between the two crowns for the space of eleven years; an unusual duration, preparative of that harmony, which after centuries of rapine and bloodshed, was at last happily established.<sup>47</sup>

Affairs of  
Bretagne.

As soon as the king was relieved from domestic enemies, he was compelled to direct his attention to the continent. By force, or policy, or good fortune, the French monarchs had gradually obtained possession of the other great fiefs of the crown: Bretagne alone retained its own prince, and its ancient constitution. But the duke Francis was advanced in age, and equally weak both in mind and body. His family consisted of two daughters, the elder of whom, named Anne, had reached her twelfth year. So rich an heiress attracted a number of suitors, among whom the most distinguished were, Maximilian king of the Romans, the duke of Orleans first prince of the blood in France, and the lord d'Albert, a powerful chieftain near the foot of the Pyrenees. Each of these might flatter himself with the hope of obtaining with the princess her ample patrimony · but they had all a dangerous enemy in the king of France, who, though he was prevented from soliciting

---

<sup>47</sup> Rym. xii. 328—331. 346.

the hand of Anne by a previous contract with the daughter of Maximilian, had determined at the death of the duke to take possession of the dutchy in virtue of some ancient and unintelligible claim, which had lain dormant for centuries.

Charles VIII. had ascended the throne in 1483, at the age of fourteen, an age at which the law presumed that the heir to the throne must be possessed of sufficient capacity and experience to govern the kingdom. But his father Louis XI. had thought otherwise : and in obedience to the instructions of that monarch, the states placed the young king under the tutelage of his elder sister, Anne of France, who had married Pierre de Bourbon, lord of Beaujeu. The duke of Orleans, though he had not reached his twenty-fourth year, was offended with the choice : he raised forces against the regent ; and was compelled to seek the protection of the duke of Bretagne. It so chanced that at the same time several Breton nobles, who had incurred the resentment of Francis by the murder of his favourite minister Pierre de Landois, had fled to the court of Charles. The regency declared war, for the apparent purpose of compelling the duke to pardon the exiles, and give up the French prince, but with the real view of preventing the marriage of Anne, and of annexing Bretagne to the crown. Both parties applied to Henry. The king of France deprecated his interference : the duke solicited immediate as-

CHAP.  
VI.

Henry's  
affected  
delays.

CHAP. VI. sistance. Charles, to lull his jealousy, represented the war as an unimportant quarrel between himself and the protector of a rebellious vassal: Francis endeavoured to awaken his fears, by describing the accession of power which France would derive from the conquest of the dutchy. Each appealed to his gratitude. The former reminded him of the French auxiliaries who fought under his banner at the battle of Bosworth: the latter of the protection which he had experienced during his long exile in Bretagne. Henry was perplexed: and unwilling to offend either, he offered himself a mediator between both. With this view his almoner Worswick was employed month after month in useless journeys between the courts of Paris, Rennes, and Westminster. Charles, while he professed himself willing to accept the mediation, prosecuted the war with additional vigour. In May he entered Bretagne: Ploermel and Vannes were compelled to open their gates: and in July the duke saw himself besieged in his capital. Maximilian sent to his assistance a body of fifteen hundred men, who, with a reinforcement of Bretons, fought their way through the French lines, and ultimately compelled the enemy to abandon the siege. Charles, however, continued the war: and to be revenged of the king of the Romans, ordered the mareschal de Cordes to aid the citizens of Bruges and Ghent, who had revolted from Maximilian. Francis reiterated his

solicitations to Henry : but the king trusting to the chance of events, and the internal resources of Bretagne, always promised and always delayed. It was not that he could plead poverty. His parliament had granted him two fifteenths, and advised him to assist his friend : but avarice prompted him to accept the money, and to neglect the advice. He acquainted the French court with the proceedings in parliament, in the vain hope that Charles might be terrified into forbearance : he refused to English adventurers the royal permission to serve in the army of Francis : and when sir Edward Wydevile with four hundred men, privately sailed from the isle of Wight for Bretagne, he not only disavowed the expedition to the French government, but consented to an armistice which should last for six months.<sup>48</sup>

It was not, however, long before he saw reason to doubt the policy of such vacillating conduct. In the disastrous battle of St. Aubin, sir Edward Wydevile was slain with all his countrymen and seventeen hundred Bretons, who, to deceive the enemy, had adopted the white coats and red crosses of the English soldiers. The duke of Orleans was made prisoner : St. Aubin, Dinant, and St. Malo surrendered : and Francis signed a treaty, by which he consented that Charles should retain all his conquests, and bound him

1488.

July 14.

July 23.

<sup>48</sup> Bacon, 29—32. Rym. xii. 344. 347. Com. Supplem. c. ii  
iv. Hall. 11—14. Daniel, ann. 1485—1488.

CHAP. VI.  
 Sept. 8. self not to marry either of his daughters without the approbation of his lord. But the sequel was still more perplexing. In a few weeks Francis died, and soon afterwards his younger daughter followed him to the grave. The king of France, in virtue of his pretended claim, demanded the whole succession : hostilities recommenced : and before Christmas one half of Bretagne was in the hands of the French. The clamour of the nation now roused Henry from his apathy. On the same day he dispatched envoys to the kings of Spain and Portugal, to Maximilian and his son the archduke Philip, to Anne of Bretagne, and Charles of France. Of these embassies the four first were chiefly meant for parade : to the orphan princess he made an offer of an English army ; to the king of France he proposed a renewal of the truce, but with an additional clause, that each party might include his allies. Sensible that the proposal would be rejected, he insinuated to Charles, that if his people compelled him to aid the Bretons, his army should act entirely on the defensive.<sup>49</sup>

He obtains  
aid from  
parlia-  
ment.

1489.

Jan. 13.

Henry now summoned a parliament. The nation was anxious to rescue a young and unfortunate princess from the power of a victorious enemy : but the cold-hearted king had determined to enrich himself from the generosity of the one, and the necessities of the other. From

<sup>49</sup> Rym. xii. 347—355. Bacon, 37. Hall, v. 15. Com. Suppl. v.

Feb. 10.

his subjects he demanded an aid of one hundred thousand pounds for the maintenance of ten thousand archers during twelve months: but the amount was cut down to seventy-five thousand; and to raise that sum, the lords for themselves, the commons for themselves and their constituents, granted the king a tenth of the yearly produce of their lands, fees, and pensions, with a tax on personal property of one penny in eight. To Anne he promised an army of six thousand archers to serve for six months; but on conditions to which her necessities compelled her to subscribe, that she should surrender two fortresses as securities for the repayment of the expense, and should take an oath not to marry without his consent. In the spring the lord Willoughby de Brook landed in Bretagne with the stipulated number of men: but as Charles knew that the English were forbidden to undertake offensive operations, he ordered his own forces to abstain from a general engagement. The consequence was that a few skirmishes kept up the appearance of hostilities; and the auxiliaries, as soon as the six months of their service were completed, returned to their own country.<sup>50</sup>

Nov.

But, if the war languished in Bretagne, it was distinguished by a most brilliant action in Flanders. The revolted Flemings with the aid of de Cordes had besieged Dixmude:

Battle of  
Dixmude.

<sup>50</sup> Bacon, 37. Rym. xii. 362. 372. Rot. Parl. vi. 420.

CHAP.  
VI.

Daubeney and Morley with two thousand archers and thrice that number of Germans, attacked them in their camp, though it was defended by a strong battery. The archers poured a volley of arrows into the trenches, fell on the ground till the guns had been discharged, rose on their feet, poured in a second volley, and rushed precipitately into the camp. The victory was complete: but it was stained with cruelty. Revenge for the death of “that gentill yong knight the ‘‘ lord Morley,” so transported the victors, that they refused to give quarter, and eight thousand of the enemy are said to have been slain, a carnage almost unparalleled, if we consider the small number of the combatants in each army.<sup>51</sup>

The expedition to Bretagne had, however, been productive of some advantage. It had stopped the progress of the French arms. At the same time the levies of Ferdinand king of Spain had compelled Charles to detach a numerous force to Fontarabia, for the protection of that frontier. In these circumstances the defeat at Dixmude, and the surrender of St. Omer to the king of the Romans, induced the French

---

<sup>51</sup> Hall, 18. Bacon, 47. The herald has celebrated in his journal the resolution of an archer, called John Person of Coventry, who having lost a leg by a cannon shot, continued to discharge his arrows kneeling or sitting, “ And when the Frenchmen fledde, he cried to ‘‘ one of his felowes, and saide, have thow these six arrowes that I ‘‘ have lefte, and follow thow the chase, for I may not. The which ‘‘ John Person died within few days after, on whose soule Gode ‘‘ have mercy.” Lel. Coll. iv. 247.

monarch to listen to proposals for peace ; and in a convention with Maximilian, he consented to restore to the princess all the towns which belonged to Francis at the time of his death, and promised that, as soon as the English forces should retire, and she should give security for her allegiance, St. Malo, Fougeres, Dinant, and St. Aubin should be sequestered, to remain in the hands of an indifferent person, till the claim of Charles to the dutchy could be satisfactorily determined.

CHAP.  
VI.

We may now return to England, where of the sum voted in the last session of parliament only a small part had been raised. The commons of the northern counties had not only refused to pay their proportion, but had even murdered the king's lieutenant the earl of Northumberland. But the insurrection was quickly suppressed by the earl of Surrey : John à Chambre, one of the ringleaders, suffered at York : and sir John Egremont, the other, escaped to the dutchess of Burgundy.<sup>52</sup> In the next session the deficiency of the tax, which instead of seventy-five had produced no more than twenty-five thousand pounds, was amply supplied by the grant of a tenth and fifteenth. Henry with great care deposited the money in his coffers. War was not his object. Instead of military preparations he consumed the whole of the pre-

Insurrec-  
tion in.  
Northum-  
berland.

April 28.

1490.  
Feb. 27.

<sup>52</sup> Hall, 16. Bacon, 41. Fab. 528. Lel. Coll. iv. 246.

CHAP. VI. sent and a great part of the next year in forming and reforming alliances with the kings of Spain and of the Romans. Never perhaps did three princes profess more, and feel less, affection for each other. For the common advantage of christendom they agreed to set bounds to the ambition of France: but in reality each sought, by working on the apprehensions of Charles, to promote his individual interest. Maximilian hoped to recover the ancient patrimony of his family on the north of France, and with the dutchess to obtain the dutchy of Bretagne: Ferdinand expected to procure the restitution of Rousillon, which he had formerly mortgaged for a loan of three hundred thousand crowns: while Henry cared little for the fate of Bretagne, or the interest of his allies, provided he could extort from Anne security for the repayment of his expenses, and from Charles a valuable present in reward of his forbearance.<sup>53</sup>

Anne of  
Bretagne  
married  
by proxy.

The king of the Romans both by the promptitude with which he had formerly sent succours to Francis, and the attention which he had lately paid to the interests of Anne, had won the esteem of both the father and daughter: and when, during the cessation of hostilities, she signified her consent to his proposal of marriage, she did no more than comply with the wishes of her deceased parent. If Maximilian had improved

<sup>53</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 438. Rym. xi. 387, 394—430. 437. 440. 443.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~1491.  
April.

May.

She is  
compelled  
to marry  
the king of  
France.

the golden opportunity to visit Bretagne, he would have secured the object of his ambition; but his Flemish subjects were in rebellion; the journey by land or water would expose him to his enemies; and it was thought that a marriage by proxy would be equally certain, and less dangerous. With this view the prince of Orange, as the representative of the king of the Romans, married the dutchess in his name in the month of April: and within a few weeks, the lord d'Albret, one of her suitors, to revenge the disappointment, betrayed to the French the important city of Nantes. War was now renewed: the king of the Romans thinking himself secure, neglected to succour his wife: Henry harassed her with demands of money for the repayment of his former expenses: and Charles formed the plan, suspected by neither of these powers, of compelling her to break her contract with Maximilian, and to marry himself.<sup>54</sup>

It was true that at an early age he had been contracted to Margaret of Austria, Maximilian's daughter, who had been educated in France as his consort, and only waited till she reached the age of puberty to ratify the marriage. But this circumstance, which might have deterred other princes, only supplied Charles with a cloak to conceal his real intention. By promises and bribes he bought the counsellors of the dutchess:

<sup>54</sup> Hall, 20. Bacon, 48. Com, Supplem, vi.

CHAP.  
VI.

but when the proposal was made to her, she rejected it with disdain. Was not Charles her natural enemy? Was he not contracted to Margaret? Was not she herself married to Maximilian? They replied that she ought to sacrifice a feeling of dislike to the interest of her country: that the contract between Charles and Margaret was void, because that princess was under age: and that the marriage between herself and Maximilian had not been consummated, and might therefore be dissolved, because Bretagne was a fief of the French crown, and by law an heiress could not marry without the consent of her lord. These reasons made no impression on the mind of Anne; but they were supported by a French army, which appeared before the gates of Rennes. She was now told that her obstinacy had been punished. There remained no hope of escape. She must be either the wife or the captive of Charles. Subdued at last by importunity and terror, she consented to a treaty, of which the principal articles were that she should marry the French king; that the rights of each should be reciprocally communicated to the other; that the survivor should retain possession of the dutchy; but that, in case she were the survivor, she should, if she remained single, bequeath her dominions to the reigning prince, or, if she chose to marry, marry no one but the actual possessor, or the presumptive heir, of the French

crown. She was married to Charles at Langley in Tourraine, and crowned in the abbey church of St. Denis.<sup>55</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.  
Dec. 13.

The reader may conceive the feelings of Maximilian at this double disappointment. By his own inactivity, and the arts of his enemy, he had lost for himself a wife and a principality, for his daughter a husband and a throne. His rage vented itself in threats and imprecations: but the exhaustion of his treasury, and the factious temper of his people, forbade him to seek revenge by open hostilities. Henry received the intelligence with the coolness of a philosopher: and instead of irritating his mind, by reflecting on what he had lost, sate himself down to calculate the chances of deriving pecuniary advantages from the event. During the last year he had repeatedly assumed a warlike attitude: he had ordered troops to be levied, stores to be provided; he had even appointed commissioners to extort money in the different counties under the illegal and vexatious name of "benevolence."<sup>56</sup> In October he acquainted the parliament with his resolution of chastising the perfidy of the French king (though Charles had not then married the princess), and obtained from it a grant of two tenths, and two fifteenths.<sup>57</sup> After Christmas he found both houses still more

July 7.

Oct. 17.

<sup>55</sup> Hall, 29. Bacon, 55. Com. Suppl. vi. Daniel, anno 1498—1491.

<sup>56</sup> Rym. xii. 446, 455, 464.

<sup>57</sup> Rot. Parl. vi, 442.

Henry  
prepares  
for war.

CHAP.  
VI.  
1492.  
Jan. 26.

eager for war : an act was passed in favour of those who should accompany the king, enabling them to alienate their estates without the payment of fines, and to enfeoff lands, that their executors might have funds to fulfil their bequests : and laws were made, compelling the captains under pain of imprisonment and forfeiture to pay their men within six days after the money was issued from the treasury, and making it felony for any soldier to leave the army without the permission of his superior officer.<sup>58</sup>

He lands  
in France.

May 18.

Still these laws and preparations were but a mask, under which the king sought to conceal his designs from his own subjects as well as the enemy. The former would pay the tenths and fifteenths : the latter might perhaps offer a valuable sum for the purchase of peace. With this view he continually invented reasons for delay. It would be dangerous to leave the kingdom exposed to the inroads of the Scots : four months were employed in negotiating a prolongation of the armistice between the two kingdoms.<sup>59</sup> Two more were consumed in forming contracts for the levy of different descriptions of force : of men at arms each attended by his custrel and page, of lancers and archers on horseback, and of foot soldiers armed with bows, halberts, and bills.<sup>60</sup> These troops were mustered and in-

<sup>58</sup> Stat. 7 Hen. VII. 1, 2, 3.

<sup>59</sup> Rym. xii. 465. 473.

<sup>60</sup> Rym. xii. 478—480.

spected in June and July ; yet week passed after week, and the season for active operations was suffered to elapse, before the king put himself at the head of the army. In the beginning of October he landed at Calais ; a fortnight later he sate down before Boulogne, with sixteen hundred men at arms, and twenty-five thousand infantry.

It was now believed that the war had begun : and the people of England flattered themselves with the anticipation of victory and conquest. Henry had other objects in view. As long back as the month of June he had commissioned the lord d'Aubigny, governor of Calais, to negotiate a peace and alliance with Charles ; and, if we may judge from appearances, that peace was, in substance at least, already concluded. On the part of France no preparations were made to repel the invaders : and Henry, instead of acting with vigour, first published a letter from his envoy in the court of Maximilian, and then another from his ambassador with Ferdinand, that the army might know how little was to be expected from either of those princes. Soon afterwards he received from D'Aubigny the rough draft of a treaty, which was immediately submitted to the consideration of twenty-four of his principal officers. In their report to the king they advised him to sign it, alleging the lateness of the season, the sickness of the army, the inactivity of his allies, the strength of Bou-

CHAP.  
VI.

Oct. 6.

Oct. 19.

And con-  
cludes a  
peace with  
Charles.

Oct. 27.

CHAP.

VI.

Nov. 3.

logne, and the neighbouring fortresses, and the advantageous offers of his antagonist. Henry had asked their opinion merely to exonerate himself from the blame: and two treaties, the one public, the other private, were immediately concluded. By the former, peace, alliance, and confederacy, were established between the two crowns, to last during the lives of both kings, and for one year after the death of the survivor: by the latter Charles bound himself to pay to Henry by half-yearly instalments of twenty-five thousand francs, the aggregate sum of one hundred and forty-nine thousand pounds sterling: one hundred and twenty-four thousand of which should be received in lieu of all claims against Anne of Bretagne, and twenty-five thousand as the arrears of the annuity due to the late king Edward IV. Henry returned to Calais. His favourites, who had received bribes from the French king, applauded the wisdom and good fortune of their master; but the army loudly condemned the dissimulation and avarice of a prince, who, to replenish his own coffers, had not hesitated to disappoint the hopes of the nation, and to lead so many knights and noblemen into ruinous, and at the same time unnecessary expenses.<sup>61</sup>

Story of  
Perkin  
Warbeck

It is now time to introduce to the reader one of the most mysterious personages recorded in

---

<sup>61</sup> Rym. xii. 490—508. Bacon, 63. Rot. Parl. vi. 507.

English history. About the time when Henry declared war against France, a merchant vessel from Lisbon cast anchor in the cove of Cork. Among the passengers was a youth, whom no person knew, about twenty years of age, of handsome features and courtly deportment. It was soon rumoured that he was Richard duke of York, the second son of Edward IV.: but how his birth was ascertained, or in what manner he accounted for his escape from the Tower, when Edward V. was murdered,<sup>62</sup> or where he had lived during the last seven years, though questions which must have been asked, are secrets, which have never been explained. To such inquiries, however, he gave answers which satisfied the credulity of his friends: and, as the English settlers were warmly attached to the house of York, O'Water, the late mayor of Cork, easily induced the citizens to declare in his favour. An attempt was even made to secure the assistance of the earl of Kildare, and of his kinsman the earl of Desmond, formerly the great supporters of the white rose. The latter declared in favour of Perkin: the former, who had lately been disgraced by Henry, returned an ambiguous but courteous answer. The adventurer had yet no apparent reason to be displeased with his reception: when he suddenly

---

<sup>62</sup> Even those who assert this adventurer to be the real duke of York, agree that Edward V. was dead, as he never appeared, nor did any one ever take his name.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~~~  
He is ac-
knowledg-
ed in
France,

accepted an invitation from the ministers of Charles VIII., to visit France, and place himself under the protection of that monarch. He was received by the king as the real duke of York, and the rightful heir to the English throne. For his greater security a guard of honour was allotted to him under the command of the lord of Concessault :⁶³ and the English exiles and outlaws, to the number of one hundred, offered him their services by their agent sir George Nevil. Henry was perplexed and alarmed. He hastened to sign the peace with the French monarch ; and Charles instantly ordered the adventurer to quit his dominions. This order betrays the real object of the countenance which had been given to his pretensions : perhaps it may explain why he made his appearance at that particular period.⁶⁴

and by
the
dutchess
of Bar-
gundy.

Leaving France he solicited the protection of Margaret, the dowager dutchess of Burgundy, who received him with joy, appointed him a guard of thirty halberdiers, and gave him the surname of “ The white rose of England.” Her conduct revived the alarm of the king, and the hopes of his enemies. Could the aunt, it was asked, be deceived as to the identity of

⁶³ Of a Scotch family of the name of Monipeny. If I understand rightly a letter of Ramsay lord Bothwell, Concessault told him, that he and the admiral of France had made many inquiries respecting the birth of the adventurer, but to no purpose. See the letter in Pinkerton’s Scotland, ii. 438.

⁶⁴ Hall, 30, 31.

her nephew ? Or would so virtuous a princess countenance an impostor ? Henry spared neither pains nor expense to unravel the mystery. His agents were distributed through the towns and villages of Flanders, and valuable rewards were offered for the slightest information. The Yorkists were equally active. Their secret agent sir Robert Clifford, was permitted to see “ the “ white rose,” and to hear from the pretender and his aunt the history of his adventures. He assured his employers in England that the claim of the new duke of York was indisputable : while the royal emissaries reported, that his real name was Perkin Warbeck : that he was born of respectable parents in the city of Tournay ; that he had frequented the company of the English merchants in Flanders ; and had some time before sailed from Middleburgh to Lisbon in the service of lady Brompton, the wife of one of the outlaws.⁶⁵

With this clue Henry was satisfied, and immediately dispatched sir Edward Poynings, and Dr. Warham, as his ambassadors to the archduke Philip, the sovereign of Burgundy. Their ostensible object was to renew the treaties between England and the Netherlands : but their secret instructions commissioned them to demand the surrender, or, if that could not be obtained, the expulsion of Warbeck. The minis-

Henry
seeks to
obtain
possession
of War-
beck.

1493.
July 13.

⁶⁵ Hall, 31, 32.

CHAP.
VI.

ters of the archduke were divided, some maintaining the identity, others the imposture of the pretender. An answer was ultimately returned, that Philip, through friendship for the king, would abstain from affording aid to his enemy, but that he could not control the dutchess, who was absolute mistress within the lands of her dower. Henry, to manifest his displeasure, withdrew the mart of English cloth from Antwerp to Calais, and strictly prohibited all intercourse between the two countries.⁶⁶

His de-
signs are
betrayed.

1494.

Clifford, and Barley his associate, had gone to Flanders, as the envoys of the Yorkists: their fidelity was soon corrupted by the promises and presents of Henry; and the moment they had wormed themselves into the confidence of the adventurer, they betrayed to the king all his secrets, with the names of his partizans. On the same day the lord Fitz-water, sir Simon Mountford, sir Thomas Thwaites, Robert Ratcliffe, William Dawbeney, Thomas Cressemere, Thomas Atwood, and several clergymen, were apprehended on the charge of high treason. Their correspondence with the friends of the pretender in Flanders was considered a sufficient proof of their guilt; and all received judgment of death. Mountford, Thwaites, and Ratcliffe, suffered immediately: lord Fitz-water was imprisoned at Calais, where three years

⁶⁶ Rem. xii. 544. Hall, 33.

later he forfeited his life by an unsuccessful attempt to escape. The rest were pardoned: but this act of vigour astonished and dismayed the unknown friends of the adventurer, many of whom, conscious of their guilt, and sensible that their associates had been betrayed, fled for security to different sanctuaries.⁶⁷

There remained, however, one, who, while he flattered himself that he possessed a high place in the royal favour, had been secretly marked out for destruction. After the festivities of Christmas, Henry repaired with his court to the Tower. Clifford arrived from Flanders, was introduced to the king in council, and on his knees obtained a full pardon. Being exhorted to prove his repentance by discovering what he knew of the conspiracy, he accused the lord chamberlain, sir William Stanley. The king started with affected horror, and refused to give credit to the charge. To sir William he was indebted both for his crown and his life. At the battle of Bosworth, when he was on the point of sinking under the pressure of the enemy, that nobleman had rescued him from danger, and had secured to him the victory. But Clifford repeated the accusation with greater boldness, and Henry, out of apparent tenderness for his friend, desired sir William to confine himself to his apartment in the square tower, and to reserve his defence till his examination on the following morning. Whether it arose from con-

His parti-
sans exe-
cuted.

1495.
Jan. 7.

⁶⁷ Rot. Parl. vi, 503, 504. Hall, 34.

CHAP.
VI.

Feb. 15.

sciousness of guilt, or from confidence in his past services, the prisoner confessed the truth of the charge; on that confession he was arraigned and condemned at Westminster: and after a decent interval suffered the punishment of decapitation. His death gave rise to contradictory reports. By some it was said that he had supplied the pretender with money: by others, that when he was solicited to declare for him, he had replied: “Were I sure that he was the son of Edward, I would never fight against him: but the indictment states that he had consented to the employment of Clifford, and had engaged to receive and aid all such persons as Clifford should send to him with a private sign.”⁶⁸ This at least is probable, that unless he had been really entangled in the conspiracy, Henry would never have proceeded to the execution of a nobleman, to whom he was under so many obligations: but the king’s avarice provoked a suspicion that the enormous wealth of the prisoner was the chief obstacle to his pardon. By his death, plate and money to the value of forty thousand pounds, with lands to the amount of three thousand pounds a-year, devolved to the crown.⁶⁹

Submis-
sion of the
Irish.

In the mean time, as the natives of Ireland had long been warmly attached to the rival

⁶⁸ Polyd. Virg. 593 Howell, State Trials, iii. 366. André says that he not only sent money to the pretender, but illum tutari et in regnum adducere promissarat. MS. Dom. A. xviii.

⁶⁹ Rot. Parl. vi. 504. Fab. 530. Hall, 35. Bacon, 76—78. Speed, ex MS. Bern, Andreæ, 974.

family, Henry had devoted a part of his attention to the pacification of that island. He nominally intrusted the government, with the title of Duke of York, to his second son Henry: but as the prince was only four years old, sir Edward Poynings was appointed his deputy, and took possession with a small army of one thousand men. Poynings was soon called into the field by the turbulence of O'Hanlan, an Irish chieftain: but the natives retired before him into their woods, and thence by sudden and repeated sallies inflicted severe injuries on their opponents. The deputy, attributing his bad success to the jealousy or perfidy of the earl of Kildare, arrested that nobleman, sent him to England, and summoned a parliament. In that assembly several statutes were enacted to free the lower classes of inhabitants from the grievous impositions of coyne and livery; to break the power of the great lords by the prohibition of maintenance; to preserve the English ascendency within the pale by the revival of the statutes of Kilkenny;⁷⁰ and to provide for the good government of the English domains by giving to all statutes "*lately* made in England, and belonging to the public weal of the same," the force of law in Ireland. As the people had been harassed by frequent parliaments, in which ordi-

⁷⁰ That forbidding the use of the Irish language was excepted: a proof that the English settlers had by this time generally adopted it.

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

nances were repeatedly made for the sole profit of the chief governor, or of the party which he espoused, it was enacted that for the future no parliament should be holden, till the king had been informed, by the lieutenant and council, of the necessity of the same, and of the acts intended to be passed in it, and had previously given his licence and approbation under the great seal.<sup>71</sup> In these provisions the deputy appears to have had no other object than the welfare of the state : but he was thought to have been swayed by private considerations in the act of attainder which he procured against the earl of Kildare, his family and adherents. Henry, however, whose object it was to strengthen his interest in the sister island, condemned the precipitancy of Poynings, and reversed the attainder in the English parliament. The earl of Desmond, whose guilt was less ambiguous, had previously submitted, had given one of his sons as a hostage for his fidelity, and had taken a second time the oath of allegiance. A free pardon was afterwards granted to the rest of the natives, with the exception of lord Barry and O'Water : and tranquillity was fully restored in the island.<sup>72</sup>

Warbeck  
attempts  
to land.

Three years had now elapsed since the pretender first set forth his claim : and yet, during

<sup>71</sup> On Poynings' law, I have followed the opinion of Leland, ii. App. 512—516.

<sup>72</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 482. Rym. xii. 558—562. 567. 634.

that long interval, he had never made any attempt to establish it by legal proof, or to enforce it by an appeal to the sword. This protracted delay, the accounts which had been published of his country and parentage, the punishment of his friends in England, and the pacification of Ireland, made his cause appear desperate: and both the Flemish, whose commerce had been suspended on his account, and the archduke, whose treasury suffered from the deficiency of the customs, began to complain of the countenance which he had hitherto received from the dutchess Margaret. In this emergency he sailed from the coast of Flanders with a few hundreds of adventurers attached to his fortunes, and, while Henry was on a visit to his mother at Latham in Lancashire, made a descent in the neighbourhood of Deal. But the inhabitants, either believing him an impostor, or urged by the fear of incurring the royal displeasure, attacked the invaders, made one hundred and sixty-nine prisoners, and drove the remainder into their boats. All the captives were hanged by the order of Henry, some in London, and others in different parts of the coast. Warbeck returned in despair to Flanders.<sup>73</sup>

In autumn the parliament assembled, and at the king's request passed a bill of attainder against twenty-one gentlemen who had suffered,

July 3.

Proceed-  
ings in  
parlia-  
ment.

<sup>73</sup> Fab. 530. Hall, 37. Stow, 479. Rot. Parl. vi. 504.

CHAP.  
VI.  
Oct. 27.

or had been condemned, for their adhesion to the pretender. The other acts of the session were to ratify the peace of Estaples, according to one of the articles of the treaty;<sup>74</sup> and to enact the penalty of forfeiture against all persons holding fees, annuities, or offices from the crown (and to these were afterwards added, all possessing lands, hereditaments, and honours by letters patent<sup>75</sup>), who should neglect to attend in person the king in his wars. But the nation had now grown weary of civil dissension. The extinction or beggary of so many noble and opulent families had proved a useful lesson to the existing generation; and men betrayed a reluctance to engage in contests, in which they knew from experience, that they must either gain the ascendency, or lose their lives or their fortunes. To obviate these disastrous consequences a statute was made, declaring, that no one, who should attend on the king and sovereign lord for the time being, to do him faithful service in his wars, should hereafter, on that account, whatever might be the fortune of battle, be attainted of treason, or incur the penalty of forfeiture. That this act might be set aside by the avarice or the resentment of a successful competitor, was indeed evident: yet it was perhaps the best remedy that could be

<sup>74</sup> Rot. Parl. vi, 503—508. Rym. xii. 710.

<sup>75</sup> Ibid. vi. 525.

devised for the evil ; and a hope was cherished both from the reasonableness of the measure, and from the benefits which it promised to all parties, that in future contests it would be generally respected.<sup>76</sup>

The repulse of Warbeck in his late expedition, and the complaint of the Flemish merchants, induced the archduke to solicit a reconciliation with Henry : and, after a few conferences between their respective envoys, the “great “ treaty of commerce between England and “ the Netherlands” was signed. By it every facility was afforded to the trade of the two countries ; but there was appended to it a provision, which from this period Henry inserted in every treaty with foreign sovereigns, that each of the contracting parties should banish from his dominions the known enemies of the other: and to preclude the possibility of evasion in the present instance, it was expressly stipulated that Philip should not permit the dutchess to aid or harbour the king’s rebels, but should deprive her of her domains, if she acted in opposition to this engagement.<sup>77</sup> Warbeck could no longer remain in Flanders. He sailed to Cork : but the Irish refused to venture their lives in his service. From Cork he passed to Scotland, and exhibited, it was said, to the king, commendatory letters from Charles VIII. and his friend

CHAP.  
VI.

Warbeck  
is received  
in Scot-  
land.  
1496.  
Feb. 24.

<sup>76</sup> Stat, 10 Hen. VII, c. 118.

<sup>77</sup> Rym, xii, 579—591.

CHAP. the dutchess of Burgundy. James received the  
 V. adventurer with kindness ; paid him the honours  
 ~~~~~ due to the prince, whose character he had assumed ; and to evince the sincerity of his friendship, gave to him in marriage his near relation, the lady Catharine Gordon, daughter to the earl of Huntley.<sup>78</sup>

He invades
England.

Dec.

This sudden improvement in the fortune of the adventurer renewed the jealousy and apprehensions of the king, who had good reason to suspect the enmity of James. That prince had been placed on the throne by the murderers of his father, a faction hostile to the interests of England : and Henry had in consequence entered into engagements with a party of the Scottish nobles, who undertook to seize the person of their young sovereign, and to conduct him to Londón.⁷⁹ Now, however, Fox bishop of Durham, was commissioned to open a negociation, and to tempt the fidelity of James, with the offer of an English princess in marriage. But he listened rather to the suggestions of resentment or ambition ; and demanded as the price of his forbearance terms to which the king refused his assent. Fox was followed by Concessault, as ambassador from the French monarch, who proposed, that all subjects of dispute between the two kings should be referred to the decision of

⁷⁸ Polydore, 593. Hall, 38, 39. Stow, 479. Speed, 977.

⁷⁹ Rym. xii. 440. Pinkert. Scot. ii. App, 1,

his sovereign : and when that was refused, offered one hundred thousand crowns for the person of the adventurer, to be sent a captive into France.⁸⁰ The bribe was indignantly rejected by James, who coined his plate into money, obtained a small supply from the dutchess of Burgundy, and engaged to place the pretender on the throne, on condition that he should receive as the reward of his services the town of Berwick, and the sum of fifty thousand marks in two years.⁸¹ Warbeck had mustered under his standard fourteen hundred men, outlaws from all nations : to these James added all the forces it was in his power to raise ; and the combined army crossed the borders in the depth of winter, and when no preparation had been made to oppose them. They were preceded by a proclamation, in which the adventurer styled himself Richard by the grace of God, king of England and France, lord of Ireland, and prince of Wales. It narrated in general terms his escape from the Tower, his wanderings in foreign countries, the usurpation of “ Henry Tydder,” the attempts to debauch the fidelity of his confidents, the execution and attainder of his friends in England, and the protection which

⁸⁰ Was it Charles, who wished to get possession of Warbeck, or Henry, who made the offer through Charles ? It is certain that the ambassador was sent at the instance of Henry. Pinkert, Scot. ii. App. 1. *ibid.*

⁸¹ All these particulars are taken from a letter of lord Bothwell, *ibid.* Ellis, *Original letters*, i. 25, 32.

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

he had received from the king of Scots. He was now in England, accompanied by that monarch, for the purpose of reclaiming his right: and James, whose only object was to assist him, had engaged to retire the moment that he should be joined by a competent number of natives. He therefore called on every true Englishman to arm in his cause; and promised to the man who should “take or distress “Henry Tydder,” a reward proportioned to his condition, “so as the most low and simplest of “degree should have for his labour one thousand “pounds in money, and lands to the yearly “value of one hundred marks to him and his “heirs for ever.”<sup>82</sup> But the proclamation had no effect. The novelty of the thing had worn away, and not a sword was unsheathed in favour of the white rose. The Scots, to console their disappointment, and to repay themselves for their trouble, pillaged the country without mercy.

Insurrec-  
tion in  
Cornwall.  
1497.  
Feb. 13.

As soon as the intelligence of this invasion reached Henry, he ordered Dawbeney, the lord chamberlain, to raise forces, summoned a great council, and afterwards a parliament, and obtained a grant of two tenths and two fifteenths.<sup>83</sup> In most counties the tax was levied without opposition: in Cornwall the people, inflamed by the harangues of Flammock an attorney, and of

<sup>82</sup> This proclamation is printed in Henry, xii. App. i. p. 387. It is much altered by Bacon, 87.

<sup>83</sup> Rot. Parl. vi. 513—519.

Joseph a farrier, flew to arms ; refused to pay their money for an object which, it was pretended, did not concern them, but the natives of the northern counties ; and resolved, to the number of sixteen thousand men, to demand of the king the punishment of Archbishop Morton, and of sir Reginald Gray, the supposed authors of this unjustifiable impost. The misguided multitude commenced their march : at Wells they were joined by the lord Audely, who placed himself at their head, and conducted them through Salisbury and Winchester into Kent. Opposed by the gentlemen of the county, he turned towards London, and encamped on Black-heath in sight of the capital. But Henry had by this time been joined by most of the southern nobility, and by the troops that had been previously raised against the Scots. On a Saturday (the king superstitiously believed that Saturday was his fortunate day,) the lord chamberlain marched to attack the insurgents : the earl of Oxford made a circuit to fall on their rear : and Henry with the artillery waited in St. George's fields the event of the battle. The Cornish archers defended with obstinacy the bridge at Deptford strand : but the moment it was forced, the insurgents fled in despair. Two thousand were killed : fifteen hundred were taken. Lord Audely lost his head : Flammock and Joseph were hanged : the rest obtained a pardon from the king, and were allowed to compound for

June 22.

CHAP. their liberty with their captors, on the best  
 VI. terms in their power. This lenity, so unusual  
 ~~ in Henry, was attributed by some to policy, and  
 a desire to attach to his cause the men of Corn-  
 wall ; by others to gratitude for the life of the  
 lord chamberlain, whom the insurgents had  
 made prisoner at the commencement of the  
 action, and had restored to liberty without ran-  
 som.<sup>84</sup>

Peace with  
Scotland.

While the attention of the king was occupied  
 by the Cornish insurgents, James again crossed  
 the borders, and laid siege to the castle of Nor-  
 ham, while his light troops scoured the country  
 as far as the Tees. But the earl of Surrey with  
 twenty thousand men, was now hastening to-  
 wards the north. The plunderers cautiously  
 retired as he advanced : James abandoned the  
 siege ; and Surrey retaliated on the Scottish  
 borderers the injuries which they had inflicted  
 on their English neighbours. The failure of  
 this second expedition, with the news of the  
 defeat of the Cornishmen, induced the king of  
 Scots to listen to the suggestions of don Pedro  
 Ayala, the Spanish ambassador, who laboured  
 with earnestness to reconcile the two monarchs.  
 Commissioners met at Aytown in Scotland :  
 Ayala presented himself as mediator ; and a  
 Sept. 30. truce was concluded for seven years. James  
 was so satisfied with the impartiality of the

---

<sup>84</sup> Rym. xii. 696. Hall, 41, 42, 43. Fab. 531. Rot. Parl. vi. 544.

Spaniard, that he intrusted the interests of the Scottish crown to his discretion; and Ayala prolonged the truce till the termination of one year after the death of the survivor of the two kings. There only remained a few points, on which the demands of Henry were deemed by the king of Scots derogatory from his honour: and these at the suggestion of Ayala were referred to the impartial decision of Ferdinand king of Spain.<sup>85</sup>

The enthusiasm which had been excited by the first appearance of Warbeck in Scotland, had long been on the decline: and before the meeting of the commissioners, whether it were that he saw the current of public opinion setting against him, or hoped to profit by the troubles in Cornwall, or had received a hint from his royal protector (for all these reasons have been assigned) he departed from Scotland with four ships, and six score companions. He first touched at Cork, and solicited in vain the aid of the earl of Desmond. From Cork he directed his course across the channel to Whitsand bay; and proceeding by land to Bodmin, unfurled the standard of Richard IV. The men of Cornwall had not acquired wisdom from their recent defeat. Three thousand offered their services to the adventurer: and that number was doubled before he reached the city of Exeter. Here he

Warbeck  
in Corn-  
wall.

Sept. 7.

<sup>85</sup> Rym. xii. 671. 673—680. Hall, 45.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~

formed his army into two divisions, and while one attempted to scale the walls, commanded the other to set fire to the opposite gate. The first was repulsed with considerable loss: the second was foiled by the ingenuity of the citizens, who on their part kindled a fire in the very gateway, and constantly fed it with fuel, till they had dug a deep trench between themselves and the enemy. The loss of two hundred men in this unfortunate attempt, and the arrival of the gentlemen of the county to the defence of the city, compelled the adventurer to decamp. On his road to Taunton he saw himself deserted by many of his adherents: but the Cornishmen bade him proceed, and promised to devote their lives to his service. The royal army had now arrived: the main battle was commanded by the lord steward and lord chamberlain; Henry stationed himself with the reserve; and a complete but sanguinary victory was confidently anticipated. During the day the pretended Richard with great composure made preparation for battle: but his heart failed at the sight of the royal standard; and as soon as it was dark, he left his camp with a guard of sixty men, and riding all night, entered his name in the sanctuary of Beaulieu in Hampshire. His followers, seeing themselves abandoned by their captain, implored the king's mercy. The ring-leaders were hanged, and the rest dismissed without ransom. Warbeck's wife, the lady Eliza-

He flies to
a sanc-
tuary.
Sept. 20.

beth Gordon, who had been left at Mount St. Michael, submitted at the first summons. When she was introduced to the king, she blushed and burst into tears:⁸⁶ but he relieved her apprehensions, and sent her to the queen, with whom she afterwards lived as an attendant, still retaining, on account of her beauty, the appellation of “the white rose,” which she had originally derived from the pretensions of her husband.⁸⁷

CHAP.
VI.

In the sanctuary of Beaulieu the fugitive had leisure to reflect on his melancholy situation. He saw the abbey constantly surrounded with a guard: he was repeatedly tempted to leave it by promises of pardon: and, after a severe struggle, resolved to throw himself on the mercy of the conqueror. The king did not violate his word, but refused to admit him into his presence. When he returned to London, Warbeck rode in his suite, surrounded by multitudes, who gazed with wonder at the man, whose claim and adventures had so long engaged their attention. He was conducted as a spectacle through the principal streets of the city; ordered to confine himself within the precincts of the palace; and

Submits to
the king.

⁸⁶ *Magno cum rubore et obortis lacrymis.* André, MS. Domit. A. xviii.

⁸⁷ Fab. 531. Hall, 46, 47. Bacon, 104. “The white rose” was afterwards married to sir Matthew Cradock, and was buried with him in the church of Swansea in Wales, where their tomb and epitaph are still to be seen. Histor. Doubts, addition.

CHAP.
 VI.
 Escapes.
 1498.
 June 9.
 Reads his
 confes-
 sion.
 June 14.

repeatedly examined before a board of commissioners, as to his parentage, his instructors, and his associates. Whatever disclosures he made, were kept secret: but he grew weary of his confinement in the palace, and at the end of six months contrived to elude the vigilance of his keepers. The alarm was instantly given: patroles watched every road to the coast; and the fugitive, in despair of success, surrendered himself to the prior of the monastery at Shene. The monk encouraged him with the hopes of pardon, and by his solicitations extorted from the king a promise to spare the life of the suppliant. But he was compelled to stand a whole day in the stocks at Westminster hall, and the next in Cheapside: and on both occasions to read to the people a confession which he had signed with his own hand. In this barren and unsatisfactory document, he acknowledged that he was a native of Tournay, the son of John Osbeck and Catharine di Faro; gave the names and professions of his relations, and of the persons with whom he had lived at Antwerp, Middleburgh, and Lisbon; and stated that on his arrival at Cork he was taken first for Simnel, who had personated the earl of Warwick, then for an illegitimate son of Richard III., and lastly for the duke of York, the second son of Edward IV.; that he was invited into France by Charles VIII., “from France he “went into Ireland, from Ireland into Scotland,

“ and so into England.”⁸⁸ It is plain that this confession was composed from the disclosures which he had previously made. It describes with minuteness his parentage and original occupation, points which Henry wished to impress on the minds of the people, but was silent on subjects which it might have been unpleasant or impolitic to disclose, his transactions with foreign princes, and the assurances of support which he had received from native subjects. After suffering his punishment he was committed to the Tower.⁸⁹

This seems to have been the age of intrigue and imposture. From the capture of Simnel to the appearance of Warbeck, Henry had been kept in constant alarm by repeated attempts in favour of the earl of Warwick. About the close of 1498 a plan had been adopted to liberate that prince from prison: but it failed through the ignorance of the conspirators, who mistook the place of his confinement.⁹⁰ The following year a new plot was contrived in the councils of the

A pre-
tended
earl of
Warwick.

⁸⁸ Hall, 49, 50. Grafton, 929. André, Domit, A. xviii. André was pensioned by Henry. Rym. xii. 643. His evidence (for he says the confession was printed by order of the king) proves its authenticity, which Mr. Laing has denied, because it is not mentioned by Fabian or Polydore. Hen. xii. 444.

⁸⁹ Hall, *ibid.* Fab. 532. Stow, 481. From some imaginary improbabilities in the confession, it has been inferred that it was a mere fiction invented by Henry and his ministers. I should have thought that they might have invented a fiction of that description without crowding it with improbabilities.

⁹⁰ Rot. Parl. vi. 437.

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

king of France, who sought to divert Henry from the threatened invasion of his dominions. That monarch expressed his regret that he had ever granted assistance to the usurper of the rights of the house of York, and offered to the friends of the earl of Warwick ships, money, and troops, to place him on the throne of his ancestors. Letters were written to the retainers of his father the late duke of Clarence; lady Warwick was solicited to favour the enterprise; and an invitation was sent to the most distinguished of the Yorkists to repair to France, and take the command.<sup>91</sup> When this attempt also failed, Warbeck put forth his claim as the duke of York; and as long as he was able to prosecute it, the earl of Warwick seemed to be forgotten. Now that Warbeck was in prison, the rights of the earl were again brought forward; and a person of the name of Ralph Wulford undertook to personate the young prince. He was taught to act his part by Patrick, an Augustinian friar, and chose the county of Kent for the theatre on which he should make his first appearance. As a preparatory step a report was circulated of the death of Warwick: after a short interval the pretender whispered in the ears of a few confidants that he was the earl: and soon afterwards his instructor published to the world the import-

---

<sup>91</sup> Ibid. 456. The token by which the conspirators knew each other was a particular squeeze of the thumb. Ibid.

ant secret in a sermon. It is difficult to conceive on what they could ground their hope of success. Both were immediately apprehended. The friar was condemned to perpetual imprisonment: Wulford paid with his life the forfeit of his temerity.<sup>92</sup>

The real earl of Warwick and the pretended duke of York were now fellow prisoners in the Tower. They soon contracted a mutual friendship, wept over their common misfortune, and, whether it originated with themselves, or was suggested to them by others, adopted a plan for their escape. Four of the warders were gained to murder the governor, and conduct the captives to a place of security, where, if we may believe the records of their trials, Warbeck was to be again proclaimed by the title of Richard IV. and Warwick was to summon the retainers of his father to the standard of the new king. Warbeck was indicted in Westminster hall, as a foreigner, guilty of acts of treason since his landing in England. He received sentence of death, and at the place of execution, affirmed on the word of a dying man the truth of every particular contained in his original confession. With him suffered his first adherent O'Water: and both, expressing their regret for the imposture, asked forgiveness of the king. Before their punishment the earl of Warwick was ar-

CHAP.  
VI.  
1499.  
March.

Execution  
of War-  
beck.

Aug. 2.

Nov. 16.

<sup>92</sup> Hall. 50.

CHAP.

VI.

And of the  
real earl of  
Warwick.

Nov. 28.

raigned at the bar of the house of Lords. Of his own accord he pleaded guilty: the earl of Oxford as lord steward pronounced judgment: and after a few days Henry signed the warrant for the execution of the last legitimate descendant of the Plantagenets, whose pretensions could excite the jealousy of the house of Tudor.<sup>93</sup>

Warwick owed his death to the restless officiousness of his friends, who by repeated attempts had convinced Henry that the existence of the earl was incompatible with his own safety. Still it will be difficult to clear the king from the guilt of shedding innocent blood. This victim of royal suspicion had been confined from his childhood for no other crime than his birth. Certainly he was justified in attempting to recover his liberty. Had he even been guilty of the other part of the charge, his youth, his ignorance, his simplicity, and the peculiar circumstances of his situation, ought to have saved him from capital punishment. The whole nation lamented his fate: and to remove the odium from the king, a report was circulated that Ferdinand of Spain had refused to bestow his daughter Catharine on the prince of Wales, as long as so near a claimant of the house of York was alive. Catharine herself had been told of the report, and in the following reign was heard to observe, that she never expected much happiness

---

<sup>93</sup> Hall, 51. Bacon, 110, 111. Rot. Parl. vi, 535.

from her union with the family of Tudor, since that union had been purchased at the price of royal and innocent blood.<sup>94</sup>

CHAP.  
VI.

From this period the ambition of Henry was no more alarmed by pretenders to the crown, nor his avarice distressed by the expense of foreign expeditions. The principal events of his reign during the ten years of tranquillity which preceded his death, may be comprised under the two heads, of his treaties with other powers, and his expedients to amass money.

I. 1. Henry was not less careful than the French monarchs to preserve the alliance between the two crowns. His object was to ensure the payment of the annual pension secured to him by the treaty of Estaples: theirs to afford him no pretext to oppose the progress of their arms in the conquest of Italy. In 1494 Charles had poured a numerous army from the Alps into the plains of Lombardy: the native princes yielded to the pressure of the torrent; and in a few months Naples was converted into a province of the French monarchy. But it was lost with the same rapidity with which it had been won. The pope, the king of the Romans, the king of Castile, the duke of Milan, and the republic of Venice entered into a league, by which they guaranteed to each other their respective dominions: and Charles was compelled to

Treaties  
with  
France.

<sup>94</sup> Hall, *ibid.* Bacon, 112. See Note [C] at the end of the volume.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~

abondon his conquest, and to fight his way through his enemies, that he might return to his native kingdom. The next year Henry acceded to the general confederacy, a measure which might intimidate the French king, and by intimidating, cause him to be more punctual in the discharge of his pecuniary obligations. In 1498 Charles died: and was succeeded by Louis XII. That prince, who inherited the passion of his predecessor for the conquest of Naples, cheerfully ratified the treaty of Estaples, bound himself by the most solemn oaths to pay the remainder of the debt, and signed Henry's favourite stipulation, that if a traitor or rebel to either prince should seek refuge in the dominions of the other, he should be delivered up within twenty days at the requisition of the offended party.⁹⁵

Treaties
with Scot-
land.

2. The truces between England and Scotland, though frequently renewed and enforced with menaces and punishments, were but ill observed by the fierce and turbulent inhabitants of the borders. Soon after the last pacification, the garrison of Norham grew jealous of the repeated visits, which they received from their Scottish neighbours. One day a serious affray was the consequence: and the strangers, after losing some of their fellows, fled for protection to the nearest post of their countrymen. The

intelligence was received with indignation by James, who instantly dispatched a herald to Henry, to announce that the truce was at an end: and a war must have ensued had not the English monarch been as phlegmatic as the Scottish was irascible. Fox bishop of Durham, to whom the castle belonged, first wrote to James, and afterwards visited him at the abbey of Melrose: and so successful were the address and eloquence of that prelate, that the king was not only appeased, but offered, what he had formerly refused, to marry Margaret the eldest daughter of Henry.⁹⁶ By the English prince the offer was most joyfully accepted: and when some of his council expressed a fear that then, in failure of the male line, England might hereafter become an appendage to the Scottish crown, "No," he replied, "Scotland will be-
" come an appendage to the English. For the
"smaller must follow the larger kingdom." The event has verified the prediction: and the marriage has been productive of more substantial benefits than Henry could probably foresee. It has not only united the two crowns on one head; it has also contributed to unite the two kingdoms into one empire.⁹⁷

It would be tedious to narrate the repeated and protracted negotiations respecting this marriage. The parties were related within the

Marriage
of James
with the
king's
daughter.

⁹⁶ Hall, 48.

⁹⁷ Bacon, 119.

CHAP.

VI.

1502.
Jan. 24.

Jan. 29.

prohibited degrees, and the princess was not of sufficient age to make a contract valid in law. Both these impediments were removed by a papal dispensation. Henry consented to give with his daughter the paltry sum of thirty thousand nobles, to be paid in three yearly instalments: and James settled on her lands to the annual value of two thousand pounds, in lieu of which she was to receive during his life five hundred marks yearly.⁹⁸ The parties were now solemnly affianced to each other in the queen's chamber, the earl of Bothwell acting as proxy for James: tournaments were performed for two days in honour of the ceremony; and to exhilarate the populace twelve hogsheads of claret were tapped in the streets, and twelve bonfires kindled at night.⁹⁹ At the same time was concluded, after one hundred and seventy years of war, or of truces little better than war, a treaty of perpetual peace between the two kingdoms, accompanied with the usual clause respecting the surrender of traitors, and a pro-

⁹⁸ Rym. xii. 787—793. As the noble was 6s. 8d. the whole portion amounted to no more than 10,000*l.*

⁹⁹ The form was as follows: “ I Patricke earl of Bothwel, pro-
“ curator, &c. contract matrimony with thee Margaret, and take
“ thee into and for the wieffe and spous of my soveraigne lord
“ James king of Scotland, and all uthir for thee, as procurator
“ forsaid, forsake, induring his and thine lives naturall, and thereto
“ as procurator forsaid, I plight, and gives thee his faythe and
“ truthe.” Henry gave to the ambassadors at their departure pre-
sents to the value of several thousand pounds. Lel. Coll. iv.
258—264.

mise that neither prince should grant letters of protection to the subjects of the other without having previously obtained his permission. James, however, was careful that his new engagements should not interfere with the ancient alliance between Scotland and France. When he swore to observe the treaty, he had given to Henry the usual title of king of France; but he instantly arose, protested that he had done it inadvertently, and repeated the oath with the omission of that word; and when he was requested by his father-in-law not to renew the French league, he acquiesced for the time, but reserved to himself the power of renewing it, whenever he should be so advised.¹⁰⁰

At the time of the contract the princess was but twelve years of age; and James had consented that she should remain twenty months longer under the roof of her royal parents. At length she departed from her grandmother's palace at Colliweston, with a long train of ladies and gentlemen, who accompanied her a mile, kissed her, and returned to the court. The earl of Kent, with the lords Strange, Hastings, and Willoughby, escorted her as far as York. She rode on a palfrey attended by three footmen: and was followed by a magnificent litter drawn by two horses, in which she made her entry into the different towns. In her suite

1503.
July 8.

¹⁰⁰ Rym. xii. 793—804. xiii. 12, 43—47.

CHAP.

VI.

July 17.

Aug. 1.

Aug. 7.

Aug. 8.

Marriage
of prince
Arthur.

1496.

Oct. 1.

were a company of players and another of minstrels. From York she proceeded under the care of the earls of Surrey and Northumberland to Lambertonkirk, where she was received by the Scottish nobility. James repeatedly visited her on her progress: and on her arrival in the neighbourhood of Edinburgh, mounted her palfrey, and rode with her behind him into his capital. The marriage ceremony was performed by the archbishop of Glasgow, and “the English lords and ladyes,” says Hall, “returned into their countrey, gevyinge more prayse to the manhoode, than to the good maner, and nurture of Scotland.”¹⁰¹

3. Henry had always cultivated with particular solicitude the alliance of Ferdinand king of Castile and Arragon: and the more strongly to cement their friendship had proposed a marriage between his eldest son, Arthur prince of Wales, and Catharine the fourth daughter of the Castilian monarch. The arrangements were soon concluded: Ferdinand promised to give the princess a portion of two hundred thousand crowns; and Henry engaged that his son should endow her with one third of his income at present, and one third of the income of the crown, if he should live to wear it.¹⁰² The marriage was postponed on account of the youth of Arthur:

¹⁰¹ Lel. Coll. iv. 265—300. Hall, 56.

¹⁰² Rym. xii. 658—666. The Spanish crown was worth 4s. 2d English. Ibid,

but when he had reached his twelfth year, a dispensation was obtained to enable him to make the contract: and the marriage ceremony was performed in the chapel of his manor of Bewdley, where Catharine was represented by her proxy the Spanish ambassador.¹⁰³ At length the prince completed his fourteenth year, and the princess landed at Plymouth, after a wearisome and boisterous voyage. The king met her at Dogmersfield:¹⁰⁴ she renewed to Arthur the contract which had been made by her proxy: the marriage ceremony was performed in St. Paul's: and at the door of the cathedral, and in the presence of the multitude, Arthur endowed her with one third of his property.¹⁰⁵ The king spared no expense to testify his joy by disguisings, tournaments, and banquets: and several of the nobility, to flatter the monarch, indulged in a magnificence which proved ruinous to their families.¹⁰⁶ The abilities of Arthur, the sweet-

CHAP.
VI.1499.
May 19.1501.
Oct. 2.

Nov. 6.

Nov. 14.

¹⁰³ Rym. xii. 754.

¹⁰⁴ An unexpected difficulty occurred on the road to Dogmersfield. The prothonotary of Spain met the king, and told him that the Spanish noblemen who had charge of the princess, had been charged by their sovereign that "they should in no manner of " wise permit their lady to have any meeting, ne to use any manner of communication, nither to receive any compayne, untill " the inception of the very daye of the solemnisation of the mariage." But Henry declared that he would be master in his own kingdom; he entered her chamber, introduced his son to her, and caused them to renew the former contract. Lel. Coll. v. 352—355.

¹⁰⁵ Rym. xii. 780.¹⁰⁶ Those who are desirous of knowing what were the fashionable

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

ness of his temper, and his proficiency in learning,<sup>107</sup> had gained him the affection of all who knew him: and his bride by her beauty, modesty, and accomplishments, became the object of general admiration. The castle of Ludlow in Shropshire was assigned for their residence: their court represented in miniature the court of their royal parent: and the prince amidst his vassals was instructed by his council in the rudiments of government. But the weakness of his constitution sank under the rigour of the winter: and the hopes of the nation were unexpectedly blighted by his premature death in the fourth month after his marriage.<sup>108</sup> The intelligence of

His death,  
1502.  
April 2.

amusements of our ancestors, may read the account of the festivities on this occasion, added by Hearn to Leland's Collectanea, v. 356—373.

<sup>107</sup> Besides the most eminent grammarians he had studied “ in poetricie Homer, Virgil, Lucan, Ovid, Silius, Plautus, and Terence: “ In oratorie Tullies offices, epistles, paradoxes, and Quintilian: “ in historie, Thucydides, Livie, Cæsar's Commentaries, Suetonius, “ Tacitus, Plinius, Valerius Maximus, Salust, and Eusebius. “ Wherein we have been particular, to signifie what authors were “ then thought fit to be elementary and rudimentall unto princes.” Speed (p. 988), who quotes the manuscript of André, the preceptor of Arthur.

<sup>108</sup> The intelligence was first opened to the king by his confessor. “ He sent for the queen, who seeing him oppressed with sorrow, “ besought his grace that he would first after God remember the “ weale of his owne noble person, the comfort of his realmé and “ of her. She then saied, that my ladie his mother had never no “ more children but him onely, and that God by his grace had “ ever preserved him, and brought him where that he was. Over “ that, howe that God had left him yet a fayre prince, two fayre “ princesses; and that God is where he was, and we are both young

this event alarmed Ferdinand and Isabella, the parents of the young widow. Anxious to preserve the friendship of England as a counterpoise to the enmity of France, they hastened to propose a marriage between their daughter and her brother-in-law, Henry, now apparent heir to the throne. The English monarch affected to receive the communication with indifference; and suspended his assent, that he might ascertain whether a more profitable bargain might not be made with some other court: while, on the other hand, the Spaniard, to quicken the determination, sought to alarm the avarice of his ally, by requiring the immediate return of Catharine; with the restoration of the one hundred thousand crowns, the half of her marriage

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~~~  
Contract
of mar-
riage be-
tween
Henry and
Catharine.

“ ynouge: and that the prudence and wisdom of his grace sponce
“ over all christendome, so that it should please him to take this
“ according thereunto. Then the king thanked her of her good
“ comfort: After that she was departed and come to her owne
“ chamber, natural and motherly remembrance of that great losse
“ smote her so sorrowfull to the hart, that those that were about
“ her, were faine to send for the king to comfort her. Then his
“ grace of true gentle and faithfull love in good hast came and
“ relieved her, and showed her how wise counsell she had given
“ him before: and he for his parte would thanke God for his sonn,
“ and would she should doe in like wise.” I have transcribed this
account of Henry’s conduct on so interesting an occasion, as it
appears to me to do away the charge which has been brought
against him, of treating Elizabeth with indifference and neglect.
I shall add, that I have not met with any good proof of Henry’s
dislike of Elizabeth so often mentioned by later writers. In the MS.
of André, and the journals of the herald, they appear as if they en-
tertained a real affection for each other.

CHAP.
VI.1503.
June 23.

portion, which had already been paid. The negociation at length was opened : but it proved as difficult to wring money from Ferdinand, as to satisfy the expectations of Henry ; and a year elapsed, before it was finally agreed, that the marriage should be contracted within two months after the arrival of a dispensation from the pope ; that it should be solemnized when the young prince had completed his fifteenth year ; and that Ferdinand should previously transmit to London another sum of one hundred thousand crowns, the remaining half of the portion of Catharine. The dispensation was obtained : the parties were contracted to each other :¹⁰⁹ but the Spanish monarch either could not or would not advance the money ; and his English brother cared little for the delay. The princess a widow, and in his custody, was an hostage for the good will of her father : and by retaining this hold on the hopes and fears of the Spaniard, he expected to extort from him concessions of still greater importance. On the day before the young Henry completed his fifteenth year, the canonical age of puberty, and the time fixed for the solemnization of the marriage, he was compelled to protest in due form, that he had neither done, nor meant to do any thing which could render the contract made during his nonage binding in law. It might be

1505.
June 28.¹⁰⁹ Rymer, xiii. 81. 83. 89. 114.

thought that this protestation was equivalent to a refusal: but the king assured Ferdinand that his only object was to free his son from all previous obligation: he still wished to marry Catharine; but was also free to marry any other woman.¹¹⁰ Thus while he awakened the fears, he was careful to nourish the hopes of the Spaniard: an expedient by which he flattered himself that he should compel that monarch to submit to his pleasure in two other projects which he had now formed.

Soon after the death of the English prince, his mother Elizabeth had been carried to the grave. Henry's mourning might be sincere: but it was short, and he quickly consoled himself for his loss by calculating the pecuniary advantages, which he might derive from a second marriage. The late king of Naples had bequeathed an immense property to his widow: her presumed riches offered irresistible attractions to the heart of the English monarch; and three private gentlemen were commissioned to procure an introduction to the queen under the pretext of delivering to her a letter from the dowager princess of Wales. In their report to the king they praised her person, her disposition, and her acquirements, but added the unwelcome intelligence that the reigning king had refused to

¹¹⁰ El se tenia por libre para casarse con quien quisiese. Zurita vi. 193. En Zaragoza, 1610. The contract is in Collier, ii. rec.

CHAP.
VI.

fulfil the testament of his predecessor. Henry's passion was instantly extinguished : he cast his eyes on another rich widow, Margaret, the dutchess of Savoy, and from an accident, which he attributed to his good fortune, he derived a strong hope of succeeding in his suit.

The king
and queen
of Castile
in Eng-
land.1506.
Jan. 10.

On the death of Isabella queen of Castile, which crown she held in her own right, her husband Ferdinand had retired to his kingdom of Arragon, and surrendered the sceptre of Castile to his daughter Juana, the wife of the archduke Philip. The new king and queen in the beginning of 1506 left the Netherlands to take possession of the Castilian throne : but the weather was unfavourable ; and, after struggling with adverse winds for more than a fortnight, they sought shelter in the harbour of Falmouth. It was in vain that their council objected. They went on shore in search of refreshment : and Henry grasped at the opportunity of deriving advantage from their indiscretion. In terms which admitted of no refusal, he invited them to his court ; detained them during three months in splendid captivity ; and extorted from them several valuable concessions as the price of their enlargement. 1^o. Margaret was the sister of Philip, and that prince was compelled to agree to a marriage between her and Henry, and to fix the amount of her portion at the sum of three hundred thousand crowns.¹¹¹ 2^o. Henry

March 20.

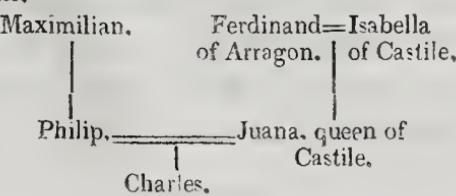
¹¹¹ Rymer, xiii. 126—157.

had formerly obtained the consent of Maximilian that Charles, the infant son of Philip, should marry Mary, the youngest daughter of the English king. To this the captive prince, though he had formerly refused, now gave his assent.¹¹²

3°. A new treaty of commerce was negotiated between the subjects of the two kings, as prejudicial to the interests of the Flemish, as it was favourable to those of the English merchants. Lastly, Henry demanded the surrender of an individual whom he had long considered as the most dangerous enemy of the house of Lancaster. This was Edmund, second son to the late duke of Suffolk. John earl of Lincoln, the eldest son, had fallen at the battle of Stoke, and had been attainted by parliament. When the duke himself died, Edmund claimed the

Henry
gets pos-
session of
the earl
Suffolk.

¹¹² Philip had previously engaged to marry Charles to Claude daughter of Louis XII. of France. After Philip's death, Maximilian, fearing that Ferdinand might keep possession of Castile, to the prejudice of his grandson, urged Henry to contract the young princes to each other, and then demand the regency of Castile, as guardian to his son-in-law. (Zurita, vi. 163.) He was deterred by his desire of marrying Juana; but afterwards, a few months before his death, in defiance of the objections of Ferdinand, proceeded to the contract with the approbation of Maximilian and Margaret, Dec. 15, 1508. Rym. xiii. 236. Perhaps the following table may prove of use to the reader.



CHAP.
VI.1499.
July 1.

honours and estate of his father: but Henry persisted in considering him as the heir of his attainted brother, maintained that he had no claim to the forfeited property, and compelled him to accept as a boon a small portion of the patrimony of his fathers, and to be content with the inferior title of earl.¹¹³ It was impossible to ascribe the king's conduct to any other motive than a desire to humble a rival family: and the earl by his ungovernable passions soon involved himself in difficulties and danger. He had killed a man who had offended him, was arraigned as a murderer at the king's bench, and commanded to plead the king's pardon. His pride could not brook this indignity; and the court of his aunt, the dutchess of Burgundy, received the fugitive. Henry, who, on what grounds I know not, is represented as desirous to inveigle him into greater indiscretions, prevailed on him to return. At the marriage of the prince of Wales, he vied in the splendour of his equipage, and his attentions to the royal family, with the most opulent and favoured of the nobility: and then, to the astonishment of the public, fled a second time, with his brother Richard, to the court of his aunt. Henry immediately forboded an insurrection. Sir Robert Curson was dispatched to act the part of a spy under the mask of friendship: and in a few weeks the earl's bro-

¹¹³ Rot. Parl. vi. 474.

ther William de la Pole, the lord Courtney, who had married one of the late queen's sisters, sir William Wyndham, and sir James Tyrrel, with a few others, were apprehended.¹¹⁴ To the two first no other crime could be objected than their relationship to the fugitive : the other two were condemned and executed for having favoured the escape of the king's enemy ; and all were afterwards attainted by parliament.¹¹⁵ By this act of vigour the conspiracy, if any conspiracy existed, was suppressed in its birth : and Suffolk, left in extreme penury by the death of his aunt, after wandering for a time in Germany, had been permitted by the archduke Philip to reside in his dominions.

Henry now demanded of that prince the surrender of the fugitive. It was in vain that he pleaded his honour : he was given to know that he was himself a captive, and could only purchase his liberty by consenting to the captivity of the earl. Compelled to yield, he exacted from Henry a promise that he would respect the life of Suffolk, and on the surrender of the fugi-

CHAP.
VI.

1502.
March.

May 6.

¹¹⁴ It was on this occasion that Tyrrel confessed the murder of Edward V. and his brother in the Tower. More, 68.

¹¹⁵ Rot. Parl. 545. The forfeiture was to take place from the 1st of July, 1499. If then, as our writers say, Wyndham and Tyrrel were executed for aiding the flight of Suffolk, it must have been on the first, and not the second time that he fled to the continent. I may remark that the charge of treason against them is laid on the 1st of July, that against the earl of Warwick and Warbeck on the 2d of August of the same year. Ibid. Was there any connexion between the two ?

CHAP. VI.
 1506. March 16. tive was permitted to prosecute his voyage. The earl was sent to the Tower. Though Henry thirsted for his blood, he feared to violate his engagement with Philip: but before his death he left an order for the execution of his victim as a legacy to the filial piety of his successor.¹¹⁶

New projects of marriage.

Philip was only one of the parties interested in the marriage of his sister Margaret. The consent of Maximilian and Ferdinand was also requisite: but while Henry was negotiating with these princes, Philip died; and his widow Juana, in her own right queen of Castile, appeared to the imagination of the king a still more desirable bride. There were indeed two obstacles to be surmounted, which would have deterred any other suitor. Juana laboured under a derangement of intellect, which rendered her incapable of giving her consent: and Ferdinand, her guardian, would naturally oppose any measure which might deprive him of the government of her dominions. But Henry was not discouraged. He relinquished the pursuit of Margaret; contended that the malady of Juana was only temporary, occasioned by the bad usage, which she had received from her last husband; and trusted to his own ingenuity to remove the objections of her father. That prince unwilling to irritate a prince whom it was his interest to flatter, had recourse to delay: he represented

¹¹⁶ Hall, 54, 55. Speed, 990—994. Fab. 533.

the present state of his daughter's mind ; he promised that if, on her recovery of her reason, she could be induced to marry, the king of England should be her husband. But Henry was suspicious of the king's sincerity : he insisted that his ambassador Astill should speak to the queen in private, and receive an answer from her own mouth ; and apprehensive that his son's attachment to Catharine might lead to a clandestine union, he forbad them to see each other, treated the princess with severity, and endeavoured to subdue the obstinacy of the father by punishing the innocence of his daughter.¹¹⁷ However, the malady of Juana experienced no abatement. Henry desisted from his hopeless pursuit, and, accepting the apologies of Ferdinand for his delay in the payment of the marriage portion, concluded with him a new treaty, by which the Spanish monarch was bound to transmit to London one hundred thousand crowns in four half-yearly instalments, and Henry to permit the solemnization of the marriage on the arrival of the last. Two were received by the king at the appointed time : he

1508.
April.
Sept.

¹¹⁷ Catharine, in her letters to her father, professed to have no great inclination for a second marriage in England, but requested that her sufferings and wishes might be kept out of view. No gustaba la princesa de casar segunda vez en Inglaterra. Así le dio a entender al rey su padre: cuando le supplicaba en lo que tocaba a su casamiento no mirase su gusto ni romodidad, sino solo lo que a él y sus cosas conveniese bien. Mariana, Hist. I. xx. c. 17.

CHAP.
VI.

died before the arrival of the third.¹¹⁸ Perhaps I should apologize to the reader for this long and tedious detail: but the important controversy to which the marriage of Henry and Catharine gave birth, and the still more important consequences to which that controversy led, have imparted an interest to every circumstance which originally impeded or facilitated their union.

The king's
schemes
to get
money.

II. While the king sought by foreign alliances to add to the security of his family, he was equally solicitous to amass riches at the expense of his subjects. What they termed avarice, he denominated policy; observing that to deprive his adversaries of their wealth was to take from them the means of annoyance. But Henry's rapacity was not very scrupulous in its selection: it fed with equal appetite on his friends and his enemies. The men whom he employed as the agents of oppression, were sir Richard Empson, and Edmund Dudley, both lawyers, of inventive heads, and unfeeling hearts; who despoiled the subject to fill the king's coffers, and

¹¹⁸ The English historians seem entirely ignorant of the causes which for so many years delayed the marriage of Henry and Catharine. For the preceding narrative I have had recourse to the Spanish historians Zurita and Mariana, and have compared their statements with extracts from the original documents preserved among the records at Simancas, which have been copied for me by a friend in Spain. The receipts for the money in 1508 are signed by both Henrys, the father and the son. The third payment was made to the young king in May, and the last in September 1509..

despoiled the king to enrich themselves. The following are the chief of the numerous expedients by which they extorted money. 1. In the lapse of centuries the rigour of the feudal tenures had been gradually relaxed, and during the civil dissensions of the two roses many prestations had been suffered to sink into desuetude. But these ministers revived all the dormant claims of the crown ; exacted with severity the payment of arrears ; discovered and enforced forgotten causes of forfeiture ; and extended the feudal services to estates holden by different tenures. 2. The ancient statutes had created a multitude of offences punishable by fine, imprisonment, and forfeiture, and had enacted the same penalties against officers, who had failed in the execution of their duty. Under these two heads hosts of informers were employed to cull out fit subjects for prosecution : and when the real or supposed delinquent was brought before Empson or Dudley (they were barons of the exchequer), unless he consented to pay an exorbitant fine, he was committed to prison. New offers of composition were made to him, while he lingered in custody : on his refusal he was brought to trial : and at his trial a verdict was invariably found for the crown, by a jury previously packed for the purpose. 3. Outlawry was the general consequence of non-appearance in personal actions ; but was always reversed, on the payment by the party of a moderate fine.

CHAP.
VI.

These harpies had the ingenuity to multiply such proceedings, and the cruelty to wring from their victims the full amount of a year's income. By these arts, and others of a similar description, every class of subjects was harassed and impoverished, while a constant stream of wealth passed through the hands of Empson and Dudley, of which a part only was suffered to reach the treasury; the remainder they diverted to their own coffers.¹¹⁹

If we may credit a story related by Bacon, Henry was not less adroit, or less unfeeling than his two ministers. Of the partisans of the house of Lancaster, there was no one whose exertions or sacrifices had been greater than those of the earl of Essex. That nobleman on one occasion had entertained the king at his castle of Henningham: and when Henry was ready to depart, a number of servants and retainers in the earl's livery was drawn up in two lines, to do honour to the sovereign. "My lord," said the king, "I have heard much of your hospitality, but I see it is greater than the speech. These handsome gentlemen and yeomen that I see on each side of me, are surely your menial servants." The earl replied with a smile, "That, may it please your grace, were not for mine ease. They are most of them mine retainers, come to do me service at a

¹¹⁹ Fabian, 534—536. Hall, 57, 58. Bacon, 119—121.

“ time like this, and chiefly to see your grace.” Henry affected to start, and returned: “By my “ faith, my lord, I thank you for your good “ cheer: but I may not endure to have my laws “ broken in my sight. My attorney must speak “ with you.” He alluded to the statute against retainers, which had been passed in his first parliament: and the earl for his misplaced generosity was condemned to pay a fine of ten thousand pounds: an almost incredible sum, if we consider the relative value of money at that period.¹²⁰

CHAP.
VI.
~~~

The king had for years been visited with regular fits of the gout. His strength visibly wasted away, and every spring the most serious apprehensions were entertained for his life. Whatever might be the hopes with which he flattered himself, his preachers did not allow him to be ignorant of his danger. From the pulpit they admonished him of the extortion of his officers, and exhorted him to prepare for death by making reparation to the innocent sufferers. Henry does not appear to have been displeased with their freedom. He forgave all offences against the crown with the exception of felony and murder; satisfied the creditors of all persons confined for debts under the amount of forty shillings; and ordered strict justice to be done to all who had been injured by the

His sick-  
ness and  
death.

---

<sup>120</sup> Bacon, 121.

CHAP.  
VI.1509.  
April 22.

tyranny of his ministers. The prosecutions, however, were soon revived: it was contended that no injustice could be committed, where the conviction was procured by due process of law: and several of the most respectable citizens in London were heavily amerced, and in default of payment thrown into prison. Thus Empson and Dudley continued to pursue their iniquitous career till they were arrested by the death of the king, who in the spring of 1509 sunk under the violence of his disease. The anxiety of his mind is strongly depicted in the provisions of his will: but he might easily have foreseen that his injunctions for the reparation of injuries would be despised or eluded by a young and thoughtless successor.<sup>121</sup> He left three children, a son, Henry, who inherited his father's crown, and two daughters, Margaret, married to James king of Scots, and Mary, afterwards the wife of Louis XII. king of France.

To Henry by his contemporaries was allotted the praise of political wisdom. He seems, indeed, to have been formed by nature for the circumstances in which accident had placed him. With a mind dark and mistrustful, tenacious of its own secrets and adroit in divining the secrets of others, capable of employing the most unprincipled agents, and of descending to the meanest artifices, he was able to unravel

---

<sup>121</sup> This singular will has been published by Mr. Astle.

the plots, to detect the impostures, and to defeat the projects of all his opponents. But there was nothing open in his friendship, or generous in his enmity. His suspicions kept him always on his guard: he watched with jealousy the conduct of his very ministers; and never unbosomed himself with freedom even to his consort or his mother. It was his delight to throw an air of mystery over the most ordinary transactions: nor would pride or policy allow him, even when it appeared essential to his interests, to explain away the doubts, or satisfy the curiosity of his subjects. The consequence was, that no one knew what to believe, or what to expect. "All things," says sir Thomas More, "were so covertly demeaned, one thing pretended and another meant, that there was nothing so plain and openly proved, but that yet, for the common custom of close and covert dealing, men had it ever inwardly suspect, as many well counterfeited jewels make the true mis-trusted."<sup>122</sup>

He appears to have been the first of our kings since the accession of Henry III., who confined his expenses within the limits of his income.<sup>123</sup>

<sup>122</sup> More, 67.

<sup>123</sup> In his first parliament funds were

placed at his disposal for the discharge of the yearly expenses of his household, estimated at 14,000*l.*, and of his wardrobe estimated at 2000*l.* Rot. Parl. vi. 299, also 497. By the treasurer's account of the last year delivered to Henry VIII., the expenses of the household amounted to 12,759*l.* 9*s.* 11*d.*, and of the wardrobe to 1,715*l.* 19*s.* 11*d.* See Henry, xii, App. N<sup>o</sup>. iv.

CHAP.  
VI.  
~~~

But the civil wars had swept away those crowds of annuitants and creditors, that formerly used to besiege the doors of the exchequer: and the revenue of the crown came to him free from incumbrances, and augmented by forfeitures. Hence he was enabled to reign without the assistance of parliament: and, if he occasionally summoned the two houses, it was only when a decent pretext for demanding a supply, offered to his avarice a bait which it could not refuse.¹²⁴ He had, however, little to apprehend from the freedom or the remonstrances of these assemblies. That spirit of resistance to oppression, that ardour to claim and establish their liberties, which characterized the parliaments of former times, had been extinguished in the bloody feuds between the two roses. The temporal peers, who had survived the storm, were few in number, and without the power of their ancestors: they feared by alarming the suspicions of the monarch, to replunge themselves into the dangers from which they had so lately emerged; and the commons readily adopted the humble tone, and submissive demeanour of the upper

¹²⁴ During the last thirteen years of his reign, he called but one parliament, in 1504. His object was to demand an equivalent in lieu of two reasonable aids due by the feudal customs for having made his eldest son a knight, and married his eldest daughter. It was, however, so contrived, that he might have the merit of moderation, while he imposed the burden: and therefore when the parliament offered him 40,000*l.*, he accepted but 30,000*l.* Rot. Parl. vi. 532.

house. Henry, and the same may be observed of his two last predecessors, found them always the obsequious ministers of his pleasure.¹²⁵

But if the king were economical in his expenses, and eager in the acquisition of wealth, it should also be added, that he often rewarded with the generosity, and on occasions of ceremony displayed the magnificence, of a great monarch. His charities were many and profuse. Of his buildings his six convents of friars fell in the next reign: his chapel at Westminster still exists, a monument of his opulence and taste. He is said to have occasionally advanced loans of money to merchants engaged in profitable branches of trade: and not only gave the royal licence to the attempt of the Venetian navigator Cabot, but fitted out a ship at his own expense to join in the voyage. Cabot sailed from Bristol, discovered the island of Newfoundland, crept along the coast of Florida, and returned to England. It was the first European expedition that ever reached the American continent.¹²⁶

1496.
March 5.

1497.
June 24.

Here, with the death of Henry Tudor, shall I

¹²⁵ In the composition of these sheets, I have frequently been inclined to believe, that we ascribe to the spirit of the commons in former times more than they really deserve. On many important occasions they appear to me to have been put forward and supported by the peers: on others to have been merely the instruments employed by the ruling party. If this be so, there can be no wonder that after the depression of the house of peers, they fell into a state of dependence on the crown.

¹²⁶ Rym, xii, 595. Hackluyt, iii, 4.

CHAP.
VI.

close the first part of this history: the next
will extend from the accession of Henry VIII.
to the abdication of James II.: a period of
almost two centuries, distinguished by the most
important revolutions in church and state, and
fraught with events which highly deserve the
notice and study of every Englishman.

NOTE [A], Page 340.

IN perusing the petition presented to the protector at Baynard's castle, the attention of the reader will probably have been drawn to the alleged precontract of marriage between Edward and Eleanor Boteler. I shall make a few observations on the subject in the present note.

1. It was now eighteen years since the marriage of the king with Elizabeth Gray. The validity of that marriage had never yet been disputed. The children by it had been considered as legitimate by the parliament, the nation, and foreign sovereigns. They were acknowledged heirs to their father, and several of them had been contracted to princes of the first houses in Europe.

2. If any marriage had previously taken place, which would have annulled the succeeding marriage, would it not have been discovered and objected by those, who opposed the union of the king with Elizabeth Gray; by the numerous and violent enemies of that princess and her family; and by Clarence and Warwick during their rebellion, when no one had any reason to fear the resentment of Edward? If they had heard of it, and yet did not allege it, the very circumstance is a proof that they knew the report to be groundless.

3. The time when it was at last brought forward, furnishes a strong presumption against it. It was not till both the parties concerned were laid in their graves, almost twenty years after it was supposed to have taken place, and for the avowed purpose of enabling an uncle to disinherit his nephews.

4. There is no proof that witnesses were ever examined, or that any documents were produced to shew the existence of the precontract in question, though it so much concerned Richard for his own security to place it beyond the reach of doubt. The only authority on which it rests is the assertion in the petition presented to the protector at Baynard's castle, an authority which will have little weight with the impartial reader. That petition was said to have been composed and forwarded to London by the gentlemen in the north: but every one knew that it was written in that city by Dr. Stillington, bishop of Bath, and president of Richard's council (Cont. Croyl. 567). Le evesque de B. fist le bill (Year book, Hilary term, 1 Hen. VII. Rym. xii. 189.) If it be said that it was approved by Richard's parliament in 1484 (Rot. Parl. vi. 240): it may be replied that the next year it was condemned by another parliament "for the 'false and seditious imaginations and untruths thereof,'" (ibid. 289.) and pronounced by the judges false, slanderous, and shameful. (Year book, ibid.) The only contemporary, by whom it is mentioned, treats it with little ceremony as seditious and infamous. Cont. Croyl. 567.

5. Though no ancient historian has written in favour of the alleged precontract, it has been warmly maintained by two modern writers, Walpole in his *Historic Doubts*, and Laing in a dissertation at the close of *Henry's History of England*. I shall briefly notice the four arguments which they have adduced.

6. More informs us that after Edward "had between them "twain ensured Elizabeth," he communicated the matter to his council: that his mother, to prevent the marriage, objected that he "was sure to dame Elizabeth Lucy, and her husband before "God :" that Lucy was sent for and examined upon oath: and that "albeit she was by the king's mother and many other put "in good comfort to affirm that she was ensured unto the king, "yet when she was solemnly sworn to say the truth, she con- "fessed that they were never ensured: howbeit his grace spoke "so loving words unto her, that she verily hoped he would have

“ married her.” More, 59, 60. It is difficult to reconcile this story, as it is told by More, with the account of Edward’s marriage with Elizabeth Gray, as it is given by all other writers. According to them it was clandestine, according to him it was publicly solemnized. But what is there in it to favour the pre-contract of marriage with Elcanor Boteler? Laing supposes that More has wilfully substituted Elizabeth Lucy for Eleanor Boteler, that the objection of the king’s mother was good, and that the lady was compelled by Edward to give false evidence as to the contract between them. But if such suppositions are to be admitted, merely because they are convenient for the purpose of the writer, there is an end to all faith in history.

7. We are then led to the testimony of Commines, who informs us that Stillington had been formerly in favour with Edward, had incurred his displeasure, been imprisoned, and paid a large sum for his liberty. This prelate, if we may believe him, declared to Richard that Edward had formerly contracted marriage with a certain lady in his presence, that the contract was meant only to deceive her, and that he had concealed its existence for twenty years. He adds, that to reward him, Richard promised to give the princess Elizabeth, now considered as a bastard, to an illegitimate son of the bishop; but the young man was cast on the coast of Normandy, carried to the chatelet at Paris, and by some mistake starved to death. Com. lvi. c. ix. Those who have perused the foreign writers of these ages, know how little they are to be credited, when they write of English affairs: but admitting the whole of this account, it will go but a short way towards the proof of the marriage. We knew before that Stillington composed the petition; we now know that he also suggested its contents. Whether those contents were true or false, Commines does not hazard a conjecture. Laing supposes that Edward imprisoned the bishop, to extort from him the contract, or to punish him for disclosing the secret. But neither hypothesis can stand. The historian assures us that Stillington kept the secret till Edward’s death: and the idea of extorting

from him the contract arises from a mistake as to the meaning of the words, “*avoit faits la promesse entre les main du dit eves-“que;*” which allude to the manner in which such verbal promises were received, not to any written contract deposited in the hands of the bishop, as Laing translates it. The true reason of Stillington’s disgrace (we have no knowledge of his imprisonment) may be found in Rymer, xii. 66. Soon after the attainder of Clarence he was accused of having violated his oath of allegiance, probably by having associated with Clarence. He repaired to a great council of lords and prelates, proved his innocence to their satisfaction, was declared a loyal subject, and afterwards employed in several offices of great trust and importance.

8. Sir Thomas More’s history terminates abruptly in the midst of a conversation between the duke of Buckingham and the bishop of Ely. Hall continues that conversation, without informing us where he obtained it: and makes the duke say, “Richard brought in” (to the lords forming his private council) “instruments, authentic doctors, proctors, notaries of the law, “with depositions of divers witnesses, testifying Edward’s “children to be bastards: which depositions I then thought to “be as true as now I know them to be false and feigned, and “testified by witnesses with rewards untruly suborned.” Hall, f. 33. Hence Laing argues that proof of the precontract was produced to the council. But it may be replied, that these depositions were never judicially examined: that they are pronounced false, and purchased with money by the very authority here cited: and lastly, that the whole speech is a mere fiction. For the duke is made to say, that Richard refused to restore to him the Hereford estate of which he had been deprived by Edward, though the truth is that Richard actually restored it to him (Dugd. Bar. i 168, 169. ii. 248); and if we may believe More himself, did not uncourteously refuse any one of his petitions. More, 70.

9. When Henry VII. had married Elizabeth, the daughter of Edward, the act which bastardized the children of that prince,

was repealed. It had been customary on such occasions to rehearse the whole of the act, or to particularize its object, both of which were now by the advice of the judges omitted, and in their place the first words were inserted as sufficient to point out what individual act was repealed. A motion at the same time was made to call Stillington before the parliament, but was opposed by the king. Hence Laing infers that Henry was satisfied the legitimacy of his wife would not bear investigation. But a complete answer may be given. The judges declared that their object was to prevent so false and shameful a calumny from appearing on the rolls of parliament (Year book, Hilary term, 1 Henry VII.): and the king replied, that as he had already granted a pardon to Stillington, he could not prosecute him for the offence. More, 70.

10. On the whole, it appears to me evident, that Elizabeth was the real wife of Edward, and that the precontract was a fiction invented to justify Richard's usurpation.

NOTE [B], Page 367.

I purpose in this note to examine the arguments, which have been employed to clear the memory of Richard from the imputation of having murdered his nephews.

I. It would be difficult to name a writer more deserving of credit than the Croyland historian, who composed his narrative in the month of April following the death of Richard. He tells us that a widely extended confederacy had been formed to liberate the two princes from the Tower, and that the rising was on the point of taking place, when it was made public that both of them had perished. (Cont. Croyl. 568.) It has been said that this was a mere report raised by the conspirators themselves, and that the writer gives no opinion as to its truth. But, 1^o. It could not

have been raised by the conspirators, because it compelled them to defer their intended insurrection, and to look out for some other chief. (*Ibid.*) And, 2^o. The writer proceeds with his narrative as if he believed the princes to be dead, and makes use of expressions, which he would not have used, if he had entertained any doubt of their murder. He says that it is not known by what particular kind of *violent* death they perished (*quo genere violenti interitus ignoratur, ibid.*); that their cause had been avenged in the battle of Bosworth field (*quorum causa hoc bello potissime vindicata est, p. 575*); and that Richard, not content with obtaining the treasures of Edward, destroyed his children. *Amplius divitiarum Edwardi cumulo non contentus, oppressit proles.* (*Ibid.*) I conceive that after the use of such expressions, there can remain no doubt of the opinion entertained by this writer.

II. The same conviction appears to have been entertained by all those who were the most interested in ascertaining the truth. 1. The duke of Buckingham and the gentlemen of the southern counties, after the publication of the death of the princes, saw that there was no safety for themselves, unless they could raise up a new competitor for the throne, and therefore offered it to the earl of Richmond, on condition he would marry the princess Elizabeth, the next heir of the family of York. (Cont. *Croyl.* 568.) Can we believe that they would have acted in this manner on the credit of a mere report, the truth of which at that moment they would naturally suspect? Must they not have inquired into the matter; and have been convinced that the young Edward and his brother were dead before they would offer the crown to an illegitimate branch of a rival family? — 2. Richard to defeat the plan made the strongest efforts to prevail on Elizabeth, the widow of Edward, to quit the sanctuary with her daughters: but he did not succeed till he had sworn before the peers and prelates, mayor and aldermen, that the lives of these daughters should be in no danger. Why did Elizabeth require such an oath? Undoubtedly she believed, that the king had already destroyed her sons, and feared a similar fate for her

daughters. Buck, p. 528.—3. Richard, even before his wife died, proposed to marry the princess Elizabeth. And the reason was, because he saw that he could not otherwise secure the throne to himself, or cut off the hopes of his rival. (*Non aliter videbat regnum sibi confirmari, neque spem competitoris sui auferri posse.* (Cont. Croyl. 572.) This could only be true in case that the princes were dead, and that Elizabeth was the heir to the crown.

III. Rouse, who died in 1491, openly asserts that the princes were slain, but so privately that few knew in what manner. *Edwardum cum amplexibus et osculis recepit, et infra circiter duo menses vel parum ultra cum fratre suo interfecit*—*ita quod ex post paucissimis notum fuit qua morte martyrizati sunt.* Ross, 214, 215.

IV. André, the contemporary historiographer of Henry VII., says that Richard ordered the princes to be put to the sword. *Ferro feriri jussit.* MS. Domit. A. XVIII.

V. Sir Thomas More, who wrote soon after, in 1513, not only asserts that they were murdered, but gives the particulars of the murder from the confession of the assassins themselves. The reader has seen his account in the preceding pages.

VI. In July 1674, in consequence of an order to clear the White Tower from all contiguous buildings, as the workmen were “digging down the stairs which led from the king’s lodgings to the chapel in the said tower, about ten feet in the ground, were found the bones of two striplings in (as it seemed) “a wooden chest, which upon the survey were found proportionable to the ages of the two brothers, viz. about 13 and 11 years.” On inquiry it was concluded that they were the bones of the murdered princes, and in consequence, after they had been sifted from the rubbish, they were honourably interred in the chapel of Henry VII. in Westminster (Sandford, 427, 429). This has been considered as a strong confirmation of the murder: since we know of no other two boys who perished in the Tower, and are informed by More that a priest removed their

bodies from the place where they had been deposited by the assassins to another spot: and that, as he died soon afterwards, his secret perished with him. (More, 68.) From the words of More it may be inferred, that ineffectual attempts had been made to discover it.

VII. In opposition to this evidence it has been observed, that even in the days of Henry VIII. it was considered doubtful whether the princes had been murdered or not. I will therefore transcribe the words of More whence it will appear that such doubts were not very common, nor built on any good foundation.

“ Whose death hath nevertheless so far come in question, that
“ some remain yet in doubt, whether they were in his days de-
“ stroyed or not. Not for that only that Perkin Warbeck, by
“ many folks’ malice, and more folks’ folly, so long space abusing
“ the world, was, as well with princes as the poorer people,
“ reputed and taken for the younger of those two, but for that
“ also that all things were in late days so covertly demeaned, one
“ thing pretended and another meant, that there was nothing so
“ plain and openly proved, but that yet for the common custom
“ of close and covert dealing men had it ever inwardly suspect,
“ as many well counterfeited jewels make the true mistrusted
“ But I shall rehearse you the dolorious end of those babes,
“ not after every way that I have heard, but after that way I
“ have so heard by such men and by such means as methinketh
“ it were hard but it should be true.” He then gives the ac-
count and concludes: “ Thus as I have learned of them that
“ much knew and little cause had to lie, were these two noble
“ princes privily slain.” P. 67, 68.

VIII. It is however contended that More’s narrative cannot be true. “ A singular,” says Laing, “ and for Richard’s memory, “ a providential concurrence of circumstances enables us to ascer-
“ tain the duration, and to trace the particular stages of that
“ progress, in the course of which the supposed destruction of his
“ nephews was planned and accomplished. He was at West-
“ minster on Sunday the 31st of August, where he ratified the

“league with the king of Castile, and at York the 7th of September, the day preceding the second coronation.” (Laing, 420.) The writer then tells us that Richard was on Monday at Windsor, on Tuesday at Oxford, on Wednesday at Gloucester, on Thursday at Warwick, on Friday at Nottingham, on Saturday at Pontefract, and on Sunday at York. Now he contends that if More’s account be true, Green the messenger sent to tamper with Brakenbury, the governor of the Tower, must have left the king on his journey on the Monday or Tuesday, and have returned to Richard at Warwick on Thursday with the account of his failure, and that Tyrrel must have left Warwick on Friday, have committed the murder in the Tower on Friday night or Saturday night, and have reached the king previous to his arrival at York on Sunday: an expedition which it is impossible to believe. Hence it follows that the whole narrative is false. Laing, 420—423.

Now it must be acknowledged that, if the limits assigned to the progress of Richard by his advocates be correct, it is impossible to crowd within so short a space all the facts mentioned by More. But are those limits correct? It is certain that he was crowned with his queen at York, on Sunday the 8th September (Drake’s *Eborac.* 117. Rouse, 217), after having created his son prince of Wales, in a full assembly of the nobility, the same day. (Rym. xii. 200.) Hence he must have arrived at York the day before, and if he left London only on the first, must have performed his long and circuitous journey in seven days. But is it then certain that he was at Westminster on the 31st of August? for on the accuracy of that date depends all the reasoning of the king’s advocates. The only proof of it is, that two instruments are to be found in Rymer, dated August 31, *teste rege apud Westmonasterium.* (Rym. xii 198, 199.) But such instruments prove nothing more than that the chancellor was at Westminster. The king might have been at the distance of 300 miles. They were said to be issued *teste rege*, because

they were issued from his high court of chancery. Out of hundreds of instances I will mention two, which will place this point beyond a doubt. In April 1399 Richard II. was on his road with his army to Ireland. On the 27th of that month we have a writ teste rege at Bristol, where he really was, and another on the same day teste rege at Westminster, where the chancellor was. (Rym. viii. 81.)—Thus again we know that at the death of Edward IV. on the 9th of April 1483, his son Edward V. was at Ludlow, and did not reach London before the 4th of May following. And yet on the 23d of April, eleven days before he came near Westminster, thirty-three writs were published in his name, dated at Westminster teste rege. (Rym. xii. 79.) Hence it is evident that the writs in question, on which Carte, Walpole, and Laing, rest their principal argument, prove nothing as to the presence or absence of Richard on the day on which they are dated.

It is, however, easy to shew that he was on that day in the neighbourhood of York, and that his progress instead of six days occupied a whole month. The ancient writers mention that he set out shortly after his coronation on the 6th of July. (Cont. Croyl. 567. Fab. 516.) He went from London to Windsor: from Windsor to Oxford. The day of his arrival is not specified; but he received from the university a petition in favour of the bishop of Ely, dated the 4th of August (apud Speed, p. 932), whence it is not improbable that he was there at that time. His next stage was Woodstock, where the people of the country complained to him that his brother had unjustly annexed a large tract of land to the forest of Wichwood: and on inquiry he granted to them a charter of disafforestation. Thence he proceeded to Gloucester; and to honour a city from which he took his title of duke, he appointed there a mayor and sheriffs. The two next stages were Worcester and Warwick. Here he was joined by the queen and the Spanish ambassadors, who came direct from Windsor, and kept his court for a whole

week,¹ having with him five bishops, the duke of Albany, four earls, five barons, the chief justice of the king's bench, and other lords and knights, and a great number of noble ladies attending on the queen. He next proceeded to Coventry, then to Leicester, and from Leicester to Nottingham, where he was on the 23d of August. For we have a letter written there on that day by his private secretary, announcing to the citizens of York his approach to their city, and telling them that "the king's lords" and judges were with him, sitting and determining the "plaints of poor folks, with due punition of offenders against his laws." (Drake, 116.) He afterwards stopped at Pontefract, where he appointed a mayor, and thence proceeded to York (See this progress in Rouse, 216, 217.) From York, on the 31st of August, he dispatched an order to Piers Courties, keeper of the wardrobe, to send to that city his spurs, banners, coats of arms, &c. which might be wanted against his coronation. (Drake's Eborac. 119. Buck, 527.) It is evident, then, that instead of leaving London on Sept. 1st, to be crowned in York, Sept. 8th, he was the whole month of August on his journey, and reached York before the day on which he has been supposed to be still in London.—It may also be observed that this account agrees with that of More. He dispatched Green when he was on his way to Gloucester, and received his report on his arrival at Warwick. Thence he sent Tyrrel to the Tower, and the murder was committed soon after, probably during the week that he remained at Warwick, which, from the date of his residence at Nottingham, must have been about the middle of August: the time assigned by Rouse, who says, the young king was murdered something more than three months after he had been received and caressed by his uncle, which was on the last day of April. (Rouse, 215.)

¹ Of this circumstance, so important in the present inquiry, Rouse could not be ignorant, as he lived at the same time at Guy's cliff, only four miles from Warwick.

IX. Walpole (p. 70, 71) transcribes a passage from the roll of parliament of 1484, to prove that Edward V. was alive when that parliament was sitting, and consequently could not have been put to death during Richard's progress to York. But if he had paid more attention to the roll, he would have found that he was copying from the petition presented to the protector at Baynard's castle, and that the passage in question proved only that Edward was alive at the time when his uncle usurped the throne. See Rot. Parl. vi. 241.

X. The last argument I shall mention, is taken from Bacon's History of Henry VII. p. 71. He tells us, that soon after the appearance of Perkin, Tyrrell and Dighton (Forrest, the other murderer, was dead) were committed to the Tower, and, as the king gave out, both agreed in the same tale; that nevertheless Henry made no use of their confessions; that Tyrrel was soon after beheaded for other matters of treason, but Dighton, who it seems spake best for the king, was set at liberty, and was the principal means of divulging this tradition. Now, if it were true, that Henry examined these persons at the time of Perkin's appearance, and yet did not use their evidence to prove that he was not the Duke of York, the omission would certainly justify a suspicion that they did not acknowledge the murder. The real fact is, that they were examined only a short time before the execution of Tyrrel, as Bacon himself says; but that execution did not take place, as he supposes, soon after the appearance of Perkin, but at the distance of ten years, in 1502, for having favoured the escape of the earl of Suffolk. (Rot. Parl. vi. 545.) Of course Henry could not employ their confession in any of his declarations against Perkin, which were published long before. This is also plain from sir Thomas More's history, who wrote a few years afterwards. "Very truth it is, and well known, " that at such time as sir James Tyrrel was in the Tower for "treason committed against king Henry VII., both Dighton and " he were examined, and confessed the murder in manner above " written." More, 68.

NOTE [C], Page 439.

The pretensions of Warbeck offer a problem, which has been thought of difficult solution. Was he an impostor, or was he the real duke of York? Our ancient historians have unanimously adopted the former opinion: but their authority has been set aside by some modern writers, who contend that under the dynasty of the Tudors no man would venture to express even a doubt injurious to the cause of the reigning family. If credit be due to Carte, and Walpole, and Laing, Warbeck was the real son of Edward IV., and the rightful heir to the throne.

The arguments most favourable to the claim of this adventurer are drawn from two sources, its admission by foreign princes, and the inability of Henry to discover his real origin as an impostor. 1. He was acknowledged as duke of York by Charles of France, by James of Scotland, and by Margaret of Burgundy. If it be said that the object of Charles was to distress Henry, James at least ought to have been convinced of the real character of Warbeck, before he would give him his kinswoman in marriage: and the conduct of Margaret, who was less liable to be deceived, must prove, that he was really her nephew, or that she knowingly promoted an imposture. But in the latter supposition what could be her object? Her niece was queen of England, the children of that niece were presumptive heirs to the crown. Would she attempt to disinherit her own family, in favour of an obscure and unknown adventurer?

2. Henry with all his arts and intrigues could never form a plausible account of the origin and adventures of Warbeck. The stories circulated with his connivance bear evident marks of uncertainty and falsehood. There were two methods by which he might have successfully detected the imposture. He might have ascertained the death of the princes in the Tower by the apprehension and examination of the reputed assassins:

or after the surrender of Warbeck, he might have confronted him with his own queen and her sisters. Their testimony would have decided the question. If then he adopted neither of these measures, it is an argument that he dared not. He must have known that both of the brothers were not put to death by their uncle, and that the younger had escaped, and now claimed the crown. Such, in short, are the arguments of those, who maintain the cause of the adventurer.

To me, however, the arguments against the identity of Warbeck with Richard duke of York, appear greatly to preponderate.

1. From the preceding pages it has been seen that the death of the two princes was believed by all those who were most interested to know the truth, by their mother Elizabeth and their uncle Richard, by the partisans of the house of Lancaster, and those of the house of York, and even by Henry himself, as late at least as the summer of 1487, when he offered to marry their mother to the king of Scots, and their two sisters to his two sons. Four years later a young man appears in Ireland, and professes to be the younger of the two princes, who were believed to be dead. Was it not incumbent on him to prove his pretensions, to shew how he had escaped from the murderers, to what place he had been conveyed, and where and how he had spent the eight years which had elapsed since his supposed death? Yet all this was kept a profound secret. Even in his proclamation at the head of the Scottish army, when it was so much for his interest that the English should be convinced of his claim, he contents himself with asserting, "that in his tender age he had escaped by God's great might out of the Tower of London, had been secretly conveyed over sea to other divers countries, and had remained there certain years as unknown." Does not this meager account, in circumstances when the clearest proofs were required, betray a secret consciousness that his history would not bear investigation?

2. His assertions seem to have been generally disbelieved by the nation. The persons who adhered to him in France, were

most, if not all, of them outlaws: and the gentlemen who were attainted on his account in England, seem to have suffered, not so much for having admitted his pretensions, as for their attempts to ascertain who he was, which Henry ascribed to a treasonable disaffection towards himself. After that period no person of note attached himself to the pretender. When he landed on the coast of Kent, he was immediately repulsed; when he entered England successively at the head of a Scottish army, and was in a condition to protect his friends, not an individual repaired to his standard; and when he afterwards assumed the command of the Cornish insurgents, he did not debauch a single gentleman from his allegiance to Henry. It is not credible that the numerous partisans of the house of York would have remained quiet on all these occasions, unless they had reason to believe him an impostor.

3. This is strongly corroborated by the conduct of Henry. Would his jealousy have spared the real duke of York, when he had him once in his power? Would he have exhibited him to the gaze of the populace on the road, or of the citizens in London, of whom many could have recognised his features? Would he have suffered him to roam at liberty through the palace at Westminster for six months, exposed to the daily view of the queen, her sisters, and the principal nobility? After his flight and recapture, would not the king have gladly employed that plausible pretext for getting rid of so dangerous a competitor? Whoever compares his conduct to the earl of Warwick with his conduct to Warbeck, will be convinced that as he knew the former to be a real Plantagenet, so he believed the latter to be no other than an impostor.

4. But how are we to account for the acknowledgment of his claim by foreign powers? It may be observed that, if the union of the two roses by the marriage of Henry and Elizabeth had satisfied many of the Yorkists, there still existed a party, which through enmity to the house of Lancaster sought to raise to the throne the young earl of Warwick. At its head was the dutchess of Burgundy. She first patronized the imposture of

Simnel, afterwards that of Warbeck. If either had succeeded, there would have been little difficulty in removing the phantom to make place for the reality. The conduct of Charles VIII. proves nothing more than his wish to distress and intimidate Henry. He had previously attempted to raise the friends of Warwick: when that failed, Warbeck, probably at his instigation, solicited the aid of the Yorkists in Ireland: and on their refusal, was invited to the French court as heir to the English crown. But the event proved that this invitation had no other object than to induce Henry to sign the treaty. From the moment that was accomplished, Perkin received no countenance from the king of France. With respect to the king of Scotland, there seems to have been much also of policy in the reception which he gave to the adventurer. It was argued that if Perkin were successful, he could refuse nothing to the prince, who had placed him on the throne; that if he were not, Henry would still make advantageous offers to James to detach him from the cause of his rival. On this account, says Polydore, the king, whether it were through error and pity, or only through dissimulation, began to shew him great honour, &c. p. 597.

The consideration of these circumstances has left little doubt on my mind that Warbeck was an impostor. He was probably brought forward to screen the young earl of Warwick from the jealousy of Henry. If he fell in the attempt, Warwick was still safe; if he succeeded, the disclosure of the secret would raise that young prince to the throne. This at least, is certain, that as long as Warwick lived, pretenders to the crown rapidly succeeded each other: after his execution, Henry was permitted to reign without molestation.

END OF VOL. V.

LONDON:

SHACKELL AND BROWNSMITH, JOHNSON'S-COURT, FLEET-STREET.

Ed

